OXFORD

1

American English File

fourth edition

Student Book

OXFORD IMPACT EVALUATED

Christina Latham-Koenig
Clive Oxenden Kate Chomacki
Jerry Lambert

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS



American English File

fourth edition

Student Book

How to use your Classroom Presentation Tool

Christina Latham-Koenig Clive Oxenden
Kate Chomacki Jerry Lambert Paul Seligson

Paul Seligson and Clive Oxenden are the original co-authors of *English File 1* (published 1996) and *English File 2* (1997)

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

Contents

		GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION
1				
8	**A Hello, everybody.**	verb *be* [+], subject pronouns: *I*, *you*, etc.	days of the week, numbers 0–20	vowel sounds, word stress
10	**B A world of sports**	verb *be* [–] and [?]	countries, numbers 21–100	/ə/, consonant sounds /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/, word stress
12	**C Open your books.**	possessive adjectives: *my*, *your*, etc.	classroom language	/oʊ/, /u/, /ar/ the alphabet, sentence stress
2				
16	**A Your desk and you**	singular and plural nouns	things, *in*, *on*, *under*	final *-s* and *-es*
18	**B Made in the USA**	adjectives	colors, adjectives, modifiers: *very* / *really*	long and short vowel sounds
20	**C Don't worry. Be happy!**	imperatives, *let's*	feelings	linking
3				
24	**A America: for better or for worse**	simple present [+] and [–]	verb phrases: *cook dinner*, etc.	third person *-s*
26	**B Goodbye to the office?**	simple present [?]	jobs	/ər/
28	**C Are you a "dog person"?**	word order in questions	question words	sentence stress
4				
32	**A Who's that in the photo?**	possessive *'s*, *Whose...?*	family	/ʌ/, the letter *o*
34	**B Eat, sleep, repeat.**	prepositions: time, place, and movement	daily routine	linking
36	**C Blue Zones**	position of adverbs, expressions of frequency	months, adverbs and expressions of frequency	the letter *h*
5				
40	**A Sing me a song.**	*can* / *can't*	verb phrases: *buy a pizza*, etc.	sentence stress
42	**B What a noise!**	present continuous: *be* + verb + *-ing*	noise: verbs and verb phrases	/ŋ/
44	**C I ♥ Chicago**	simple present or present continuous?	the weather and seasons	places in Chicago
6				
48	**A A traditional story**	object pronouns: *me*, *you*, *him*, etc.	learning words from a story	/aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /i/
50	**B I don't like Mondays.**	*like* + verb + *-ing*	ordinal numbers, the date	/ð/ and /θ/, saying the date
52	**C Making music**	review: *be* or *do*?	music	/y/, giving opinions

READING & LISTENING	SPEAKING & WRITING	
		Practical English p.14
Listening recognizing names; recognizing places and numbers	**Speaking** saying hello, saying goodbye	**Pictures of you** Episode 1: *A new city*
Listening understanding *-teen* and *-ty* numbers in conversations	**Speaking** saying where people are from	**Practical English** checking in **Vocabulary** in a hotel **Social English**
Listening understanding personal information	**Speaking** asking for and giving personal information **Writing** completing a form	
		Review and Check p.22
Listening listening for detail	**Speaking** saying where things are	Review and Check 1&2
Reading identifying paragraph topics	**Speaking** describing personal things	
Reading following a story **Listening** inferring mood; using visual clues to understand advice	**Speaking** saying how you feel **Writing** messages, notes, and notices	
		Practical English p.30
Reading identifying attitude	**Speaking** giving reasons with *why* and *because*	**Pictures of you** Episode 2: *First weeks in the city*
Listening understanding specific information	**Speaking** talking about jobs and skills	**Practical English** buying a coffee **Vocabulary** telling the time **Social English**
Listening identifying who's who, understanding specific information	**Speaking** responding in a conversation, showing interest **Writing** a personal profile	
		Review and Check p.38
Listening using visual clues to understand relationships between people	**Speaking** talking about friends and family	Review and Check 3&4
Reading inferring feelings **Listening** understanding daily habits	**Speaking** describing a typical day **Writing** an article	
Reading inferring information **Listening** using visual clues to understand lifestyle choices	**Speaking** relaying information in a short text	
		Practical English p.46
Listening focusing on practical information	**Speaking** talking about abilities	**Pictures of you** Episode 3: *Exploring the city*
Listening identifying situations from context	**Speaking** talking about different aspects of a topic; describing what people are doing	**Practical English** buying clothes **Vocabulary** clothes **Social English**
Reading finding specific information **Listening** using visual clues to understand the weather	**Speaking** expressing preference, making a simple recommendation **Writing** posting on social media	
		Review and Check p.54
Reading understanding a traditional story **Listening** using visual clues to understand reading habits; using prediction to tune in to the end of a story	**Speaking** talking about reading habits; retelling a story	Review and Check 5&6
Reading understanding feelings and opinions **Listening** understanding ordinal numbers in context	**Speaking** talking about favorite and least favorite times **Writing** contributing a personal comment	
Listening using visual clues to understand specific information	**Speaking** talking about musical tastes **Writing** an informal email	

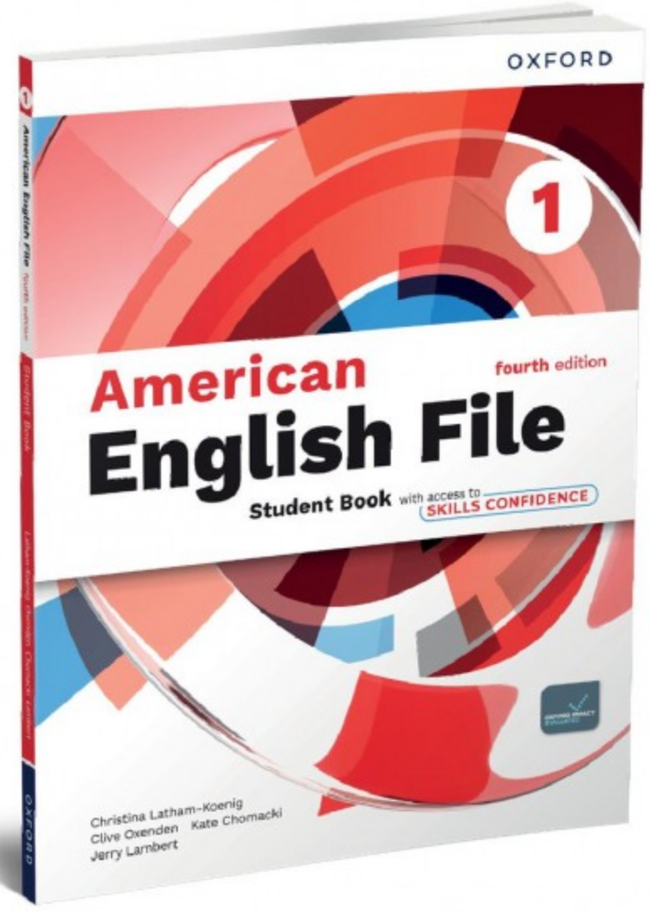
		GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION
7				
56	**A This is me.**	simple past of *be*: *was* / *were*	word formation: *write* → *writer*	sentence stress
58	**B Small mistake, big problem**	simple past: regular verbs	past time expressions	*-ed* endings
60	**C Happy New Year!**	simple past: irregular verbs	*go*, *have*, *get*	sentence stress
8				
64	**A A murder in the family**	simple past: regular and irregular	irregular verbs	simple past verbs
66	**B A house with a history**	*there is* / *there are*, *some* / *any* + plural nouns	the house	/ɛr/ and /ɪr/
68	**C Do you believe in ghosts?**	*there was* / *there were*	prepositions: movement and place	silent letters
9				
72	**A What's for dinner?**	countable / uncountable nouns, *a* / *an*, *some* / *any*	food and drink	the letters *ea*
74	**B White gold**	quantifiers: *how much* / *how many*, *a lot of*, etc.	food containers	/ʃ/ and /s/
76	**C Quizzes and quizzers**	comparative adjectives	high numbers	/ər/, sentence stress
10				
80	**A Top of the list**	superlative adjectives	places and buildings	consonant groups
82	**B In the footsteps of Marco Polo**	*be going to* (plans), future time expressions	city vacations	sentence stress
84	**C The cards don't lie.**	*be going to* (predictions)	playing cards	the letters *ear*
11				
88	**A Culture shock**	adverbs (manner and modifiers)	common adverbs	connected speech
90	**B It's on my list.**	verb + infinitive	more verb phrases	weak *to*, sentence stress
92	**C Download the app.**	definite article: *the* or no *the*	phones and apps	*the*
12				
96	**A It's a classic!**	present perfect	irregular past participles	sentence stress
98	**B Let's go out for dinner!**	present perfect or simple past?	learning irregular verbs	irregular past participles
100	**C International stars**	review: question formation		

104 **Communication** 115 **Writing Bank** 127 **Listening** 132 **Grammar Bank**

READING & LISTENING	SPEAKING & WRITING	
		Practical English p.62
Reading understanding a life story **Listening** using visual clues to understand a biographical documentary	**Speaking** talking about a personal photo	**Pictures of you** Episode 4: *Ben's show* **Practical English** asking the way **Vocabulary** directions **Social English**
Reading using context to complete information in a blog **Listening** understanding a sequence of events	**Speaking** describing the last time you did something	
Reading understanding detail in short anecdotes **Listening** understanding an anecdote	**Speaking** talking about a memorable event **Writing** a diary entry	
		Review and Check p.70
Reading understanding what happened when **Listening** using body language to infer motive, note-taking	**Speaking** interviewing somebody about where they were	Review and Check 7&8
Listening tuning in to help predict outcome	**Speaking** describing a house or apartment **Writing** describing your home	
Reading reading for specific factual information **Listening** identifying the details in two similar stories; focusing on detail	**Speaking** describing a room in detail	
		Practical English p.78
Listening hypothesizing from photos to tune in to listening	**Speaking** talking about eating habits **Writing** describing a memorable meal	**Pictures of you** Episode 5: *On Primrose Hill* **Practical English** going out for dinner **Vocabulary** understanding a menu **Social English**
Reading categorizing information	**Speaking** asking about quantity and frequency	
Reading reading and remembering information **Listening** understanding instructions, focusing on reasons	**Speaking** asking and answering quiz questions	
		Review and Check p.86
Reading identifying paragraph endings from context	**Speaking** giving tourist information **Writing** an ad for your town	Review and Check 9&10
Listening using prior knowledge to predict content, note-taking	**Speaking** talking about future plans; planning a trip, making suggestions **Writing** a formal email	
Reading following the events in a story **Listening** understanding specific information, checking a prediction; using visual clues to check predictions	**Speaking** making predictions	
		Practical English p.94
Reading understanding opinions **Listening** using visual clues to identify attitude	**Speaking** talking about common behaviors	**Pictures of you** Episode 6: *Good news, bad news* **Practical English** using public transportation **Vocabulary** public transportation **Social English**
Reading completing information from context **Listening** using visual clues to identify categories	**Speaking** talking about dreams and ambitions **Writing** a forum post	
Reading identifying paragraph topics **Listening** understanding habits and preferences	**Speaking** talking about phone use; expressing opinions	
		Review and Check p.102
Listening understanding topic questions, note-taking	**Speaking** talking about movies, books, and TV	Review and Check 11&12
Listening identifying specific information	**Speaking** talking about things you've done, using follow-up questions	
Reading identifying topics in a longer text **Listening** using visual clues to understand a biopic	**Speaking** talking about lifestyle, abilities, preferences, and experiences **Writing** a biography	

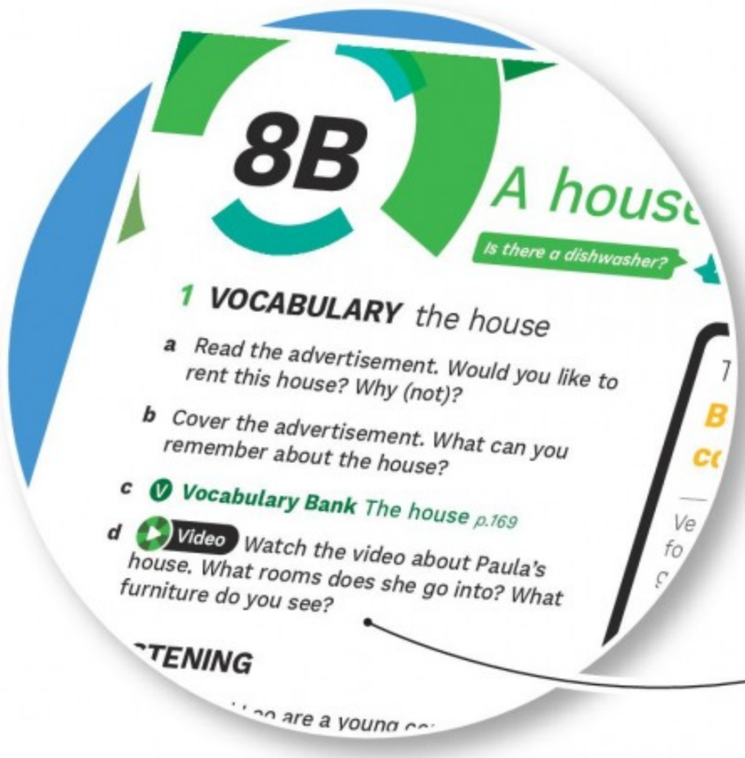
156 **Vocabulary Bank** 173 **Irregular verbs** 174 **Sound Bank**

Welcome to American English File fourth edition



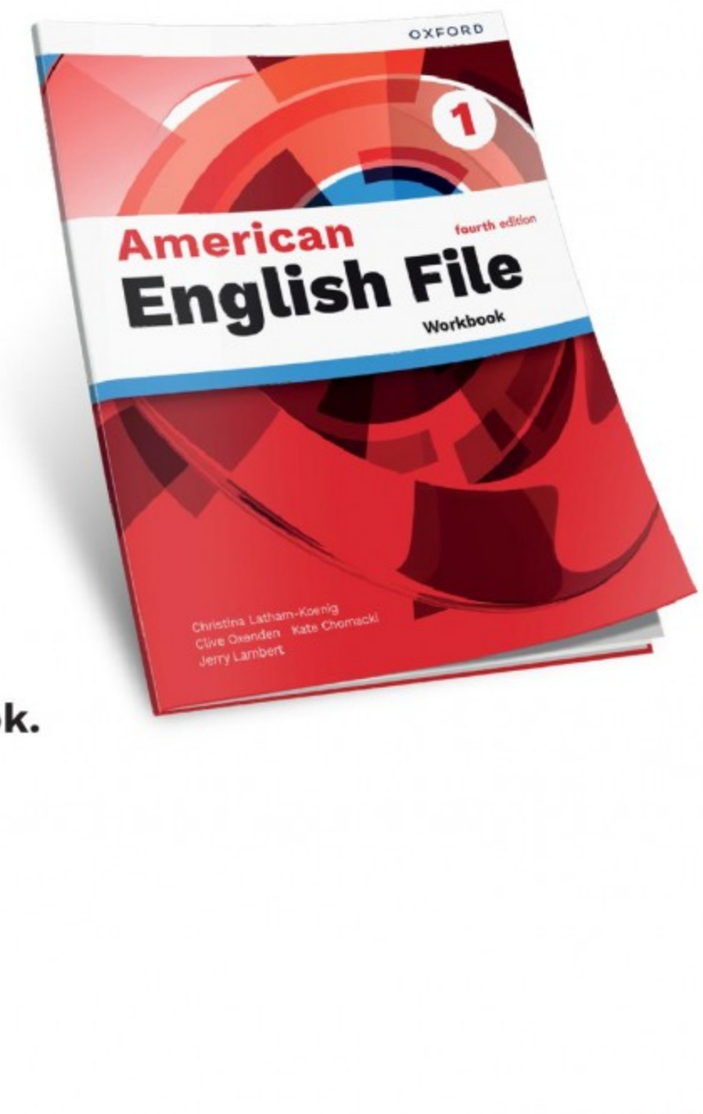
Student Book

All the language and skills you need to improve your English, with Grammar, Vocabulary, Pronunciation, and skills work in every File.



Bring language learning to life with new videos integrated into the lessons.

Look out for the Video icons in every File.



Workbook

Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation practice for every lesson.

Student Book and Workbook also available as an e-Book.

NEW SKILLS CONFIDENCE

Develop your confidence in English with access to bite-size Reading, Listening, Speaking, and Writing practice that complements the course. Easily accessible from your mobile device, to use in your own time, at your own pace.

Access SKILLS CONFIDENCE on Oxford English Hub.

NEW Video-enhanced lessons

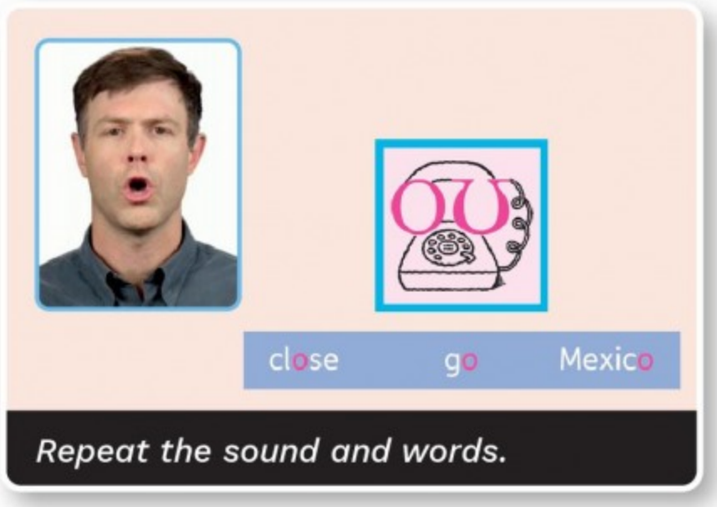
Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation



Grammar practice

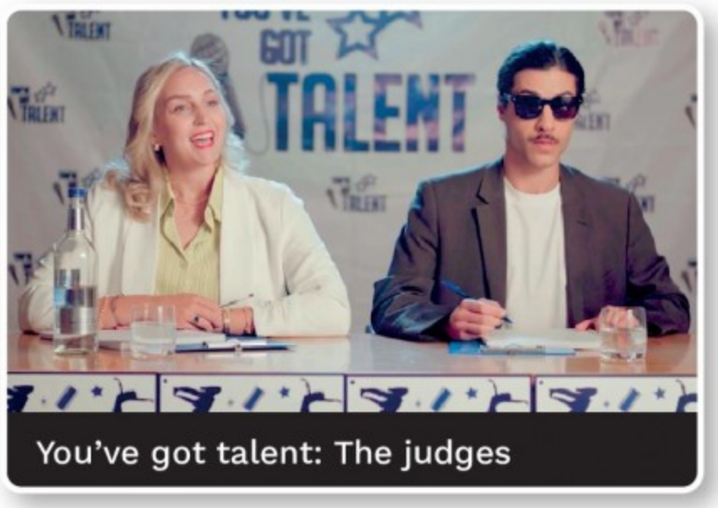


Vocabulary practice



Pronunciation

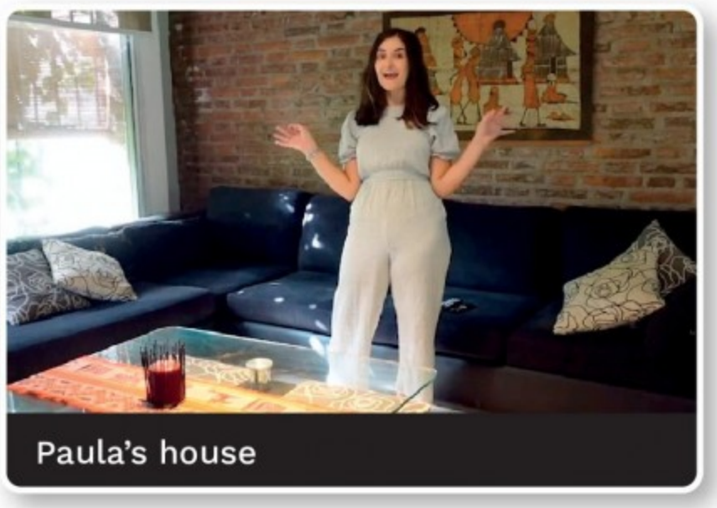
Skills development



Dramas



Documentaries



Interviews and teacher-generated content



NEW *Pictures of you* Season 1

A brand new video drama story for the Practical English section.

Pictures of you follows the story of Izzy and Ben and how their lives, careers, and relationships develop.



Oxford English Hub

Access all video and audio resources, and **SKILLS CONFIDENCE** on Oxford English Hub.

Use the code in this book to get 2 years' access.



1A Hello, everybody.

Hi, I'm Dan. What's your name? *Jasmine. Nice to meet you.*

- G verb *be* +, subject pronouns: *I*, *you*, etc.
- V days of the week, numbers 0–20
- P vowel sounds, word stress

1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a Video Watch *A salsa class*. Match photos 1–4 to the names of the people.

☐ Laura ☐ Dan ☐ Ed ☐ Jasmine



b Watch again. Then read conversations 1–6 and match them to photos A–F.

1 ☐ **Teacher** Hello, everybody. Welcome to the class. I'm Laura. I'm your teacher. OK, let's go. Look at me.

2 ☐ **Dan** Hi, I'm Dan. What's your name?
Jasmine Jasmine.
Dan Sorry?
Jasmine Jasmine!

3 ☐ **Dan** Hey. What's your phone number?
Jasmine It's 936-555-0271.
Dan 936-555-0271.
Jasmine Yes. Text me. Thanks.

4 ☐ **Ed** Hi, Dan.
Dan Hello. This is Jasmine. She's in my salsa class.
Ed Nice to meet you. My name's Ed.
Jasmine Nice to meet you, too.
Dan Bye, Jasmine.
Jasmine Goodbye, Dan. Bye, Ed.

5 ☐ **Ed** Hi, Jasmine.
Jasmine Ed! Are you in the salsa class, too?
Ed Yes, I am. How are you?
Jasmine I'm good, thank you. And you?
Ed Fine, thanks.

6 ☐ **Teacher** OK, everybody, with your partners. Ed, you're with Jasmine.
Ed Great! You're my partner!
Jasmine Yes! See you later, Dan.

c 1.2 Listen and repeat conversations 2, 4, and 5. Copy the rhythm.

d Fill in the blanks with a word from the list.

Bye Good ~~Hi~~ I'm... Thanks

1 Hello = Hi
2 My name's... = _____
3 Fine = _____
4 Thank you = _____
5 Goodbye = _____

e Introduce yourself to the class.

Hello / Hi. My name's... / I'm...

2 GRAMMAR verb *be* ⊞, subject pronouns

a Complete the sentences with *'m*, *'s*, or *'re*.

1 I am Laura. = I'm Laura.
2 I am Dan. = I___ Dan.
3 My name is Ed. = My name___ Ed.
4 You are my partner. = You___ my partner.
5 She is in my salsa class. = She___ in my salsa class.

b G **Grammar Bank** 1A *p.132*

c 1.4 Listen and repeat the pronouns and contractions.

1 I, I'm I, I'm

d 1.5 Listen. Say the contractions.

1 I am I'm

e Try to remember the names in your class. Say, *He's / She's* _____.

3 PRONUNCIATION vowel sounds, word stress

Vowel sounds

In American English, vowels (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*) and combinations of vowels (e.g., *ee*, *ai*) can be pronounced in different ways. Sometimes they are short sounds (e.g., *it* = /ɪt/), but sometimes they are long sounds (e.g., *he* = /hi/), or dipthongs (a combination of two vowel sounds, e.g., *hi* = /hai/).

a Video Watch and repeat the sounds and words.



fish	tree	cat	egg	train	bike
it this in	he we meet	am thanks Dan	Ed yes welcome	they name later	hi I bye

Word stress

Multisyllable words have one stressed syllable.
good|bye so|rry wel|come

b 1.6 Listen to the words. Underline the stressed syllable. Practice saying them.

air|port com|pu|ter e|mail ho|tel in|ter|net mu|se|um
pas|ta piz|za sa|lad sand|wich u|ni|ver|si|ty web|site

c Write the words from **b** in the chart.

Food	Technology	Places
		airport

d Write more words that you know in each column. How do you pronounce them?

4 VOCABULARY days of the week, numbers 0–20

a 1.7 Look at the photo. Listen and fill in the blanks.



b V **Vocabulary Bank** Days and numbers *p.156*
Do Parts 1 and 2.

c 1.11 Listen. Say the next day or number.

Monday Tuesday Wednesday

5 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 1.12 Listen. Where are they? Write 1–6 in the boxes.

- airport
- 1 sandwich shop
- hotel
- museum
- taxi
- language school

Gate number _____
_____ dollars and _____ cents
Room _____
Closed on _____
___ Manchester Road
Classes on _____ and _____ mornings

b Listen again. Write a number or a day in each blank.

c 1.13 Listen and respond.

1 Hello. Nice to meet you.
Nice to meet you, too.

2 What day is it today?
It's...

d Speak to other students.

Hi. I'm Ania. What's your name?
Lucas. Nice to meet you.
Nice to meet you, too. How are you today?
I'm good, thanks. And you?
I'm fine, thanks.

1B A world of sports

Where are you from? *We're from Recife, in Brazil.*

G verb *be* – and ?
V countries, numbers 21–100
P /ə/, consonant sounds /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/, word stress

1 VOCABULARY countries

a Video Watch and match the fans 1–6 to the countries.

Brazil Egypt France
Italy Mexico Spain

b V **Vocabulary Bank** Countries *p.157*

c Do The World Quiz with a partner.

I think it's from England.

I think it's from Peru, but I'm not sure.

2 PRONUNCIATION /ə/, /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/

The /ə/ sound

The /ə/ sound is the most common vowel sound in English. The /ə/ sound has many different spellings, e.g., *past**a**, M**o**r**o**cco, Arg**e**nt**i**n**a**.*

a Video Watch and repeat the sound and words.

computer	A**m**er**ica**n Bra**z**il**ia**n C**a**n**a**d**a** C**hi**n**a**

Consonant sounds

Many consonants (e.g., *j*) and combinations of consonants (e.g., *sh*) only have one pronunciation (e.g., ***J**apan* / ***j**azz*, ***sh**e* / *Engli**sh***). Some consonants can be pronounced in different ways (e.g., *g* can be /g/ *En**g**land* or /dʒ/ *Ni**g**eria*).

b Video Watch and repeat the sounds and sentences.

chess	**Ch**arles isn't **Cz**ech, he's Fren**ch**.
shower	Is **sh**e Turki**sh** or Ru**ss**ian?
jazz	We're **G**erman and they're **J**apanese.

c 1.17 Listen. Say the nationality.

1 Canada *Canadian*

THE WORLD QUIZ

1 1.16 Listen. Where's the music from?

♫ Argentina ♫ Italy ♫ Peru
♫ England ♫ Russia ♫ India

a _____ d _____
b _____ e _____
c _____ f _____

2 Which continents are these countries in?

a the US _____
b Egypt _____
c Thailand _____
d the Czech Republic _____
e Brazil _____

3 What are the countries in English?

a Deutschland _____
b España _____
c Eire _____
d Al-Maghrib _____
e Nihon _____
f Zhōngguó _____

4 What nationalities are the flags?



a _____ d _____


b _____ e _____


c _____ f _____

g _____

3 GRAMMAR verb *be* ⊟ and ⍰

a 1.18 Read and listen to three interviews with sports fans. Fill in the blanks with a country or a nationality.



1 **A** Hi. Where are you from?
B We're from Recife, in _____.
A OK. Good luck to the _____ team!
B Thank you!



2 **A** Hello. I'm Mike from *USA News*. Where are you from?
B I'm from _____.
A Are you from Sydney?
B No, I'm not. I'm from Cairns.
A Where's Cairns? Is it near Sydney?
B No, it isn't. It's in the North. Am I on TV?
A Yes, you are.
B Wow!

3 **A** Hi. Are you _____?
B No, we aren't. We're from _____.
A Oh, sorry!



b Read the interviews again and complete the chart.

+	I'm	you're	it's
−		you aren't	
?			

c **Grammar Bank** 1B *p.132*

d 1.20 Listen and respond with a short answer.

1 Is Sydney the capital of Australia? No, it isn't.

e With a partner, write three questions beginning *Is...?* or *Are...?* Ask them to another pair.

Are you from Vietnam? *No, we aren't.*

4 SPEAKING

a **Communication** Where are they from? **A** *p.104* **B** *p.109* Ask and answer about people from different countries.

b Imagine you're from a different country. Choose from **Vocabulary Bank** Countries *p.157* and think of a city. Ask other students, *Where are you from?*

5 VOCABULARY numbers 21–100



a Video Watch the video. Say the spotlighted numbers.

b **Vocabulary Bank** Days and numbers *p.156* Do Part 3.

c 1.22 Listen and say the answers.

1 What's 12 plus 13? (12 + 13 = ?) 25

6 PRONUNCIATION & LISTENING word stress

Pronunciation *-teen* and *-ty*
Numbers such as 13 and 30, 14 and 40, etc., sound similar, but the stress is different, e.g., thir|teen, thir|ty, four|teen, for|ty.

a 1.23 Listen and repeat the pairs of numbers.

1	a 13	b 30	5	a 17	b 70
2	a 14	b 40	6	a 18	b 80
3	a 15	b 50	7	a 19	b 90
4	a 16	b 60			

b 1.24 Listen to the conversations. Which number do you hear? Circle *a* or *b* above.

c Play *Bingo*.



1C Open your books.

G possessive adjectives: *my*, *your*, etc.
V classroom language
P /oʊ/, /u/, /ɑr/; the alphabet, sentence stress

How do you spell your last name? *V-A-Z-Q-U-E-Z.*

1 VOCABULARY classroom language

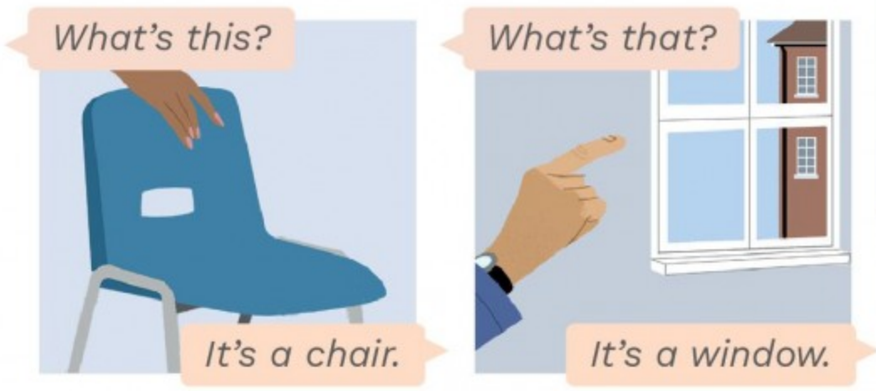
a Match the words and pictures.

- a board /bɔrd/
- a chair /tʃɛr/
- a computer /kəm'pyutər/
- a desk /dɛsk/
- a door /dɔr/
- a picture /'pɪktʃər/
- a screen /skrin/
- a table /'teɪbl/
- a wall /wɔl/
- a window /'wɪndoʊ/



b 1.25 Listen and check.

c Look at the pictures. What's the difference between *this* and *that*? Ask about things in your classroom.



d V **Vocabulary Bank** Classroom language *p.158*

e Video Watch the video. Then watch again and repeat the online classroom language.

1 Turn on your camera.
2 Please unmute your microphone.
3 Please mute your microphone.
4 Write your answers in the chat.
5 Share your screen.
6 Go into the breakout rooms.
7 Please leave the class now.

2 PRONUNCIATION /oʊ/, /u/, /ɑr/; the alphabet

a Video Watch and repeat the sounds and words.



phone	boot	car
close go Mexico	school do two	partner are Argentina

b 1.28 Listen and repeat the alphabet.

ABC DEF GHI JKL MNO PQR STU VWX YZ

c 1.29 Complete the alphabet chart with *C*, *D*, *K*, *N*, *O*, *S*, *U*, and *V*. Listen and check.



train tree egg bike phone boot car

A H J ___	B ___ ___ E G P T ___ Z	F L M ___ ___ X	I Y	___	Q ___ W	R

d 1.30 Listen to the groups of letters.

1 E A I
2 G J
3 K Q
4 C S
5 V P B
6 M N
7 V W
8 Y U

e 1.31 Listen and circle the letter you hear in **d**.

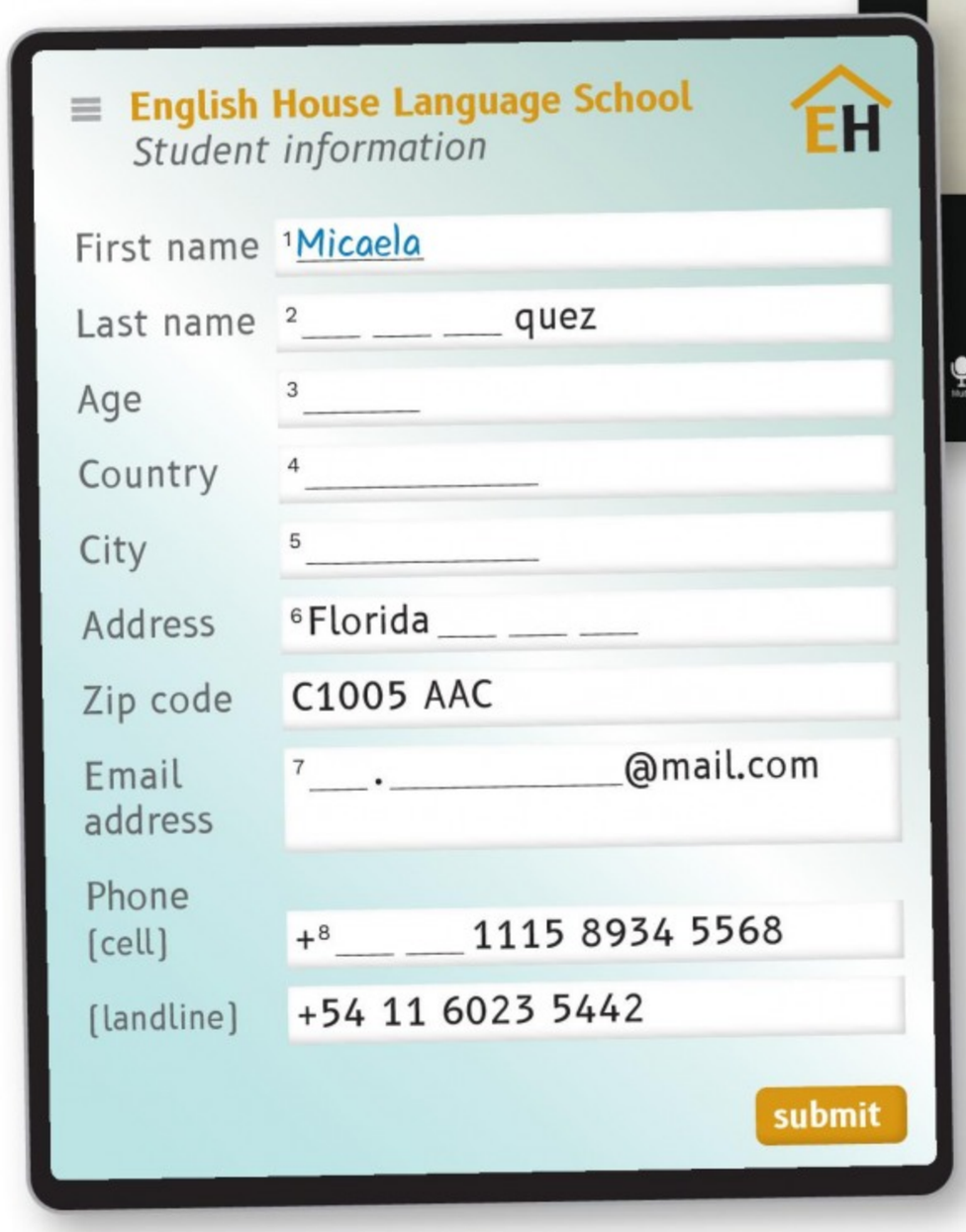
f Say the abbreviations.

a **V**ery **I**mportant **P**erson
the **U**nited **S**tates of **A**merica
the **U**nited **K**ingdom
the **E**uropean **U**nion
a **P**ortable **D**ocument **F**ormat
a **C**hief **E**xecutive **O**fficer
Estimated **T**ime of **A**rrival
a **P**ersonal **A**ssistant

3 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a Video Watch the beginning of *A new student*. Who are Harry and Micaela? What's the problem?

b Video Watch the whole interview. Complete the form.



c 1.32 Listen. Complete the questions.

1 What's your first name?
2 _____ do you spell it?
3 _____ your last name?
4 _____ old are you?
5 Where are you _____?
6 _____ your address?
7 _____ your zip code?
8 What's your _____ (address)?
9 What's your phone _____?

Sentence stress

In sentences we stress the important words.

***What's** your **first name**?* *It's **Micaela**.*

d Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.

e Work with a partner. Ask the questions in **c** and write the answers.

Saying email addresses

@ = at . = dot

4 GRAMMAR possessive adjectives

a Complete the conversations with *I*, *you*, *my*, or *your*.

A Where are 1you from?
B 2_____'m from Argentina.

A What's 3_____ name?
B 4_____ name's Micaela.

b Grammar Bank 1C *p.132*

c 1.34 Listen. Change the sentences.

1 I'm Matt. *My name's Matt.*
2 You're Sally. *Your name's Sally.*

d 1.35 Look at the photos. Are they their real names? Listen and check.


John Legend


Billie Eilish

e Communication What's his / her real name? **A** *p.104* **B** *p.109* Complete information about some actors and singers.

5 WRITING completing a form

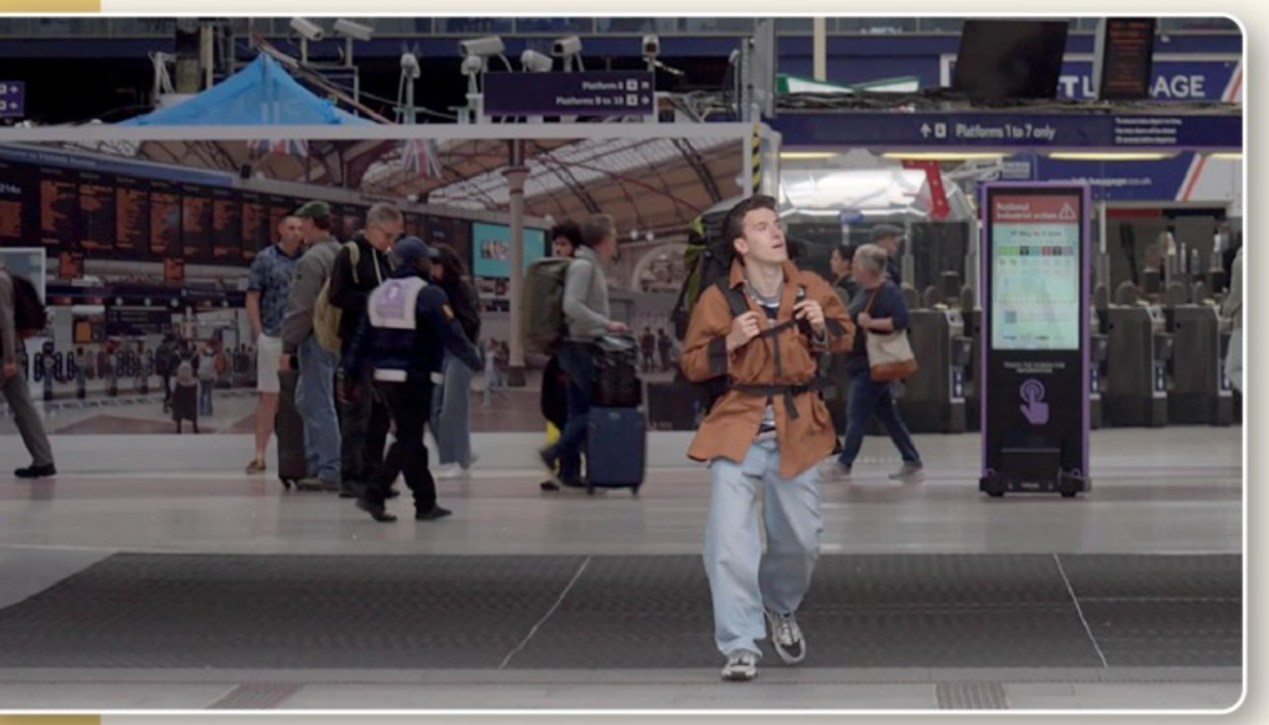
Writing Bank 1 *p.115* Complete an application for a visa.

EPISODE 1 PICTURES OF YOU

A new city

Practical English checking in V in a hotel

1 BEN ARRIVES IN LONDON



a Video Watch *Ben arrives in London.* Check (✓) what you see.

In Ben's photos

Ben ☐ a camera ☐ a train ☐ a plane ☐ a bus ☐

In London

a train station ☐ a girl ☐ a phone ☐
a hotel ☐ a bike ☐

b Watch again. Then circle the correct word.

1 He's *23* / *25* years old.
2 Ben is *British* / *American*.
3 He's from *California* / *Carolina*.
4 He's a photography *student* / *teacher*.
5 It's his *first* / *second* time in England.
6 Emma is his *mom* / *sister*.

2 CHECKING IN

a 1.36 V Match the words and symbols. Then listen and check.

1 2 3 4 5



☐ a double room /ˈdʌbl rum/
☐ the elevator /ˈɛləˌveɪtər/
☐ the first (second, third, etc.) floor /fərst flɔr/
☐ reception /rɪˈsɛpʃn/
☐ a single room /ˈsɪŋgl rum/

b Cover the words and look at the symbols. Say the words.

c Video Watch *Checking in.* Then answer the questions about Ben.

1 How many nights is his reservation for? _____
2 What's his room number? _____

d Watch again. Complete the **You hear** phrases.

You hear	You say
Good [1] _____.	Hi. I have a reservation for four nights. My name is Ben Fischer.
Can you [2] _____ your surname, please?	It's F-I-S-C-H-E-R.
Can I have your [3] _____, please?	Just a moment. Here you go.
Thank you. Can you sign here, Mr. Fischer?	Sure.
Thank you. Here's your [4] _____. It's room 12, on the second floor. The [5] _____ is over there.	The lift? Oh, the elevator.
Yes. Would you like a [6] _____ of London?	Yes, please.
Here you are. Enjoy your stay, Mr. Fischer.	Thank you.

American English	British English
elevator	lift
last name	surname
on vacation	on holiday



e Video Watch and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the rhythm. Then practice the conversation with a partner.

Requests and offers

Can you...? = Please do it.
Can you spell that?
Can you sign here?

Can I have...? = Please give me.
Can I have your passport, please?
Can I have my key, please?

Would you like...? = Do you want...?
Would you like a map?
Yes, please. / No, thanks.

f **ROLE-PLAY** Work in pairs. Have conversations.

1 **A** You are the receptionist.
It's 11:00 a.m.
B's room is 14 on the second floor.
Begin: *Good morning*.

B You arrive at the hotel. Use your first name and last name.
Begin: *Hello. I have a reservation...*

2 **B** You are the receptionist.
It's 4:00 p.m.
A's room is 7 on the first floor.
Begin: *Good afternoon*.

A You arrive at the hotel. Use your first name and last name.
Begin: *Hello. I have a reservation...*

Greetings

Good morning	=	> 12:00 p.m. (noon)
Good afternoon	=	12:00 p.m. > 6:00 p.m.
Good evening	=	6:00 p.m. >

3 IN THE PARK

a Video Watch *In the park*. Then number the photos 1–4.



b Watch again. Who says...? Write **B** (Ben) or **I** (Izzy).

1 This is a great camera! ___
2 Is my bag OK here? ___
3 Where are you from in the US? ___
4 I'm very tired. ___
5 This is my favorite park. ___
6 What's your name? ___

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

a Match the phrases from **A** with the responses in **B**.

A	B
1 Can I take a photo?	___ Yes, I am.
2 You're American, right?	___ Sure.
3 What do you think of London?	___ You're welcome.
4 Are you on holiday?	___ No, I'm a student.
5 Thank you.	___ It's nice. I like it.



b Video Watch and check.

c In pairs, practice the phrases and responses. Then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In pairs, look at the list. Say if you think they are *nice*, *OK*, or *not very nice*.

Ben Izzy London the hotel the park

2A Your desk and you

G singular and plural nouns
V things, *in*, *on*, *under*
P final *-s* and *-es*

What are they? *They're keys.*

1 VOCABULARY things

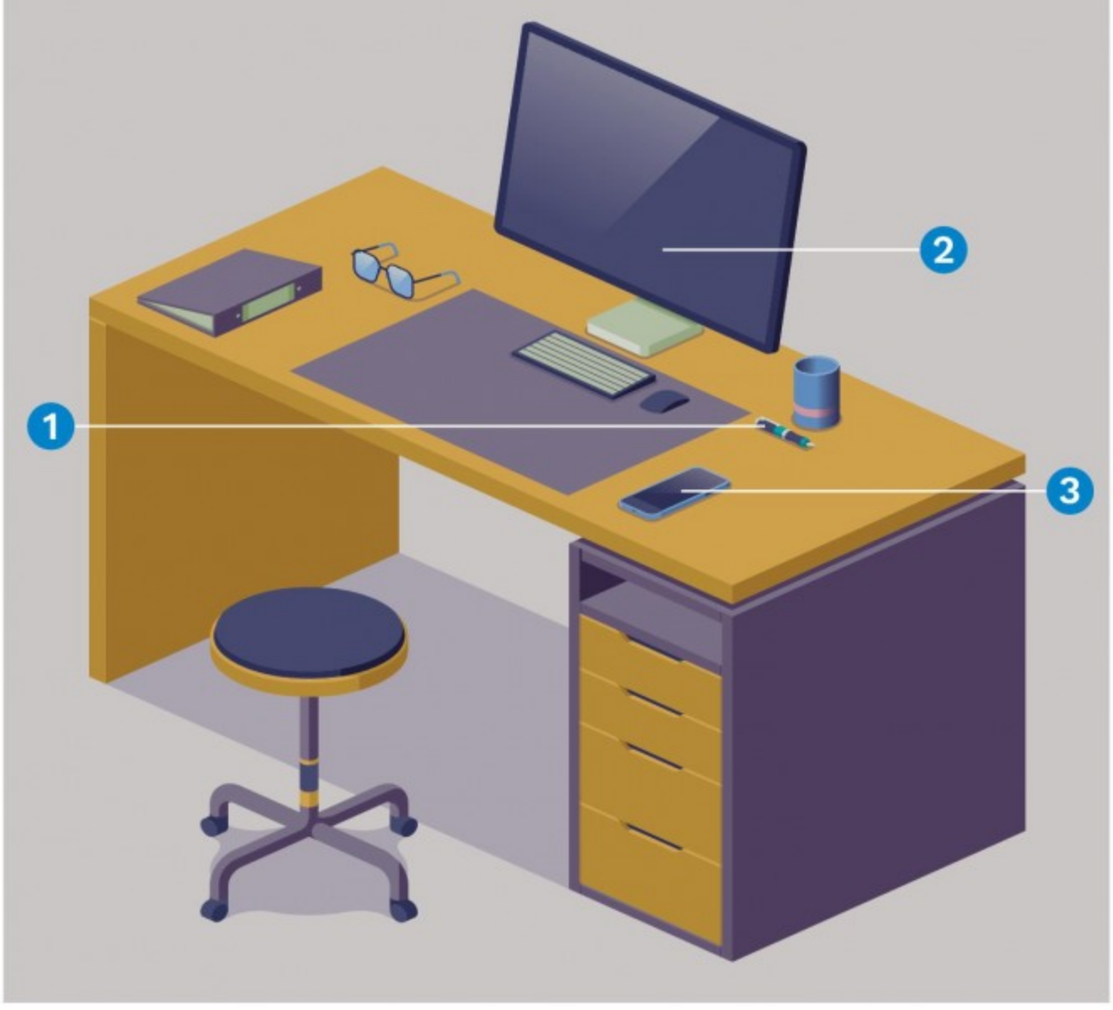
a Look at the pictures. Which desk is like your desk?

b Can you name things 1–12 in the pictures?

c V **Vocabulary Bank** Things *p.159*

d Look at the four desks again. Name all the things from the Vocabulary Bank that you can see.

The neat desk



The messy desk



The techie desk



The personalized desk



2 GRAMMAR & PRONUNCIATION
singular and plural nouns, final *-s* and *-es*

a Complete the chart. Why is it ***a*** *pen*, but ***an*** *umbrella*?

Singular	Plural
 a pen	 two pens
 an umbrella	 two _____
 ___ _____	 two watches
 ___ _____	 two dictionaries

b **Grammar Bank** 2A *p.134*

c Video Watch and repeat the sounds and words.

snake	book**s** lamp**s** ticket**s**
zebra	key**s** pen**s** photo**s**
/ɪz/	glass**es** change purs**es** watch**es**

Final *-s* or *-es*
With plural nouns ending in *ce*, *ch*, *ge*, *se*, *sh*, *ss* and *x*, the final *-s* or *-es* is pronounced /ɪz/, e.g., *glasses*.

d 2.3 Circle the words where *-es* is pronounced /ɪz/. Listen and check.

1 classes
2 files
3 headphones
4 boxes
5 pieces
6 tissues
7 pages
8 phones

e Video Watch the video. Play the memory game.

3 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
in, *on*, *under*

a Look at the photos. Complete the sentences with *in*, *on*, or *under*.



1 The glasses are _____ the notebook.
2 The credit cards are _____ the wallet.
3 The bag is _____ the desk.

b **Communication** *in*, *on*, *under* **A** *p.104* **B** *p.109*
Where are the things?

4 LISTENING

a 2.4 Listen to three people. Match them (1–3) to the places they talk about.

in her bag	
on his desk	
in her study	

b Listen again. Write what things the people have in each place.

c Talk to a partner about your bag, desk, or study. Say what things you have. Are you neat or messy?

In my bag I have a change purse, keys, my phone...

2B Made in the USA

- G adjectives
- V colors, adjectives, modifiers: *very / really*
- P long and short vowel sounds

Are taxis cheap in New York? — *No, they're really expensive.*

1 VOCABULARY colors, adjectives

a What color is the American flag? Complete the words with vowels.

It's r__d, wh__t__, and bl__ __.

b 2.5 Complete the colors. Listen and check.

bl__ck y__ll__w gr__y
__r__ng__ br__wn p__nk gr__ __n
p__rpl__ s__lv__r g__ld

c Practice colors. Ask and answer questions about things in the classroom or in your bag.

What color is my wallet? — *It's red.*

What color is that? — *It's black.*

d V **Vocabulary Bank** Adjectives *p.160*

2 GRAMMAR adjectives

a Look at the American icons. What are they? Label the photos using an adjective and a noun from each circle.

Adjectives
~~American~~ New French yellow blue fast White

Nouns
House jeans ~~football~~ food fries York taxis

b Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 Can I have *French fries / fries French*, please?
2 In New York the taxis are *yellows / yellow*.

c G **Grammar Bank** 2B *p.134*

d Video Watch and make phrases with an adjective + noun.

1 tall trees



3 PRONUNCIATION
long and short vowel sounds

a Video Watch and repeat the sounds. Which sounds are long?



fish	tree	clock



saw	bull	boot

b 2.8 Listen and write two adjectives in the chart for each sound.

c Make phrases with an adjective and a noun with the same vowel sound. Use *a* with singular nouns.

Adjectives
~~big~~ cheap good hot long new

Nouns
book boots ~~city~~ chocolate jeans song

a big city

d 2.9 Listen and check. Practice saying the phrases.

4 SPEAKING

a Tell a partner about eight things you have. Use an adjective or a color.

I have a new phone. I have a red car...

b C **Communication** The same or different? **A** *p.105* **B** *p.110* Describe your pictures to a partner. Find the differences.



5 READING

a Read the article once. Complete it with the headings.

Grammar **Pronunciation** **Spelling** ~~**Vocabulary**~~



American and British English – the *same*, but *different*

American and British people speak the same language – English – but with some small differences.

1 Vocabulary Some words are different in British English, for example, they say *postcode* not *zip code*, *holiday* not *vacation*, and *lift* not *elevator*. Some words have different meanings, for example, in American English, *potato chips* are thin slices of fried potatoes. In British English, they are the same as French fries.

2 _____ *Color*, *favor*, and other words that end in *-or* in American English end in *-our* in British English. *Center*, *theater*, and other words that end in *-ter* in American English end in *-tre* in British English.

3 _____ There are some small differences, especially prepositions. For example, British people say *at the weekend*, but Americans say *on the weekend*.

4 _____ This is the really important difference between British and American English. British accents and American accents are very different. When British people start speaking, Americans know they are British, and vice versa.

b 2.10 Listen and read the article again. Check your answers to **a**.

c Cover the article and answer the questions.

1 What are these words in American English?
postcode *holiday* *lift*

2 How do you spell these words in American English?
colour *centre*

3 How is this phrase different in American English?
at the weekend

4 Are American and British accents the same?

d Do you know any more words that are British English, not American English?

2C Don't worry. Be happy!

G imperatives, *let's*
V feelings
P linking

I'm cold. *Close the window!*

1 VOCABULARY feelings



a Match the words and pictures.

angry	bored	cold
frightened	happy	hot
hungry	sad	stressed
thirsty	tired	worried

b 2.11 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat the phrases.

Collocation

Use *be* + *hungry*, *thirsty*, *hot*, etc., e.g., *I'm hungry*. **NOT** ~~*I have hungry.*~~

c How do you feel? Make true sentences.

I'm hungry. I'm very tired.

2 LISTENING & READING



a Lisa and Mel are on vacation with Alfie. Look at pictures 1–4. How do you think they feel?

b 2.12 Listen to the story. Complete the feelings.

Picture 1: Lisa and Mel are *stressed*.

Picture 2: Lisa's _____. Mel and Alfie are _____.

Picture 3: Lisa's _____. Mel and Alfie are _____. Then Mel is _____.

Picture 4: Lisa and Alfie are _____.

c Listen again and read the story. Check your answers to **b**.

d 2.13 Listen to the end of the story. Is it a happy ending?

1 **GPS** In 100 feet, turn left. Turn left.
Lisa Don't turn right! Turn left!
Mel It's right, I'm sure.
Lisa No, it isn't.
Mel Yes, it is!
Lisa No, it isn't! This is wrong!

2 **Lisa** I'm thirsty. Where's the water?
Mel Sorry, it's empty.
Lisa Empty?
Mel Yes, empty. I'm hungry. And Alfie's hungry. Let's stop at a café.
Lisa OK, good idea.

3 **Mel** Brr...
Lisa What's the matter?
Mel I'm cold. Can you close your window?
Lisa I'm not cold! I'm hot!
Mel Well, I'm cold. And Alfie's cold.
Lisa OK.
Mel And please don't drive fast! It's really dangerous.
Lisa It's fine. Don't worry!
Mel Be careful!

4 **Lisa** It's late. Let's look for a hotel.
Mel Oh, let's not stop now.
Lisa I'm tired and it's dark. And Alfie's tired, too.
Mel OK, OK. Look for a hotel near here.
Lisa The Highland Hotel's 20 miles from here.
Mel Fine, no problem. Let's go there.

3 GRAMMAR imperatives, *let's*

a Look at the highlighted phrases in the story. Then complete the chart.

	Imperatives	Suggestions
+	Turn left. _____ careful! _____ for a hotel.	_____ stop at a café. Let's _____ there.
−	_____ turn right! _____ drive fast! _____ worry.	Let's _____ stop.

b **Grammar Bank** 2C *p.134*

c What do signs 1–8 mean? Make + or − imperatives with the verb phrases.

be careful cross the road now eat or drink here
go in here ~~smoke here~~ take photos ~~turn left~~
turn off your phone



1 Turn left. 2 Don't smoke here.

d Cover the verb phrases and look at the signs. Can you remember the phrases?

4 PRONUNCIATION linking

Connected speech
When people speak, they don't separate all the words. Often, if a word ends with a consonant sound and the next word begins with a vowel sound, they link them together, e.g., *Good idea*.

a 2.15 Listen and write six sentences.

b Practice saying the sentences.

5 SPEAKING

Communication What's the matter? **A** *p.105* **B** *p.110* Role-play conversations.

What's the matter?
I'm cold. Can you close your window?

6 LISTENING

a Video With a partner, think of three good tips for a long car trip. Then watch *Have a safe trip!* Are your tips there?



b Complete the ten tips with a word from the list.

car check gas map phone
~~plan~~ stop tablets traffic water

1 Plan your trip.
2 Check your _____.
3 Listen to _____ information on the radio.
4 Take a _____ with you in the car.
5 Take bottles of _____.
6 Take books, games, and _____ with you.
7 _____ that all the passengers in the car have their seat belt on.
8 Check that you have _____.
9 After driving for two hours, _____ for 15 minutes.
10 Don't use your _____.

c Which three tips do you think are the best?

7 WRITING messages, notes, and notices

Writing Bank 2 *p.116* Write three short texts using imperatives.

1&2 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 Hi. I'm Leo. ___ your name?
a What b What are c What's

2 María is Argentinian. ___ a student.
a She's b He's c It's

3 **A** Where ___ from? **B** He's from Türkiye.
a he is b is c is he

4 They ___ American. They're Canadian.
a isn't b aren't c not are

5 **A** Are you from Paris? **B** Yes, ___.
a I am b I'm c I are

6 She's Brazilian. ___ name's Daniela.
a His b Her c Your

7 We're from the US. ___ last name is Martin.
a Your b Their c Our

8 **A** What are they? **B** They're ___.
a watches b a watch c watchs

9 **A** What is it? **B** It's ___.
a a umbrela b an umbrela c an umbrella

10 It's an ___.
a animal ugly b ugly animal c beautiful animal

11 I have a ___.
a bag very big b very bag big c very big bag

12 They're very ___.
a expensive earphones b earphones expensive
c expensives earphones

13 ___ careful! That's my new laptop.
a Have b Be you c Be

14 Please ___ in the library.
a not eat b don't eat c no eat

15 I'm hungry. ___ stop at the café.
a Let's b Let c Don't

VOCABULARY

a Complete with *at*, *from*, *in*, *off*, or *to*.

1 I'm _____ Japan.
2 Nice _____ meet you.
3 How do you say *bonjour* _____ English?
4 Look _____ the board.
5 Please turn _____ your phone.

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

Answer Read Share Turn on Work

1 _____ the text.
2 _____ in pairs.
3 _____ your screen.
4 _____ your camera.
5 _____ the questions.

c Circle the word that is different.

one book six three

1 eight file seven two
2 Chinese Egypt Morocco Thailand
3 Czech France Mexican Spanish
4 Africa Asia Europe Nigeria
5 sixteen forty eighty ninety
6 Friday Germany Monday Wednesday
7 glasses headphones change purse scissors
8 door school window wall
9 book magazine newspaper wallet
10 angry happy stressed tired

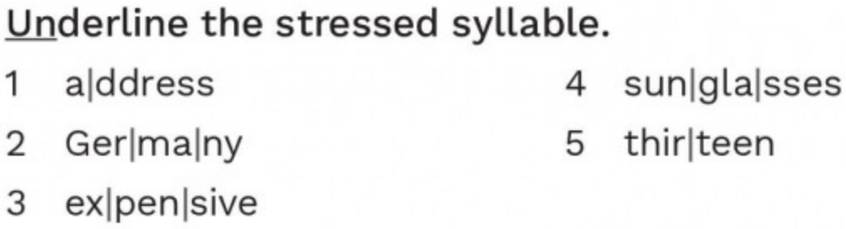
d Write the opposite adjective.

1 good _____
2 difficult _____
3 dirty _____
4 high _____
5 left _____

PRONUNCIATION

a Practice the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds



Consonant sounds

b Sound Bank *p.174–5* Say more words for each sound.

c What sound do the **pink** letters have in these words?

1 email tree
2 fast _____
3 page _____
4 sit _____
5 tissues _____

d Underline the stressed syllable.

1 a|ddress
2 Ger|ma|ny
3 ex|pen|sive
4 sun|gla|sses
5 thir|teen

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

Can you understand this text?

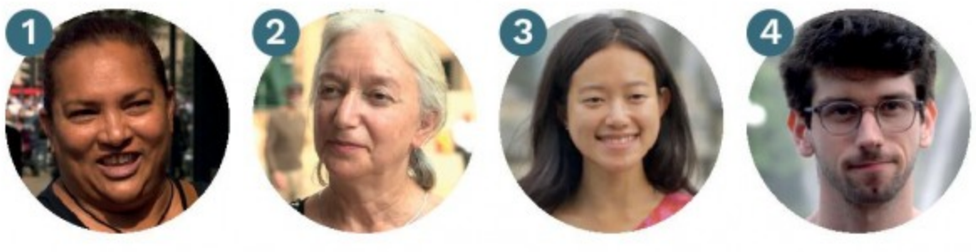
a Read the article once. Is it for...?

a local people b tourists c friends and family

b Read the article again. Match headings A–E to paragraphs 1–5.

A Visit a historic place
B Travel around the city
C Watch a game
D Take a typical photo of San Francisco
E Have lunch by the ocean

Can you understand these people?



Video Watch and answer the questions.

1 Her name is ___.
a Malini b Mallini c Malinni

2 Olga is from ___.
a Mexico b Morocco c Moscow

3 Her name is ___.
a Lydia b Lisa c Lena

She's ___.
a Canadian b American c English

4 Jake's ___ are on his desk.
a pencils b pens c earphones

Can you say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the things you can do.

Can you...?

1 ☐ count from 0–20
2 ☐ count from 20–100 (20, 30, etc.)
3 ☐ say the days of the week
4 ☐ give three instructions, two [+] and one [–]
5 ☐ introduce yourself and another person
6 ☐ answer the questions below

- *What's your first name / last name?*
- *How do you spell it?*
- *Where are you from?*



Top tips

1 _____

Go to the **Golden Gate Bridge Vista Point**. It's in a beautiful park and from here you can see the famous Golden Gate Bridge. Remember to take your camera!

2 _____

Take a boat to **Alcatraz Island** (15 minutes). Don't swim here because it's dangerous, but visit the famous old prison.

3 _____

Go down to the **waterfront**. It's really beautiful. Go shopping or visit a museum. In the afternoon, stop and eat some delicious fish at one of the great restaurants.



4 _____

San Francisco is very big – and very busy! For something different, go to **Oracle Park** and watch the San Francisco Giants. Baseball is a traditional American sport and the Giants are a fantastic team!



5 _____

San Francisco's **cable cars** are old, but every year nine million visitors use them. They're expensive, but they're a good way to travel at the end of a long day.

3A America: for better or for worse

G simple present + and −
V verb phrases: *cook dinner*, etc.
P third person *-s*

I like Italian food. *I like pasta, but I don't like pizza.*

1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a 3.1 Listen and match sounds 1–5 to the verb phrases.

- drink water
- play the guitar
- like animals
- speak German
- watch TV

b V **Vocabulary Bank** Verb phrases *p.161*

c 3.3 Listen. Say the phrases.

1 TV watch TV

2 GRAMMAR simple present + and −

a Read the article. Complete the sentences with a word or phrase from the list. There are three you don't need.

cities clothes coffee food freedom freeways gardens language ~~multiculturalism~~ sports weather

b 3.4 Listen and check.

c Answer the questions.

1 Look at the highlighted phrases. What letter is added to the end of *rain* and *make* in 7 and 8? Why?

2 Find the negative − forms of *have* and *rain* in the text and complete the chart. How are they different? Why?

+	I have	It rains
−		

d G **Grammar Bank** 3A *p.136*



WHAT AMERICANS LIKE ABOUT THE US

1



I like the multiculturalism. People from all over the world live in the US, and we live together happily. Usually.

2



For me, it's the _____. English is international. I speak English. You speak English. I'm lucky – I don't have communication problems.

3



I like the _____. I have a large cup every day. When I'm in a hurry, I go to the drive-through and buy it from my car.

4



I love the _____. I wear what I want. I say what I want. I do what I want.

5



One thing I really like is the _____. I like all kinds, but I really like basketball. My favorite team is the Golden State Warriors. I watch their games on TV.

6



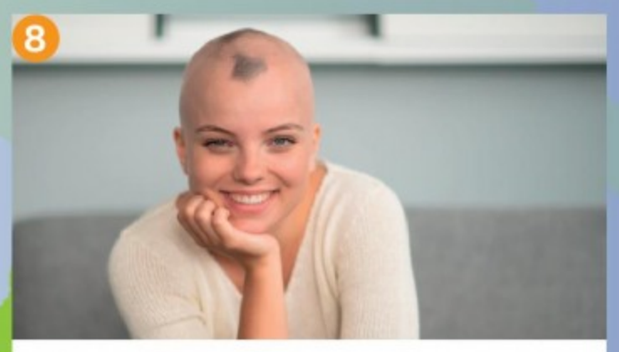
I like the _____. They have a lot of car lanes and are very fast. It's really easy to drive from one place to another.

7



I really like the _____ here, especially in the fall. A good fall day is cool, but not too cold. Sometimes it rains, but it doesn't rain every day.

8



I love the _____. My boyfriend makes really good burritos, and the US has great Mexican restaurants!

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

3 PRONUNCIATION third person -s

a How do you pronounce these plural nouns?

books keys watches

Final -s or -es

The pronunciation rules for verbs ending in -s and -es are the same as for plural nouns.

b 3.6 Listen and repeat the sounds and sentences.

/s/ She speaks Arabic.
He drinks a lot of coffee.
She cooks every day.

/z/ It rains a lot.
He has a cat.
She does yoga.
He goes out on Friday night.

/ɪz/ He watches Netflix.
The movie finishes soon.
The bookstore closes at ten.



c 3.7 Listen. Change the sentences.

1 I live in an apartment. She...
She lives in an apartment.

d Work in pairs. Tell your partner six true things about you, three + and three −. Choose verb phrases from **Vocabulary Bank** Verb phrases *p.161*.

I play tennis. I don't like dogs...

e Change partners. Tell your new partner the six things about your old partner.

Eva plays tennis. She doesn't like dogs...

4 READING

a Read the article. Write ✓ if the comment is positive about the US, ✗ if it's negative, and ✓✗ if it's positive and negative.

b Read the article again. Find a word or phrase in each paragraph for definitions 1–6.

1 _____ = put in the opposite order
2 _____ = not have a lot of interest in
3 _____ = the place where you pay for things in a store
4 _____ = very big
5 _____ = not understand something
6 _____ = strange

c Look at each paragraph again. What is the situation in your country?

In Mexico, we write the day first in dates.

What's **strange** about the US (if you're not from there)?

Here's what six young people from different countries say about living in the US.

1 ☐ "Dates can be confusing in the US because Americans switch the numbers for the day and the month. They put the month first, so 5/7 means May 7th. In my home country, we write the day first, so 5/7 means 5th of July."

2 ☐ "College sports are like a religion here, especially American football and basketball. Americans support their university teams even after they leave college! The people in my country love soccer, but they don't care much about university soccer teams."



3 ☐ "I don't understand sales tax. Why isn't it just part of the price? I'm always surprised when the cashier adds the tax at the checkout."

4 ☐ "Many restaurants here serve huge plates of food! I'm a big eater, and I love a meal that's big enough for three people!"

5 ☐ "People often eat on public transportation. Pizza on the subway. Burritos on the bus. Sushi in a taxi. Yuck! I don't get it."

6 ☐ "When you watch TV, you see a lot of ads for medicine! They are really, really long. And they list all the bad things about the drug! It's very weird!"



5 SPEAKING

Useful words: *Why?* and *because*

Use *because* to answer the question *Why?*
I don't like the weather ***because*** *it rains a lot.*

a Answer the questions. Think about why.

What things do you like about your country?
What do you think foreigners like about your country? What do they think is strange?

I like the food in Italy because I love pasta and real Italian pasta is fantastic...

b Compare your answers with a partner and say why. Do you like the same things?

3B Goodbye to the office?

G simple present ?
V jobs
P /ər/

Do you work from home? *No, I'm a taxi driver.*

1 GRAMMAR simple present ?

a Look at the photo of Ollie and Andrew, and the title of the interview. What do you think "WFH" means?



[1] What do you do, Ollie?
I work in digital marketing. I do the social media for different companies on Facebook, Instagram, and Google.

What about Andrew? [2] _____

_____

He works for a publishing company. He's an editor, and he works on textbooks for schools.

[3] _____

I work at the kitchen table most of the time. Andrew's in the office two days a week, but usually he sits across from me. We live in a very small apartment!

[4] _____

Not really. I start at about 10:00, when I get back from the gym, and I finish at about 6:00.

And Andrew? [5] _____

_____

He also works from 10:00 until 6:00, but sometimes he works in the evenings when he's really busy.

What do you think are the pros and cons of working from home?

The good thing is that I don't need to travel to work. That's fantastic. And we have lunch together. The bad thing is that sometimes we need to make phone calls or have meetings, so one of us needs to go to another room. And I miss chatting with people at work, and going out with them after work.

Do you have tips for other people who work from home together?

Tell the other person when you have meetings or phone calls. Work in another space for some of the week, if possible. Don't sit in the same place all day – stand up and move, make coffee. Stop work for lunch, and turn off your computer. And it helps if you like the same music!

b Read the interview. Complete 1–5 with questions from the list.

Does he work long hours?
~~**What do you do, Ollie?**~~
What does he do?
Do you work long hours?
Where in the house do you work?

c 3.8 Listen and check.

d Cover the interview and look at the questions in **b**. How does Ollie answer them?

e Do you, or does anyone you know, work from home? What do you think are the pros + and cons – ?

f Look at the questions in **b** again. Which are...?

1 about Ollie
2 about Andrew
3 about Ollie and Andrew

g G **Grammar Bank** 3B *p.136*

2 VOCABULARY jobs

a Complete the sentences with a job from the list.

actor	administrator	receptionist	teacher	server

1 An _____ works in a theater.
2 A _____ works in a school.
3 A _____ works in a café or restaurant.
4 A _____ works in a hotel.
5 An _____ works in an office.

b V **Vocabulary Bank** Jobs *p.162*

c Video Watch and guess the jobs.

d What do you do? What do your family and friends do? Ask three other students in the class.



3 PRONUNCIATION /ər/

a Video Watch and repeat the sound and words.

 **bird**	nurse thirty her work journalist

/ər/

ur, *ir*, and *er* are usually pronounced /ər/.

b 3.12 Listen to the sentences. Then practice saying them.

Doctors and lawyers earn a lot.
Journalists work all over the world.
She's a teacher. Her name's Ursula.
He's a taxi driver. He works thirty hours a week.
I'm a server in a burger restaurant.
I study German at the university.

4 LISTENING

a 3.13 Listen to Part 1 of a show called *What's My Job?* Three people introduce Mike and say what his job is. Complete row 1 in the chart.

b 3.14 Listen to Part 2. Complete rows 2 and 3 in the chart. What do you think Mike does?

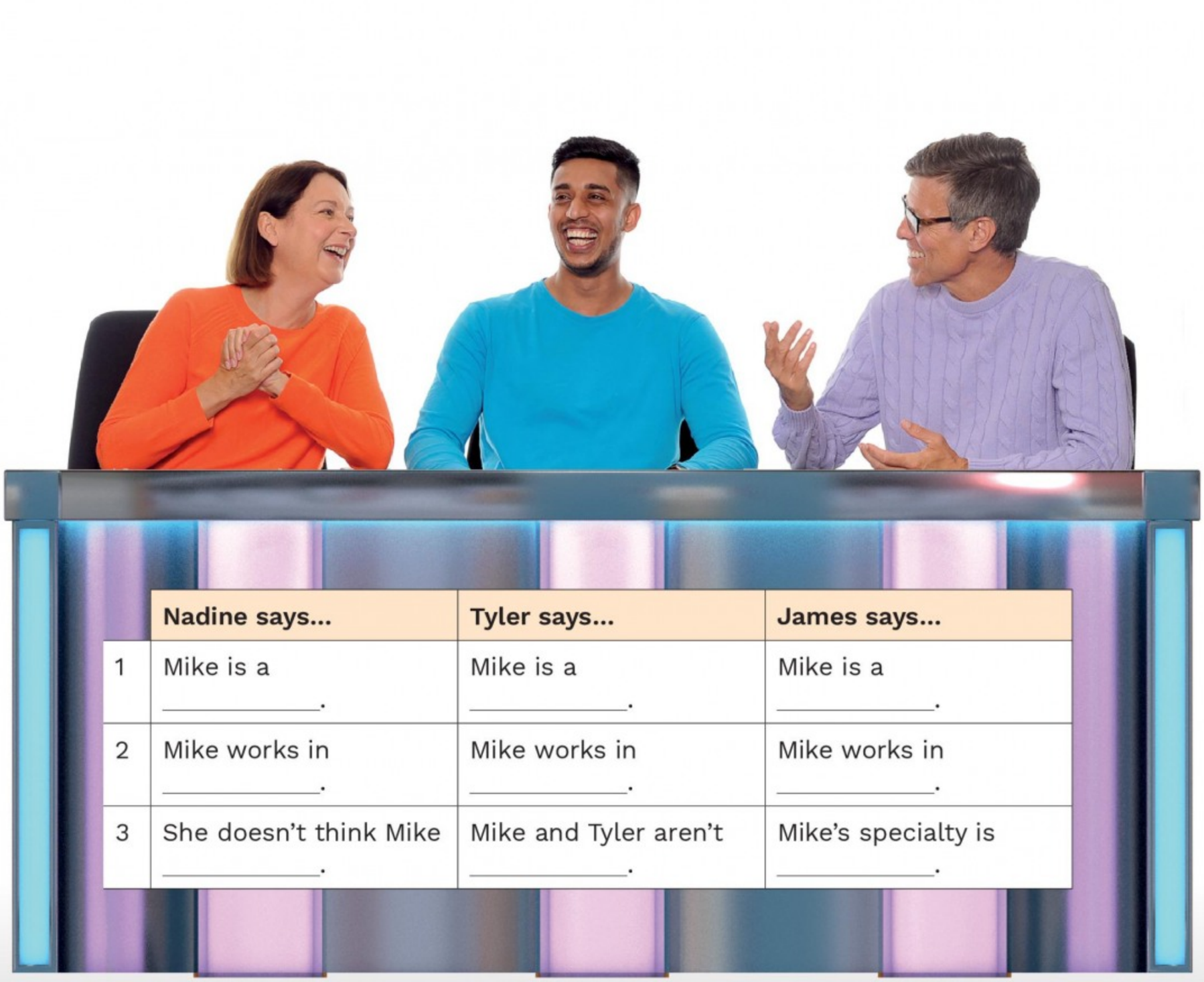
c 3.15 Listen to Part 3. Complete the questions Team B ask Mike. Write his answers: ✓ for yes, ✗ for no. Now what do you think he does?

1 _____ you _____ a uniform or special clothes?
2 _____ you _____ special qualifications?
3 _____ you _____ on a team?
4 _____ you _____ inside?
5 _____ you _____ on the weekend?
6 _____ you _____ your job?

d 3.16 Listen to Part 4. What does Mike do?

5 SPEAKING

C **Communication** What's my job? *p.114*
Play the jobs game in groups of three.





	Nadine says...	Tyler says...	James says...
1	Mike is a _____.	Mike is a _____.	Mike is a _____.
2	Mike works in _____.	Mike works in _____.	Mike works in _____.
3	She doesn't think Mike _____.	Mike and Tyler aren't _____.	Mike's specialty is _____.

3C

Are you a "dog person"?

G word order in questions
V question words
P sentence stress

What kind of music do you like? *I like classical music.*



1 LISTENING

a 3.17 Look at the photo. Then listen and match the names to the people and dogs 1–4. What do you find out about the dogs?

Dolly Becca Dave Barry

b 3.18 Listen to their conversation at the café. What happens at the end?

c Listen again. Complete the questions.

D It's really hot. Would you [1] like a drink? Or some ice cream?
B Yes, why not? Let's go to the café.
D [2] _____ kind of ice cream do you _____?
B Uh, an ice-cream bar if they have it.
D Here you are. One ice-cream bar.
B Thanks, Dave.
D [3] _____ do you _____?
B I live near here, on Park Road. And you?
D I live across town, on Lake Street. [4] _____ do you _____, Becca?
B I'm a journalist.
D Really? How interesting! Do you [5] _____ for a newspaper?
B No, for TV. [6] _____ about you?
D I'm a teacher. I'm on vacation now.
B Me too. Oh! My ice cream.
D Dolly! Bad dog! I'm really sorry.
B That's OK.
D Do you [7] _____ another ice-cream bar?
B No, thanks.
D Are you sure? I'm really sorry. Look, let's have lunch one day. I know a great place that's dog-friendly. Are you free on Saturday?
B Oh, well, OK. Yes. Thanks.

Showing interest

When you have a conversation, show interest in what the other person says. Use *Really? How interesting! What about you? Me too.*, etc.

d 3.19 Listen and repeat the phrases for showing interest. Copy the intonation.

e Practice the conversation in **c** with a partner.

f 3.20 Becca meets Dave for lunch. Do you think it's a success? Why?

g 3.20 Listen again and circle the correct options.

1 Dave *is* / *isn't* happy to see Becca.
2 Becca *likes* / *doesn't like* the restaurant.
3 Dolly *is* / *isn't* there.
4 Dave *likes* / *doesn't like* dogs.
5 Becca *likes* / *doesn't like* dogs.
6 Becca and Dave *like* / *don't like* cats.
7 Becca wants spaghetti carbonara and *ice cream* / *chocolate cake* for lunch.

h Are you a "cat person" or a "dog person"?

2 GRAMMAR word order in questions

a Put the words in order to make the questions.

1 Barry is old how
_____?

2 his name what's
_____?

3 like do it you
_____?

4 about feel do cats you how
_____?

b 3.21 Listen and check.

c **Grammar Bank** 3C *p.136*

3 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION question words, sentence stress

a Complete the questions with a question word or phrase.

How many ~~What~~ What kind of
When Where Which Who Why

1 What phone do you have?
I have a Samsung.

2 _____ brothers and sisters do you have?
I have two sisters.

3 _____ do you prefer, pizza or pasta?
Pizza, I think.

4 _____ do you work?
In a restaurant near the river.

5 _____ do you have language classes?
On Mondays and Wednesdays.

6 _____ music do you like?
I like pop and reggae.

7 _____'s your favorite actor?
Benedict Cumberbatch.

8 _____ do you like him?
Because he's a fantastic actor.

b 3.24 Listen and check. Then answer the questions.

1 How is *Wh-* pronounced in *Who?*
2 How is *Wh-* pronounced in the other question words?
3 What's the difference in meaning between *What...?* and *Which...?*



c 3.25 Listen to the questions. Then listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

Where do you **work**?
What phone do you **have**?
What kind of **music** do you **like**?
Who's your **favorite actor**?

d Work in pairs. **A** ask **B** the questions in **3a**. **B** give your own answers. Then change roles.

4 SPEAKING

a Look at the questions. What words are missing in each group?

Where	_____ _____	live work study	?
What kind of	movies food	_____ _____	like	?
What	sports websites TV shows languages car	_____ _____	play read watch speak have	?
Who What	_____	your favorite	singer actor TV show restaurant	?

b Work in pairs. Interview a partner with the questions in **a**. Then change roles.

A Ask **B** the first question.
B Answer the question. Give more information if you can.
A Show interest. Then ask the next question.

Where do you live?
In the downtown area, near the station.
Really? Me too.

5 WRITING a personal profile

Writing Bank 3 *p.117* Write a profile of yourself.

EPISODE 2 PICTURES OF YOU

First weeks in the city

Practical English | buying a coffee | V telling the time

1 TENSQUARE SCHOOL

a Look at the clock. What time is it?



b V **Vocabulary Bank** Time *p.165* Do Part 1.

c **Communication** What's the time? A *p.105* B *p.110* Practice times.

d Video Watch *Tensquare School*. Then answer the questions.

1 Why isn't Andre happy?
2 What time does the class start?
3 What time is it now?



e Watch again. Then number the sentences in the correct order.

- ☐ Andre says to the class that he wants great photos.
- ☐ Ben is late for class.
- ☐ Andre says, "Go and have a coffee."
- ☐ Andre likes some of Ben's photos.
- ☐ Ben is asleep in class.

2 BUYING A COFFEE



a Look at the coffee shop menu. Do you know what these things are?

ESPRESSO	single 2.80	double 3.65
AMERICANO	regular 3.50	large 4.15
LATTE	regular 4.00	large 4.80
FLAT WHITE	regular 4.15	large 4.95
CAPPUCCINO	regular 4.00	large 4.80
BLACK TEA		2.90
GREEN TEA		2.90
HOT CHOCOLATE		3.50
BROWNIE 4.00		CROISSANT 3.50
OAT MILK		



b Video Watch *Buying a coffee*. What does Ben have?

c Watch again. Complete the **You hear** phrases.

You hear	You say
Can I [1] _____ you?	Hi, (Carla).
Hey, (Ben). What would you like?	Can I have an espresso, please?
[2] _____ or double?	Double. And a brownie, please.
OK. Anything else?	Can I have a latte, please? With oat milk.
[3] _____ or large?	Large.
To have [4] _____ or take away?	To take away.
OK.	How much is that?
That's £12.45, please.	
Thank you. Do you [5] _____ a receipt?	No, thank you.

d Video Watch and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the rhythm. Then practice the conversation with a partner.

e **ROLE-PLAY** Work in pairs. Use the coffee shop menu to have a conversation. Then change roles.

A You are the barista.

Begin: *Can I help you?*

B You are the customer. Order a drink and something to eat.

Begin: *Can I have (an espresso), please?*

American English	British English
For here or to go?	To have here or take away?
cookie	biscuit

3 A SURPRISE MEETING



a Video Watch *A surprise meeting*. Then check (✓) the things Izzy and Ben talk about.

- ☐ Izzy's job
- ☐ Ben's school
- ☐ London
- ☐ Ben's teacher, Andre
- ☐ the coffee shop

b Watch again. Then complete the sentences with *Ben*, *Carla*, or *Izzy*.

1 _____ and _____ talk about Tensquare School.
2 _____ likes her job.
3 _____ and _____ are friends.
4 _____ lives near the coffee shop.
5 _____ and _____ know Andre.
6 _____ asks _____ to go out.

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

a Match a phrase from **A** with a response in **B**.

A	B
1 What would you like (Izzy)? Your usual?	☐ Yes. I come here a lot.
2 How's the job?	☐ Me? Yes.
3 Are you two friends?	☐ Really?
4 I live very near here.	☐ Yes, please.
5 Do you want to go out sometime?	☐ Good! It's long hours, but I like it.

b Video Watch and check.

c In pairs, practice the phrases and responses. Then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In pairs, talk about Izzy, Ben, Andre, and Carla. Say what you know about them. Do you like them? Do you think Ben calls Izzy?

4A Who's that in the photo?

G possessive 's, *Whose...?*
V family
P /ʌ/, the letter o

Who's that? *He's my nephew – my brother's son.*

1 GRAMMAR possessive 's, *Whose...?*

a Look at the title of the article and the photo of Leslie and Lynda. Who do you think their sister is? Do you think it's good or bad to have a famous person in your family?

b Read the article. Now do you know who their sister is?

c Look at the highlighted phrase in the article. What do you think 's after a name means?



We're not famous..., but our sister is!

One family, three sisters. They are very close in age. Lynda is a journalist and TV presenter. Her older sister Leslie is a music teacher and classical musician and has two children. They both live in New York and have normal lives. But they have another sister, who everyone knows. She sings, makes movies, and earns a lot of money. To some people, Leslie and Lynda are always _____'s sisters.

Leslie and Lynda don't like doing interviews. Leslie has a quiet life, away from the fans, but Lynda sometimes travels with her famous sister on tour. They are best friends. When Lynda goes to an event, fans often think she is _____. Lynda is really surprised by the number of fans. She can't believe all these people are here just to see her sister.

Leslie loves her famous sister. But she says, "She's a famous movie star to all of you, but not to me. She's still my sister."

d Look at some photos of actors and singers with family. Choose **a** or **b** below.



1	He's Rihanna's	**a** son.	**b** brother.
2	She's Reese Witherspoon's	**a** sister.	**b** daughter.
3	He's Elton John's	**a** husband.	**b** brother.
4	She's John Cho's	**a** wife.	**b** daughter.
5	She's Miley Cyrus's	**a** mother.	**b** sister.

e 4.1 Listen and check.

f G **Grammar Bank** 4A *p.138*

g Cover the photos in **d**. Whose things are they? Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Whose jacket is it? *It's John Cho's jacket.*



2 VOCABULARY family

a **Vocabulary Bank** The family *p.163*

b Answer the questions.

Who's...?

1 your mother's mother — your *grandmother*
2 your father's brother — your _____
3 your sister's daughter — your _____
4 your aunt's child — your _____
5 your wife's brother — your _____
6 your niece's brother — your _____

3 PRONUNCIATION /ʌ/, the letter o

a Video Watch and repeat the sound and words.

up	mother brother son husband uncle couple cousin

The letter o

The same vowel in English can be pronounced in different ways, e.g., o can be /ɑ/ (*not*), /oʊ/ (*photo*), /ʌ/ (*mother*), and /u/ (*two*).

b How is the letter o pronounced in these words? Put them in the correct column.

~~come~~ ~~do~~ ~~doctor~~ ~~don't~~ go home hot job
London model money no one stop who

clock	phone	up	boot
doctor	don't	come	do

c 4.4 Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

d Practice the conversations with a partner.

1 **A** Who's that? Your sister?
B No, my mother.
A She's very young!
B She's sixty-one. She's a doctor.

2 **A** Who are they?
B My brother and his son.
A Do they live in London?
B No, they don't.

3 **A** What's her job?
B She's a model. She earns a lot of money.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a Video Watch extracts from *Tanya's photos*. Then label the people in the photos with names from the list. There are two names you don't need.

Alex Boris Lena Leon Maria Nadya Stefan



b Video Watch the whole video. Then complete the information about the people. Write **L** (Lena), **S** (Stefan), or **N** (Nadya).

1 ___ is a chef.
2 ___'s partner is named Sam.
3 ___ is a journalist.
4 ___ is a teacher.
5 ___ is Tanya's brother.
6 ___ is Tanya's cousin.
7 ___ is Tanya's sister.
8 ___ lives in London.
9 ___ looks like Lena.
10 ___ lives in Berlin.
11 Alex is ___'s husband.
12 Leon is ___'s son.

c Look at two sentences from the video. Who are they about? What's the difference between *look at* and *look like*?

She's 30, **look at** the cake!

She **looks** very **like** Lena!

d Work with a partner.

A Show **B** some photos of family or friends on your phone or write their names on a piece of paper.

B Ask three questions about each person.

Who's that?

That's Yolanda. She's my sister.

How old is she?

4B Eat, sleep, repeat.

G prepositions: time, place, and movement
V daily routine
P linking

What time do you start work? *At 8:00.*

1 VOCABULARY daily routine

a Video Watch the video about Sally's and Robbie's daily routine. Whose day is more like yours?

b V **Vocabulary Bank** Daily routine *p.164*

c Video Watch without the sound. Say the sentence for each picture.

d What order do you do things in the morning?

First, I wake up, then I...

2 PRONUNCIATION linking

Linked speech

Remember: when people speak, they usually link words together. Sometimes three linked words sound like one word, e.g., *I getupat seven.*

a 4.6 Listen and write five sentences.

1 _____
(5 words)

2 _____
(5 words)

3 _____
(6 words)

4 _____
(6 words)

5 _____
(5 words)

b 4.7 Listen and repeat the sentences. Try to link the words with ◡.

I **get◡up◡**at **se**ven.
I **take◡**a **shower**.
I **go** to **work**.
I **have◡**a **sand**wich for **lunch**.
I **get home◡**at **six**.
I **make** dinner.
I **go** to **bed◡**at **ten**.
What◡a **life**!

3 READING & LISTENING

a Read the article. Use the glossary to help you. How do you think Marjan feels at the end of a typical day? Choose from the adjectives in the list.

bored happy relaxed sad stressed tired

BUSY LIVES



MOTHER...

Marjan Jahangiri, originally from Iran, is the first woman professor of cardiac surgery in the UK. She does more than 300 operations a year. She lives in London with her husband and their 22-year-old son, Darius.

Can you describe your daily routine?

I get up between 6:00 a.m. and 6:30 a.m., I get to work at 7:00 a.m., and my meetings usually start at 7:30 a.m. After that, I don't have a break. I have lunch at my desk. I often do two operations a day, and I also have lectures and more meetings. I have dinner with my son when he's home from university. Between 9:30 p.m. and 11:30 p.m., I do research and I watch the news on TV. One or two nights a week I'm on call, so I probably need to do operations during the night. I often work on weekends, too. But that's OK – I think I have a great life because I love my work.

How do you balance work with your family life?

I'm very close to my son. I want him to learn about hard work and good values, and I want to be an example for him. My husband is away a lot, but we talk on the phone every day. I think one reason why I am successful in my professional life is because he isn't at home all the time!

What do you do to relax?

I play the piano for an hour every day, late at night. I think it helps me with my operations – it's technical in the same way. I also go to the hair stylist twice a week. I do a lot of my research there! They turn the music off for me, and I use the time to read all my academic papers.

Adapted from The Times

Glossary
cardiac surgery an operation to repair somebody's heart
lecture a talk to a group of people to teach them about something, e.g., at a university
do research study something to learn more about it
be on call be available for w

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

b Read the article about Marjan again. Then say when she does these things.

1 does operations *two a day and sometimes during the night*
2 does research
3 has dinner with her son
4 gets to work
5 gets up
6 goes to the hair stylist
7 plays the piano
8 talks to her husband
9 watches TV



Glossary
choir a group of people who sing together
percussion musical instruments, e.g., drums
squash an indoor racket sport

c 4.8 Listen to Darius, Marjan's son, who studies politics at a university. Answer the questions about his day.

1 Why does Darius get up early?
2 What's the difference between lectures and tutorials?
3 Where does he usually study?
4 What three things does he sometimes do after choir?
5 Why doesn't he cook?
6 What time does he go to bed?
7 What does he need to do when his mother comes to visit?

d What do Marjan and Darius have in common? Who do you think is more tired in the evening?

4 GRAMMAR prepositions: time, place, and movement

a Look at some extracts from Darius's day. Complete them with *at*, *in*, *on*, or *to*.

1 I usually get up _____ about 7:00.
2 I have lectures _____ the morning every day...
3 Then I also have tutorials _____ Thursday afternoon...
4 I usually have lunch _____ the university...
5 Sometimes I go _____ a restaurant with my friends...

b 4.9 Listen and check.

c **Grammar Bank** 4B *p.138*

d 4.12 Listen and say the time phrases with the correct preposition.

1 the weekend *on the weekend*

5 SPEAKING

a Look at the questions. What two words are missing?

What time / get up?
/ have breakfast in the morning? What / have?
How / go to work or school?
What time / start work or school?
What time / have lunch? Where?
/ have a long lunch break? How long?
What time / finish work or school?
What / do after work or school?
/ go out during the week? Where / go?
/ relax in the evening? What / do?
When / do your English homework?
What time / go to bed?
How / feel at the end of the day?



b Work in pairs. Interview your partner about a typical weekday with the questions in **a**. What do you have in common?

We both get up at 7:00.

6 WRITING an article

Writing Bank 4 *p.118* Write about your favorite day of the week.

4C Blue Zones

G position of adverbs, expressions of frequency
V months, adverbs, and expressions of frequency
P the letter *h*

How often do you eat fish? *Hardly ever. Maybe once a month.*

1 VOCABULARY months, adverbs, and expressions of frequency

a 4.13 Complete the months in the phone calendar. Listen and check.



b Listen again and repeat the months. Which five are stressed on the second syllable?

c Say the month of your birthday around the class. Which month has the most birthdays?

d V **Vocabulary Bank** Time *p.165* Do Parts 2 and 3.

2 GRAMMAR position of adverbs, expressions of frequency

a Read the text about teenagers. Are teenagers in your country similar?

b Look at the position of the highlighted words and expressions. Circle the correct rule.

1 Adverbs of frequency (e.g., *usually*) go:
before / after a main verb.
before / after the verb *be*.

2 Expressions of frequency (e.g., *every week*) go at the *beginning / end* of a phrase or sentence.

c G **Grammar Bank** 4C *p.138*

d C **Communication** Short life, long life? *p.114* Do the questionnaire.

3 PRONUNCIATION the letter *h*

a Video Watch and repeat the sound and words.

 house	how hardly happy healthy high have hungry

b 4.18 Listen. Circle one word where *h* is not pronounced. Then practice saying the sentences.

Harry's a hair stylist.
He hardly ever has breakfast.
He's often in a hurry.
He usually has half an hour for lunch.
He often has a hamburger for dinner.
Harry isn't very healthy.

c Make true sentences about you with the verb phrases and an adverb or expression of frequency.

be at home on Saturday night be in a hurry
do housework go to the hair stylist have a healthy lunch
take a hot bath sleep for eight hours

I'm not usually at home on Saturday night.

HOME BLOG **NEWS** ABOUT

Teenagers in trouble



Today's teenagers may live shorter lives than their parents because of their unhealthy lifestyles. Recent research shows:

- **69%** of American teenagers have their own smartphone when they are 12 and spend seven hours and 22 minutes on it every day.
- **49%** of French teenagers only exercise once a day, and for less than 20 minutes.
- **77%** of Japanese teenagers are often worried about what other people think about them when they don't do well in exams.
- **70%** of British teenagers hardly ever eat fruit, and 90% don't usually eat enough vegetables.
- **36%** of Brazilian teenagers never have breakfast.

4 READING & SPEAKING

a Look at the photos and read the text. What are the "Blue Zones"? How old do you think Gregoris and María are?

b C **Communication A** Ikaria *p.106* **B** Nicoya *p.111* Read and tell your partner about the place.

c What words and phrases can you remember from the articles? Write words in each category.



5 LISTENING



a Video Watch *The island of Okinawa.* Check (✓) the things you see people in Okinawa do. What two things did you not see?

☐ cook fish	☐ ride bikes	☐ do tai chi
☐ drink soda	☐ eat vegetables	☐ meditate
☐ play mini-golf	☐ ride horses	☐ sing
☐ visit friends	☐ work in the garden	

b Circle the correct option.

1 The island of Okinawa is in the *north* / *south* of Japan.
2 70-year-old Okinawans have the bodies of *50* / *60*-year-olds.
3 *Hara hachi bu* means *don't eat in the evening* / *stop eating before you're full.*
4 They continue to work in their gardens until they are *70* / *80* or more.
5 The Okinawans are *hardly ever* / *never* in a hurry.
6 When Okinawans reach *97* / *100*, they have a ceremony called *kajimaya*.

c What does Okinawa have in common with Ikaria and Nicoya? Are there people in your country who live like this? Is there anything in your lifestyle similar to life in the "Blue Zones"?

What are their secrets?



What do the Greek island of Ikaria, the Nicoya peninsula in Costa Rica, and the island of Okinawa in Japan have in common? The answer is that, together with Loma Linda in California and Ogliastra, in Sardinia, Italy, they are the five so-called "Blue Zones," the best places in the world to live if you want to have a long and healthy life. Many people there live until they are 100 or more. So what are their secrets?





3&4 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 I ___ like coffee.
a not b don't c doesn't

2 My house ___ a big garden.
a has b have c haves

3 ___ English?
a Are they speak b Speak they
c Do they speak

4 ___ your sister drive a yellow car?
a Does b Is c Do

5 **A** Do you work here? **B** Yes, I ___.
a work b do c am

6 **A** What ___? **B** She's an engineer.
a she does b does she c does she do

7 What music ___?
a listen to you b do you listen to
c you listen to

8 ___ is a vet.
a Cara's husband b Husband's Cara
c The Cara's husband

9 This is my ___ favorite restaurant.
a parent's b parents' c parents

10 ___ is this book?
a Who's b Who c Whose

11 We usually have lunch ___ two o'clock.
a in b on c at

12 What time do you go ___ bed?
a in b to c at

13 She ___ late for class.
a never is b is never c isn't never

14 I ___ early.
a usually get up b get usually up
c get up usually

15 I have an English class ___.
a two a week b two the week
c twice a week

VOCABULARY

a **Complete with *at*, *in*, *on*, *to*, or *up*.**

1 _____ Saturday night, I go to the movies.
2 I work _____ a coffee shop.
3 What time do you usually wake _____?
4 My brother lives _____ an apartment.
5 What time do you go _____ work?

b **Complete the phrases with the verbs in the list.**

do	get	go	have	listen	play	read	see	take	wear

1 _____ dressed
2 _____ the dog for a walk
3 _____ lunch
4 _____ your homework
5 _____ shopping
6 _____ the guitar
7 _____ to music
8 _____ friends
9 _____ a book
10 _____ glasses

c **Circle the word that is different.**

1 brother grandfather niece uncle
2 aunt husband mother-in-law stepsister
3 architect cleaner factory pilot
4 always early often never
5 April August July Monday

d **Complete with *How many*, *Who*, *Why*, *What*, or *Where*.**

1 _____ do you live?
2 _____ does your father do?
3 _____ is your favorite family member?
4 _____ hours do you work?
5 _____ do you want to learn English?

PRONUNCIATION

a **Practice the words and sounds.**

Vowel sounds


bird


computer


up


clock

Consonant sounds


house


flower


chess


witch

b **Sound Bank** *p.174–5* **Say more words for each sound.**

c **What sound do the pink letters have in these words?**

1 br**o**ther _____
2 ne**ph**ew _____
3 lun**ch** _____
4 **wh**ich _____
5 w**or**k _____

d **Underline the stressed syllable.**

1 be|cause
2 den|tist
3 un|em|ployed
4 mu|si|cian
5 grand|mo|ther

Can you understand this text?

a Read the article once. Circle two correct adjectives.

David Guetta's life is *relaxing* / *unusual* / *secret* / *normal* / *exciting*.

b Read the article again. Complete the summary with one word in each blank.

David's day starts at around one o'clock in the [1]*afternoon*. He has [2]_____ outside; he drinks juice and [3]_____, but not coffee. Then he answers emails and goes to the [4]_____. David is usually in his [5]_____ during the day, but he doesn't start work until the [6]_____. Before he goes to the nightclub, he has [7]_____ in a restaurant. He [8]_____ work early in the morning. He finds it very difficult to [9]_____ when he arrives home. But David loves his amazing [10]_____ as a superstar DJ.

Can you understand these people?



Talitha Joelle Sophie Jake Tom

Video **Watch and complete the sentences with a word, a number, or a time.**

1 Talitha works _____ hours a week.
2 Joelle's sister is _____ years old.
3 Sophie usually gets up at _____ during the week.
4 Jake goes to the _____ and walks every day.
5 Tom likes the variety, the _____, and the change in New York.

Can you say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the things you can do.

Can you...?

1 ☐ say where you live and what you do
2 ☐ say what time you usually get up and go to bed
3 ☐ say what you do on a typical Monday morning
4 ☐ ask questions with the words below
   - *What sports...?*
   - *What languages...?*
   - *What kind of music...?*
   - *What TV shows...?*



THE SUPERSTAR DJ
David Guetta

I wake up at about 1:00 p.m. and the first thing I do is go outside. I have a house in Ibiza, and I like having breakfast in the sun. I usually have juice, eggs, fruit, and tea. I never drink coffee. After breakfast, I answer my emails for an hour, then I go to the gym.

I never listen to music in the house, or even in the car, because music is my job. On a typical day, I spend two or three hours in my studio, then another four hours at a nightclub. My work starts in the evening. I usually have dinner in a restaurant, and then I go to the club. I try to have a normal life, but my job isn't normal. I arrive at a club like a secret agent – I go in through the back door and security takes me to the stage.

When I finish work, it's 4:00 in the morning and, after four hours playing music, I'm very excited. My manager says, "Go home and sleep." That's impossible. First, I need to calm down. When I get home, I have a cup of tea, brush my teeth, and say, "Thank you for this wonderful life." I am in my 50s now, but I want to do this when I'm 70 or 80. I want to do this forever.

Adapted from The Times



5A Sing me a song.

G *can / can't*
V verb phrases: *buy a pizza*, etc.
P sentence stress

Can you sing? *Yes, but I can't dance.*

1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a Match the words to make verb phrases for things people do in their free time.

play
do
go
watch
have
listen
to the movies
to music
a coffee
TV
the guitar
yoga

b V **Vocabulary Bank** More verb phrases *p.166*

2 LISTENING

a In your country, do you have TV competitions for people who do things well, e.g., sing, dance, or cook? Do you watch them? Why (not)?

b 5.2 Amy goes to an audition for a TV singing competition. Listen and answer questions 1–9 about her audition.

12:30 *In a long line outside the Conference Center*

1 What does Amy need to go into the Conference Center?
2 What else does the security guard want to see?

12:45 *In the waiting area*

3 Where does Amy's friend wait?
4 How many people does the man call?

4:00 *Three hours later*

5 What does Amy's friend say to her before she goes into the audition?
6 What does Amy do with her bag?

4:15 *In the audition*

7 What's Amy's song?
8 What's her problem with the microphone?
9 What does Amy say when they ask her to start her song?

c Video Watch *The auditions*. Vote for Amy, Dan, or Naomi.

d Video Watch *The judges*. Do you agree with them? How does Amy feel? How do you think Dan and Naomi feel?











3 GRAMMAR *can / can't*

a Look at the *can / can't* sentences (1–4) from Amy's story. Match them to their meanings (a–d).

1 ▭ Can you come with me, please?
2 ▭ She can wait there.
3 ▭ You can't take your bag into the audition.
4 ▭ You can't sing!

a It isn't OK.
b You don't know how.
c Please do it.
d It's possible.

b Grammar Bank 5A *p.140*

4 PRONUNCIATION
sentence stress

a 5.4 Listen to the conversations. Then listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

1 A Can you **play** a **musical instrument**?
B **Yes**, I **can**.
A **What** can you **play**?
B I can **play** the **guitar**.

2 A **Where** can I **sit**?
B You can **sit over there**.

3 A Can I **park here**?
B **No**, you **can't**. You **can't park here**.

b 5.5 Listen. Can you hear the difference?

1 **a** I can sing.
b I can't sing.
2 **a** She can dance very well.
b She can't dance very well.
3 **a** He can cook.
b He can't cook.
4 **a** I can come to the meeting.
b I can't come to the meeting.
5 **a** You can park here.
b You can't park here.
6 **a** I can drive.
b I can't drive.

c 5.6 Listen. Circle a or b.

5 SPEAKING

a Work in pairs. Interview each other with the questionnaire. Ask *Can you...?* If the answer is *Yes, I can*, ask *How well?* and write 1 (= not very well), 2 (= well), or 3 (= very well).

WHAT'S YOUR TALENT?

Are you musical, artistic, athletic, or good with words? Why don't you apply for next year's show?



MUSIC

	Yes (✓)	How well? 1, 2, 3
sing		
play an instrument		
dance		
read or write music		



ART

take artistic photos		
draw cartoons		
paint pictures		
design websites or logos		



SPORTS

run a half-marathon		
play a team sport		
do a winter or water sport		
do an individual sport		



WORDS

write short stories		
write poems or song lyrics		
speak foreign languages		
speak in public		

b Look at your partner's answers. What can he or she do? Can you think of any competitions or TV shows he or she can enter?

c Change partners and tell your new partner what your first partner can or can't do.

5B What a noise!

- G present continuous: *be* + verb + *-ing*
- V noise: verbs and verb phrases
- P /ŋ/

What are you doing? *I'm trying to study.*

1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING noise: verbs and verb phrases

a Read some comments about noise on a message board. Guess the meaning of the highlighted verbs and verb phrases.

Noisy family? Noisy neighbors?

Do you have a problem with noise, for example, when you want to study, or at night when you want to sleep? Tell us about your problems.

- ☐ The baby in the apartment upstairs cries all the time.
- ☐ My sister practices the piano for hours.
- ☐ The neighbors' dog barks all day – and all night!
- ☐ The people next door often have noisy parties until 3:00 a.m.
- ☐ The couple next door argues a lot.
- ☐ The people in the apartment next door have the TV on very loud – and their living room is next to my bedroom!
- ☐ The construction workers in the apartment downstairs make a lot of noise.
- ☐ My son plays loud music in his room – awful music, too.
- ☐ My husband's phone pings every time he gets a message. It's a really annoying noise.

b 5.7 Now listen to sounds 1–9. Match them to the comments.

c Work with a partner. Answer questions 1–7.

Are your family, roommates, or neighbors noisy?

1 How many people do you live with?
2 Are they...?
   a very noisy
   b noisy
   c not very noisy
3 Do you have neighbors...?
   a upstairs
   b downstairs
   c next door
4 Are they...?
   a very noisy
   b noisy
   c not very noisy
5 What noises do your family, roommates, or neighbors make? Are the noises a problem for you?
6 Are you noisy? Do you do any of the things in **a**?
7 Do you think people in your country are noisy? Is this a problem?

2 GRAMMAR present continuous

a 5.8 Look at the picture of the houses and listen. Why are Max and his father unhappy?



b Listen again and complete the conversations with verbs from the list.

barking cooking happening having listening making playing practicing trying

1 **Max** Hey, Lucy. I'm [1]_____ to study, and you're [2]_____ too much noise.
Lucy It isn't noise, it's Beethoven. I'm [3]_____ – I have a school concert tomorrow. You can study downstairs.
Max I can't, Jake's [4]_____ a video game.
Lucy What about the kitchen?
Max No, Dad's [5]_____ dinner, and he's [6]_____ to a soccer game. It's impossible to work in this house!

2 **Paul** Isabel! Can you come here?
Isabel What's the matter?
Paul What's [7]_____ next door? Why's their dog [8]_____? I can't hear the radio.
Isabel They're [9]_____ a party in their yard.
Paul Not again! Can you go and talk to them?
Isabel Yes, good idea. It's their second party in three weeks!



c 5.9 Listen. What happens when Isabel goes next door?

d Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb *be*.

+ They _____ having a party next door.
? _____ they playing music?
– No, they _____ playing music. They're talking.

e Read the rule and circle the correct option.

We use the present continuous (*be* + verb + *-ing*) to talk about *now* / *every day*.

f **Grammar Bank** 5B *p.140*

g Video Watch the video. What are the people doing?

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /ŋ/

a Video Watch and repeat the sound and words.

singer	sing**ing** go**ing** do**ing** study**ing**

b In pairs, ask and answer about the people in the picture.

What's she doing?

She's playing the piano. What are they doing?

c **Communication** Spot the differences **A** *p.106* **B** *p.111* Describe the pictures and find seven differences.

4 LISTENING

a 5.11 Listen to a short conversation. What's the woman doing?

b Listen again. What words help you understand the situation?

c 5.12 Now listen to five more conversations. What are the people doing?

d Work with a partner. Choose one of the situations and role-play a conversation.

5C I ❤ Chicago

G simple present or present continuous?
V the weather and seasons
P places in Chicago

Look! It's snowing! *It never snows here.*

1 VOCABULARY & LISTENING
the weather and seasons

a Look at the weather forecast for the week and answer the questions.

1 What's the maximum temperature? What's the minimum?
2 What time of year do you think it is?



b V **Vocabulary Bank** The weather and dates *p.167* Do Part 1.

c Video Watch *The weather in Chicago*. Check (✓) the weather you see.



d Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Then watch again and check. Correct the false sentences.

1 It's often very hot or very cold.
2 The normal temperature in the summer is about 84°F.
3 It never snows in the winter.
4 In the spring and the fall, the weather changes a lot.
5 It's always windy in Chicago.

e What's the weather like where you live in different seasons?

2 GRAMMAR
simple present or present continuous?

a Look at the messages. Why is Mike happy? Why is Tim sad?



b Look at the highlighted verbs. When do we use the simple present? When do we use the present continuous?

c G **Grammar Bank** 5C *p.140*

d C **Communication** What do you do? What are you doing now? **A** *p.107* **B** *p.112* Ask and answer questions.

3 READING & SPEAKING

a Read the questions about things to do in Chicago. Then read the travel guide and find the answers. Answer with **ABT** (Architecture Boat Tour), **OTAF** (Old Town Art Fair), **CM** (Chicago Marathon), or **SK** (Skating Ribbon).

Where can you...?

1 ___ learn about building styles
2 ___ buy North American art
3 ___ see the city from the river
4 ___ do a sport at night
5 ___ watch an international sports event
6 ___ listen to different types of music
7 ___ see famous people
8 ___ enjoy a warm drink after some exercise

b Find the nouns that go with these adjectives in the travel guide.

1 beautiful _____
2 famous _____
3 changeable _____
4 colorful _____
5 delicious _____
6 fantastic _____
7 central _____
8 popular _____

c Talk to a partner.

Which of the four things would you like to do? Why?

What are good things to do at different times of the year where you live?





A city for all seasons

In the spring

Do an architecture boat tour of downtown Chicago. See the buildings and bridges in Chicago's beautiful skyline. Learn about the different styles of Chicago's famous buildings, like the Tribune Tower and the Merchandise Mart building. You can take incredible photos as you pass under the Michigan Avenue Bridge. Spring is great for this tour because it's not too hot or too cold, but be prepared for changeable weather!



In the summer



Go to an art fair. The Old Town Art Fair, for example, is a wonderful art festival for the whole family on the second weekend of June. See colorful paintings and photos, pretty jewelry, and other works by more than 200 artists from all over the country. Listen to musicians play jazz and folk music. Buy delicious food and cold drinks from one of the many stalls around the fair. The weather can be very hot, so take water, and wear a hat and sunscreen.

In the fall

Watch (or run!) the Chicago Marathon. It's one of the biggest marathons in the US and it takes place every October. About 50,000 people from all over the world, including top runners and celebrities, run 26.2 miles through the city. There's a fantastic atmosphere. You can watch anywhere along the route, but the Chicago Theatre and the finish line, near Grant Park, are favorite places. In the fall, the weather is usually good, but be prepared for rain or sun!



In the winter

Celebrate the winter season and go ice skating at the Skating Ribbon. This is a long ice path in one of the central Chicago parks. It opens in mid-November each year and ends at the beginning of March. There are amazing views of the city, especially at night. There are also stalls where you can buy hot chocolate and snacks. Be sure to book tickets for the Skating Ribbon in advance because it's a very popular activity. During the week, entrance is usually free if you bring your own ice skates. No skates? No problem. You can rent some.

4 PRONUNCIATION
places in Chicago

a Video **Place names are sometimes difficult for visitors to pronounce and understand. Watch the video and underline the stressed syllable in the bold words.**

Wrig|ley Field
the **Mag|ni|fi|cent** Mile
Bu|cking|ham Foun|tain
Tha|lia Hall
Sol|dier Field
Mi|lle|nni|um Park
Ad|ler Pla|ne|tar|i|um
Na|vy Pier
Hum|boldt Park
Sky|deck Chi|ca|go

b **Practice saying the names.**

c **Role-play with a partner. Imagine you are in a taxi. A is the driver, B is the passenger. Have a short conversation. Use the phrases below.**

A
Where do you want to go?
Where are you from?
Are you on vacation?
Do you like Chicago?

B
Is it far?
Can you stop here, please?
How much is it?
Can I pay by card?

Where do you want to go?

Skydeck Chicago, please. Is it far?

5 WRITING
posting on social media

a **What social media do you use? Do your family and friends use the same ones as you?**

b **Writing Bank** 5 *p.119* **Write posts to say what you're doing on vacation.**

EPISODE 3 PICTURES OF YOU

Exploring the city

Practical English | buying clothes | V clothes

1 FIRST DATE



a Video Watch *First date*. Do Ben and Izzy have a good time? What do they do?

b Watch again. Then circle the correct option.

1 Ben likes Izzy's *jacket / T-shirt*.
2 Izzy says Ben *needs / doesn't need* to wear a helmet.
3 Ben *can / can't* ride a bike.
4 Ben wants to see *the tourist's London / the real London*.
5 Izzy takes Ben to a *café / clothing store*.

2 BUYING CLOTHES

a 5.16 V Match the words and photos. Then listen and check.



- a jacket /ˈdʒækət/
- jeans /dʒinz/
- a shirt /ʃərt/
- a T-shirt /ˈtiʃərt/
- a skirt /skərt/
- shoes /ʃuz/
- a sweater /ˈswɛtər/
- pants /pænts/

b Cover the words and look at the photos. Say the words.

c Video Look at the photos. Which shirt do you like for Ben? Then watch *Buying clothes*. Which shirt does he buy?



d Watch again. Complete the **You hear** phrases.

You hear	You say
Can I [1] _____ you?	Yes, what size is this shirt?
Let's see. It's a small. What [2] _____ do you need?	A medium.
Just a moment. This is a [3] _____.	Thank you. Can I try it on?
Of course. The changing [4] _____ are over there.	Thank you.
[5] _____ is it?	It's great.
It's a very nice shirt.	How much is it?
It's [6] £_____.99.	Great. Thank you.

Sizes

S = small, **M** = medium, **L** = large, **XL** = extra large

Saying prices in the US

$5.00 = five dollars *50c* = fifty cents
$5.50 = five dollars and fifty cents / five fifty

Saying prices in the UK

£5.00 = five pounds *50p* = fifty pence / fifty p
£5.50 = five pounds fifty / five fifty

e Video Watch and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the rhythm. Then practice the conversation with a partner.

f **ROLE-PLAY** Work in pairs. Have conversations using the photos and prices.



$18.49



$55.49



$49.99



$79.99

1 **A** You are the salesperson.
Begin: *Can I help you?*

B You are the customer.
Buy a T-shirt.
Begin: *Yes, what size is this T-shirt?*

2 **B** You are the salesperson.
Begin: *Can I help you?*

A You are the customer.
Buy some pants.
Begin: *Yes, what size are these pants?*

g Now repeat the role-play. **A** buy jeans; **B** buy a jacket.

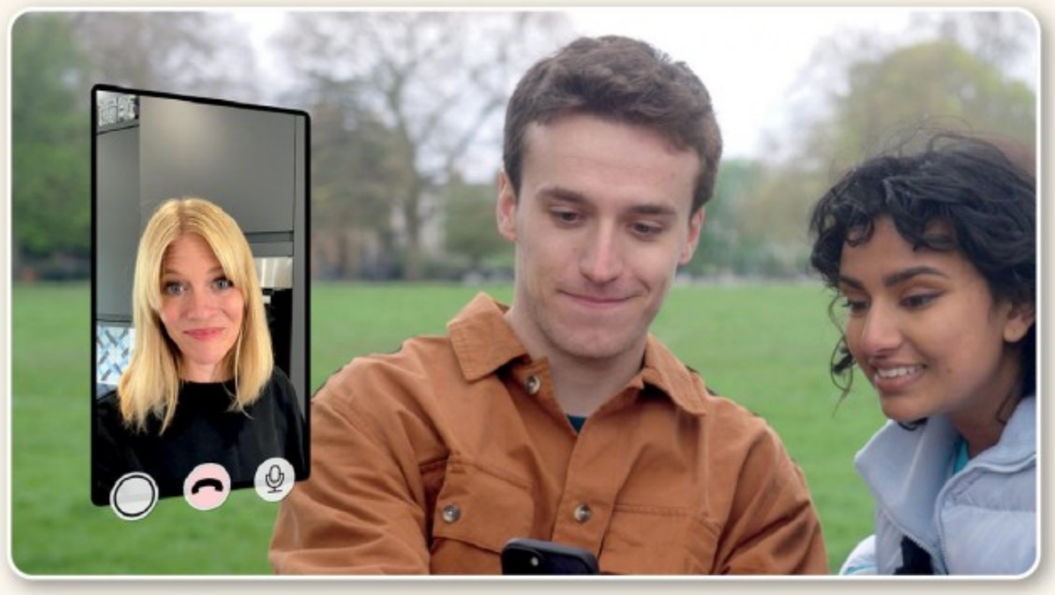
How much are these jeans / is this jacket?

this / these

We use *this* for singular nouns.
this shirt, *this* skirt

We use *these* for plural nouns.
these shirts, *these* shoes

3 TALKING IN THE PARK



a Video Watch *Talking in the park*. Then check (✓) the things Izzy and Ben talk about.

- ☐ Izzy's hometown
- ☐ Ben's hometown
- ☐ the weather in California
- ☐ the weather in London
- ☐ Ben's family
- ☐ Izzy's family
- ☐ Ben's show
- ☐ Izzy's job

b Who are Emma, Jenny, and Rob? What do we find about them?

American English	British English
the fall aunt /ænt/	the autumn aunt /ɑːnt/

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

a Match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**.

A	B
1 Wow! You look great.	☐ It's your city. I'm a tourist. I'm in your hands.
2 So, where do you want to go?	☐ Sure.
3 Where are we going?	☐ OK, thanks. Say "hi" to Rob and the kids.
4 Do you want to go in?	☐ Thanks. You too.
5 Have a great time, Ben.	☐ Follow me.

b Video Watch and check.

c In pairs, practice the phrases and responses. Then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In pairs, talk about Ben and Izzy. Ben says, "I want to see the real London." What does he mean? Do you think Izzy wants to go to Ben's show, or not?

6A A traditional story

G object pronouns: *me*, *you*, *him*, etc.
V learning words from a story
P /aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /i/

Do you know him? *Yes, but I don't like him.*

1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

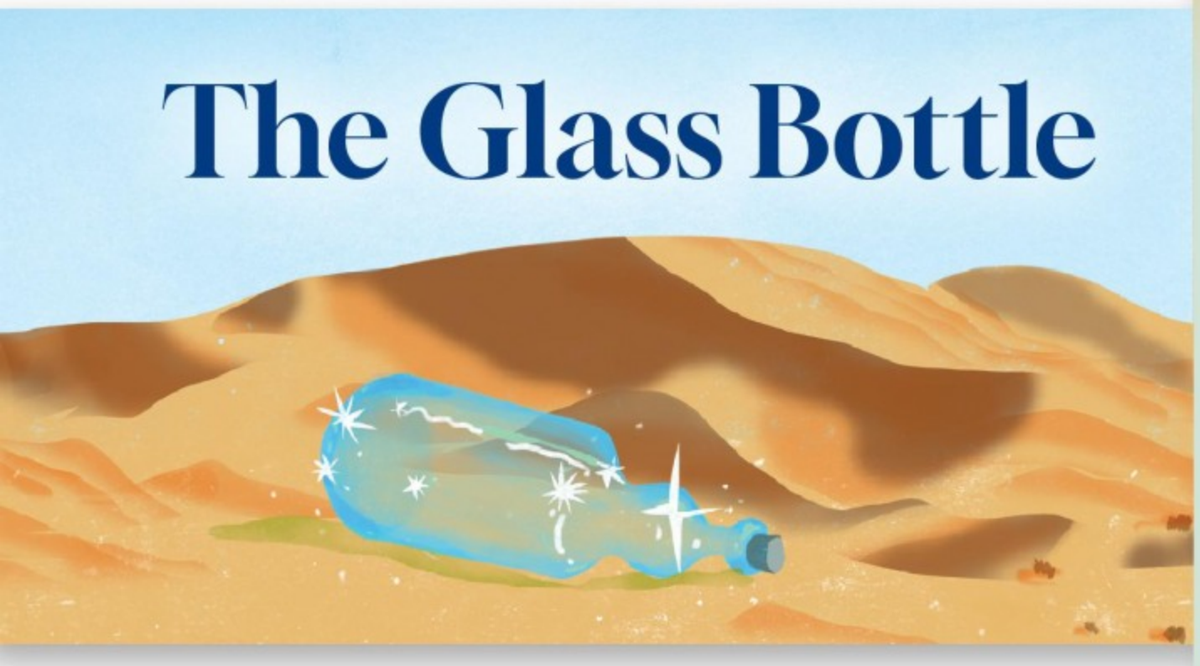
a Video Watch *Reading habits*. Can you remember...?

- five different things that people read
- five different places where people read

b What are your reading habits? Answer the questions with a partner.

1 What kind of things do you read in your own language?
2 How do you usually read: on paper or on screen? Which do you prefer? Why? Do you use a tablet, an e-reader, your phone...?
3 When and where do you usually read?
4 Do you ever read in English? What?

2 GRAMMAR object pronouns



The Glass Bottle



Part 1

Hassan and Walid are brothers. They live in a small house in the desert, near the mountains, a long way from a town or village. They're very poor. They have no money and they have no animals. Their house only has two rooms. Every day is the same. They get up, and they have sweet black coffee for breakfast. Then Hassan works in the fields – but Walid just sits and looks at the hot, empty desert and the hot, empty sky. They live with their mother. She takes care of them, but she's old and tired.

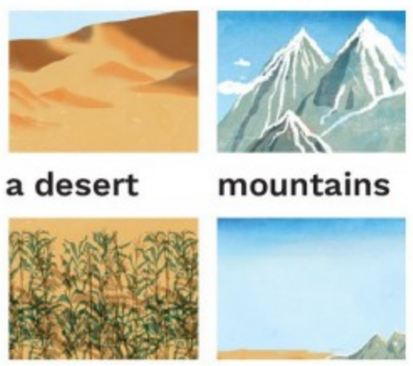
One day she says, "We're poor and hungry. Why don't you leave here and find work? We need money for food and clothes."

"If you want some money, you have your silver ring – you can sell that," answers Walid.

"I can't sell it," she says. "It's your father's. Every night I look at it and remember him."

Hassan wants to help his mother, and he decides to leave home. His mother gives him bread, and water in a glass bottle. He kisses her and he walks towards the mountains.

Glossary



a desert | mountains | a field | the sky

a 6.1 Read and listen to Part 1 of a traditional story. Answer the questions.

1 Who are Hassan and Walid? Where do they live?
2 What kind of life do they have?
3 In what way are Hassan and Walid different?
4 What valuable thing does their mother have? Why doesn't she want to sell it?
5 Why does Hassan decide to leave home?

b Look at the highlighted words in Part 1 of the story. Who or what do they refer to?

them = *Hassan and Walid*

c G **Grammar Bank** 6A *p.142*

d 6.3 Listen and say the sentences with a pronoun instead of the name(s).

1 I like Anna. *I like her.*

3 READING & LISTENING

a 6.4 Read and listen to Part 2 of the story. Answer the questions.

1 Where does Hassan go?
2 What happens when he finds the palace?
3 Why is the palace unusual?
4 What does he give the prince?
5 Why is the prince surprised?
6 What does the prince give Hassan?
7 Why is Hassan's mother happy when he comes home?
8 What is Walid's plan?



Part 2

Hassan walks for five days through the mountains. The sun shines. At night, it's very cold. Then, one evening, he arrives at a rich and beautiful palace. The prince in the palace welcomes [1]him. He gives him food and drink, and Hassan sleeps in a comfortable bed. There is one strange thing – the windows have no glass.

The next day, Hassan says goodbye. [2]He wants to thank the prince and give him something, but he only has [3]his empty water bottle. He gives [4]it to [5]him. The prince is very surprised.

"What's this?" he says. "I can see through it! It's beautiful! It's wonderful!"

[6]He is very happy, and in return he gives Hassan a box.

"Don't open [7]it until you get home," he says. "And be careful with it. It's very valuable."

Hassan walks through the mountains again, and after five days he arrives home. Walid and [8]their mother watch [9]him open the box. He finds 100 gold coins inside. His mother is very happy! "Hassan, you clever boy!" she says. "Now [10]we can buy food and clothes!"

The next night, Walid makes a plan.

"100 gold coins in return for a glass bottle," [11]he thinks. "If I give the prince my mother's silver ring, perhaps I can get 1,000 gold coins!"

So Walid gets up, goes very quietly into his mother's room, and takes [12]her ring from a box under her bed. The next morning he asks his brother where the palace is, and he leaves.

Pronouns and possessive adjectives

When you read, be careful with pronouns and possessive adjectives, e.g., *he*, *his*, *him*. Think about who (or what) they refer to.

b Read Part 2 of the story again. With a partner, say who or what the highlighted pronouns and possessive adjectives refer to.

The prince in the palace welcomes [1]him.

him = Hassan

c 6.5 What do you think happens in Part 3 of the story? Listen and check.

I think Walid goes to the palace and...

d What do you think we can learn from the story? Choose A, B, or C.

A Glass is more valuable than gold.

B Always listen to what your mother says.

C Don't be greedy.

4 VOCABULARY
learning words from a story

a Look at these words from the story. Put them in the correct column.

~~arrive~~ ~~comfortable~~ decide desert inside into leave mountain palace sell strange surprised through towards valuable village

Adjectives	Verbs	Nouns	Prepositions
comfortable	arrive		

b 6.6 Listen and check. Listen again and repeat.

5 PRONUNCIATION /aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /i/

a 6.7 Say the three groups of words and match them to a sound picture. Then listen and check.


bike


fish


tree

1 him it his ring sit kiss
2 he she me meet read leave
3 my I buy sky nice high

b 6.8 Listen. Can you hear the difference?

1	**a** he's	**b** his	4	**a** leave	**b** live
2	**a** me	**b** my	5	**a** kiss	**b** keys
3	**a** it	**b** eat	6	**a** we	**b** why

c 6.9 Listen and circle the word you hear.

d Practice saying the sentences.

1 His mother has a silver ring.
2 She looks at it and thinks of him.
3 That night he decides to leave home.
4 The prince gives him food and drink.
5 After five days, he arrives home.

6 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. **A**, you are Hassan. Tell the story to **B** until you get home from your trip.

I'm Hassan. I live with my mother and brother in the desert. We're very poor. One day, I decide to leave home...

B, you are Walid. Continue the story.

I'm Walid, Hassan's brother. When I see the 100 gold coins, I make a plan. At night, I take my mother's ring...



6B I don't like Mondays.

G *like* + verb + *-ing*
V ordinal numbers, the date
P /ð/ and /θ/, saying the date

I like getting up early. *I hate it!*

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION
ordinal numbers, the date, /ð/ and /θ/

a 6.10 Listen to the quiz. Say the months.

b V **Vocabulary Bank** The weather and dates *p.167* Do Part 2.

c Video Watch and repeat the sounds and words.

 **mother**	**th**is **th**e **th**at **th**ey
 **thumb**	**Th**ursday **th**ird **th**irteen**th** **th**irtie**th**

Ordinal numbers *first*, *fourth*, etc.
Some ordinal numbers can be difficult to say because they end in two or more consonant sounds, e.g., *si**xth*** /sɪksθ/.

d 6.12 Listen and repeat the ordinal numbers. Then practice saying them.

fifth sixth eighth twelfth

e 6.13 How do you say these dates? Listen and check.

3/1 11/2 5/3 6/4 1/5 7/6 9/12
10/17 8/20 2/23 4/28 12/31

f Listen again and repeat the dates. Copy the rhythm.
March first / the first of March

g What days are holidays in your country? What do people do on these days?

2 LISTENING

a 6.14 Listen to five conversations. Circle the ordinal number you hear.

1 15th 21st 26th	**2** 3rd 13th 30th	**3** 5th 6th 7th	**4** 50th 51st 53rd	**5** 6th 9th 16th

b Listen again. Match the ordinal numbers in **a** to these things. Write them in the chart.

a birthday a date a drink a floor a street

3 READING

a Read the introduction to an article. Which do you prefer,...?
- summer or winter
- Mondays or Fridays
- mornings or evenings

Favorite (and not so favorite) times

All over the world, people feel differently about seasons, months, even days of the week or times of day. Some people love winter, whether it's January in the northern hemisphere or July in the southern, and hate the heat of summer. Other people dislike the cold, dark months and spend them waiting for spring. Some start the week full of excitement and feel energized on Mondays; others wait for Fridays, knowing the weekend is about to begin. Some people are "morning people" who enjoy getting up early, maybe even watching the sun rise, but others don't feel fully awake until noon.

We asked three people about their favorite and least favorite months, days of the week, and times of day.



b Read the three answers. Then label them with the people.

c Complete the answers with the correct months, days, and times.

February August October December
Tuesday Thursday Saturday Sunday
7:30 a.m. 9:00 a.m. 8:30 p.m. 11:00 p.m.

d Look at the highlighted words and phrases in the answers and match them to the synonymns.

1 difficult _____
2 great _____
3 happy _____
4 sad _____
5 warm _____


Betty, 77


Flora, 27


Zak, 17

Months by _____

My favorite month is [1] _____. I like it because it's kind of hot and the allergy season is over by then. It's often when people take summer vacations, so everyone is in a good mood, including me!

The month I like least is [2] _____. It's a very busy time in the hospital where I work. It's six weeks after the new year, and it's dark and cold. It always seems gray and miserable.

Days of the week by _____

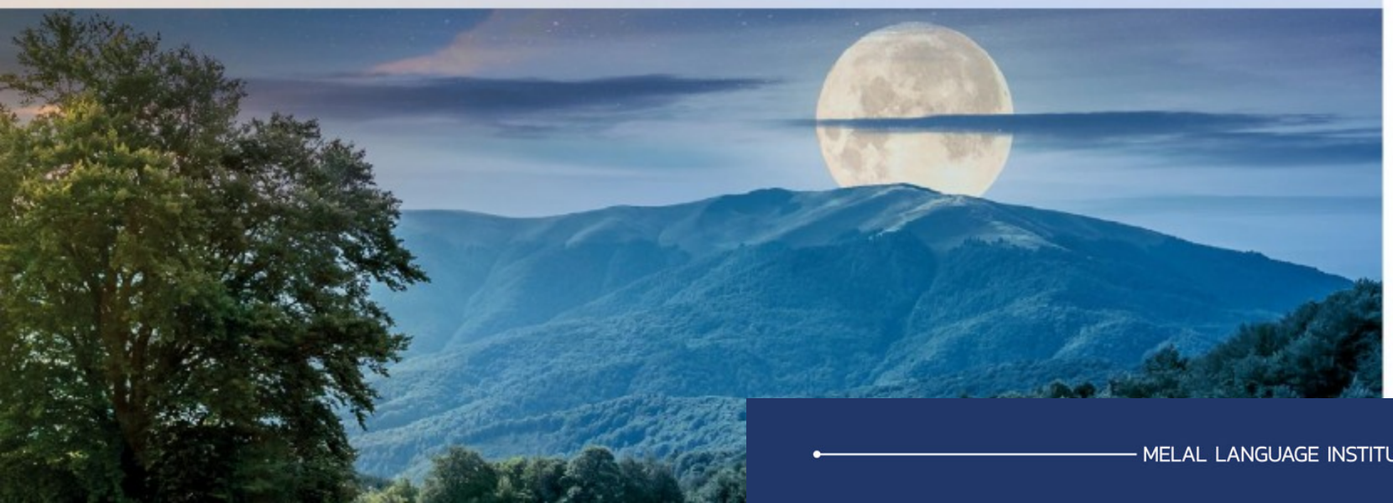
My favorite day is [3] _____ because I'm free to do what I want. I like playing soccer, being with friends, and knowing that the next day I'm free, too!

I don't mind getting up on Monday – it's the start of a new week and it's really nice to see friends after the weekend. But I hate waking up early on [4] _____ – it feels like a very long time until next weekend.

Times of day by _____

My favorite time of day is probably when I first wake up, about [5] _____. I love making a cup of tea and going back to bed. There's nothing to worry about, it's just peaceful and quiet because it's so early. I read the news and do a word game.

I hate bedtime now that I'm retired. I usually go to bed late, at about [6] _____, but I often find it hard to go to sleep. I don't like being awake in the middle of the night, which happens a lot.



4 GRAMMAR *like* + verb + *-ing*

a Complete the chart with a verb phrase from the list.

I don't like I don't mind I hate I like I love

😀	
🙂	
😐	
🙁	
😠	

b Complete the sentences from the article. What is the form of the verb after *love*, *like*, etc.?

1 I **love** g_____ back to bed.
2 I **like** p_____ soccer.
3 I **don't mind** g_____ up on Monday.
4 I **don't like** b_____ awake in the middle of the night.
5 I **hate** w_____ up early.

c **Grammar Bank** 6B *p.142*

d Video Watch and make sentences about the people.

1 *She hates driving.*

e Make true sentences beginning *I like*, *I hate*, etc., and the verb phrases below.

- get up early
- drive at night
- have eggs for breakfast
- swim in a cold ocean
- take selfies
- watch soccer on TV
- listen to music when I'm studying / working
- play games on my phone
- do housework on the weekend
- shop online

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a In pairs, interview your partner. Say why when you answer. Are you similar or different?

What's your favorite / least favorite month?

What's your favorite / least favorite day of the week?

What's your favorite / least favorite time of day?

My favorite month is July because I usually go on vacation then, and I love traveling...

b Write one positive and one negative comment for each section of the article in **3**.

6C Making music

G review: *be* or *do*?
V music
P /y/, giving opinions

What kind of music do you like? *I like classical music and I love jazz.*

1 VOCABULARY music

a Look at the photos of musical instruments. Write the correct word in the **instruments** column.

~~accordion~~ bass guitar drums (acoustic) guitar keyboard piano saxophone trumpet violin

	Instruments	Musicians
1	accordion	
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		

b 6.16 Listen and check.

c 6.17 Listen and complete the **musicians** column.

d Listen again. Focus on the musicians and underline the stressed syllable. Then compare the two columns. When is the stress different?

e 6.18 Cover the chart. Listen to the music and say the name of the instrument and the musician.

f Do you play a musical instrument? How good are you?

2 GRAMMAR review: *be* or *do*?

a Circle the correct words.

1 What kind of music *are you* / *do you* listen to?
2 *I'm not* / *I don't* like hip hop.
3 She *isn't* / *doesn't* listening to music.
4 *Are you* / *Do you* play in a band?
5 Where *is* / *does* John Legend from?

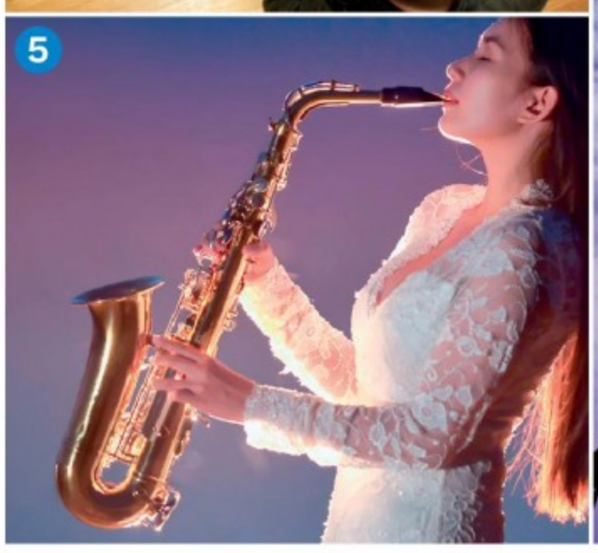
b G **Grammar Bank** 6C *p.142*

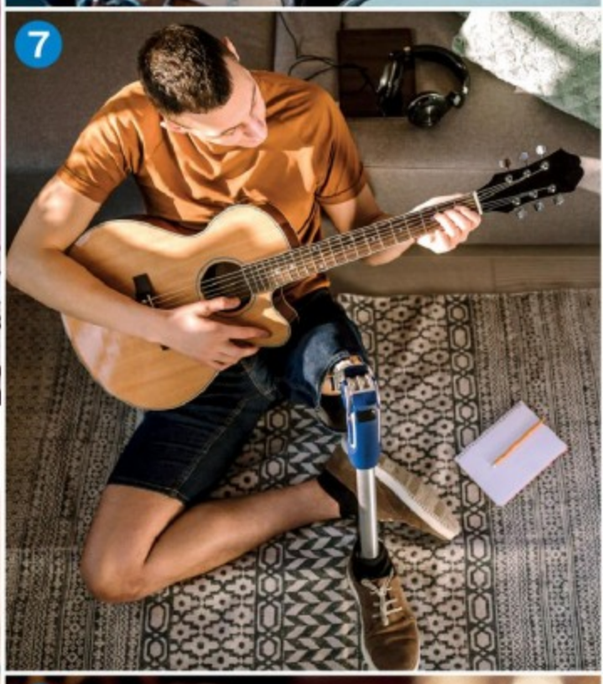
c 6.21 Listen and make the question.

1 She's American. *Is she American?*
2 He plays the piano. *Does he play the piano?*











3 SPEAKING

Read the questionnaire and think about your answers. Then interview a partner. Ask for more information. Do you have similar musical tastes and habits?

My music

1 What kind of music do you like?

classical music · folk · jazz · pop · rap · indie · house · R&B · hip hop · rock · other

2 How often do you...?

go to concerts or gigs · go dancing · watch music videos · download music · make playlists · stream music · look for song lyrics online

3 When you're in a car, what do you prefer listening to?

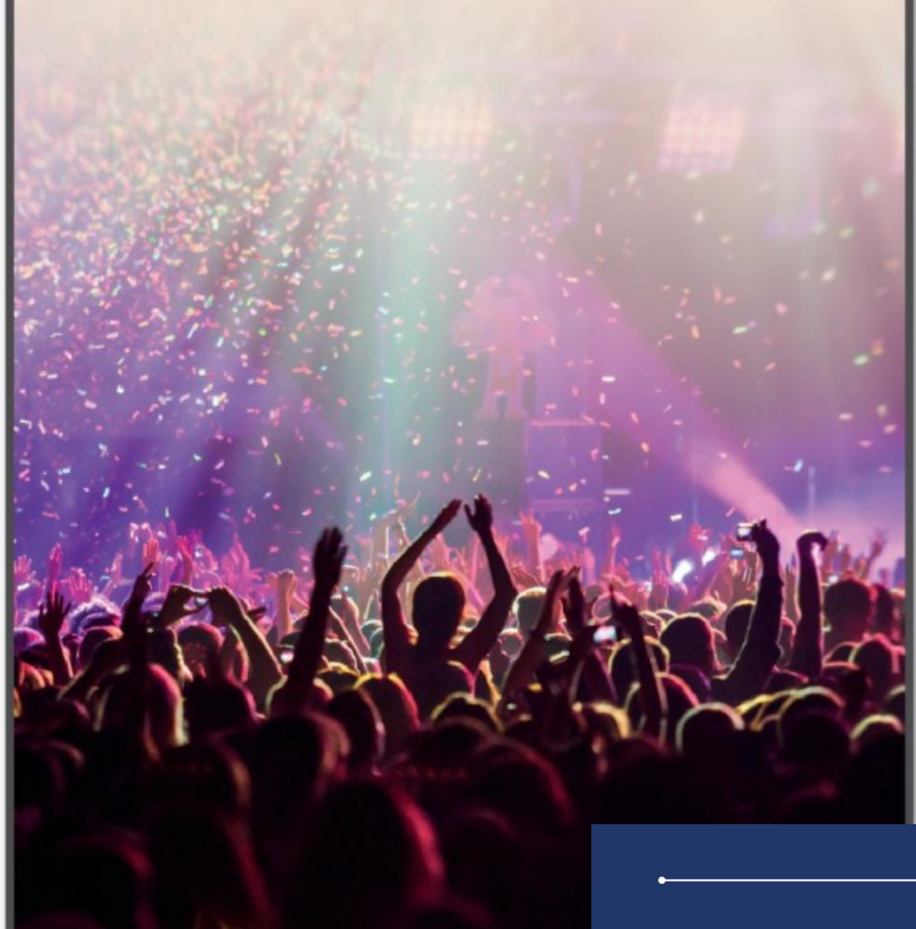
the radio (which station?) · my own music · nothing

4 Do you listen to music when you are...? What kind?

exercising · going for a walk · traveling on public transportation · sad · working or studying · relaxing · happy

5 Are you listening to a particular song / album / playlist / piece of music a lot right now?

6 Do you sing or play in a group, e.g., a choir or band? What kind of music do you sing or play?



4 PRONUNCIATION /y/, giving opinions

a Video Watch and repeat the sound and words.

	**y**acht	**y**ou **y**ellow **y**oung **y**our **y**oga **y**ear

Hidden /y/ sound

Some words with the /u/ sound (spelled with *u* or *ew*) also have a /y/ sound before the /u/ , e.g., *music* /'myuzık/ **NOT** ~~/'muzık/~~.

b 6.22 Listen and write five phrases.

c 6.23 Listen and repeat the opinions. Then practice saying them. Copy the stress and intonation.

I **like** him. He's **great**.
I **really like** her. She's **fantastic**.
I **don't like** them. They're **awful**.
I **don't like** it. It's **terrible**.

d Write the names of six musicians and bands: three you love and three you hate. Then, in pairs, ask your partner *What do you think of...?*

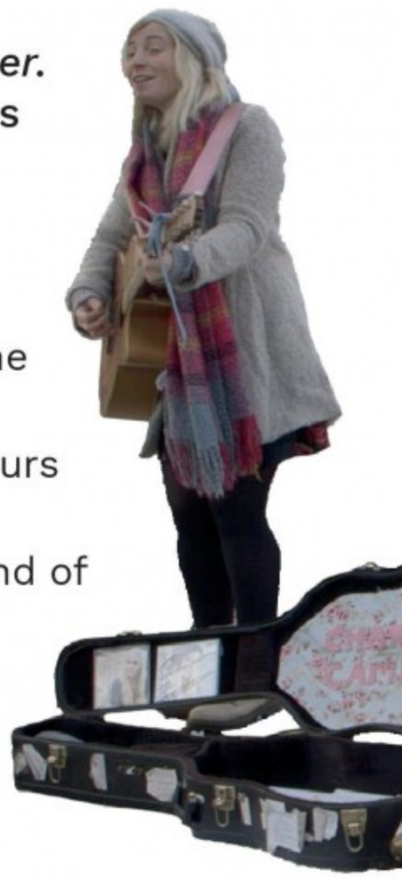
Male musicians _____ _____
Female musicians _____ _____
Bands _____ _____

5 LISTENING

a Video Watch an extract from *A London busker*. What does a busker do? Do you think Charlotte is good? Would you give her money?

b Video Watch the whole documentary. Then answer the questions.

1 Where is Charlotte busking today? How does she get there?
2 What time does Charlotte busk? How do her hours change in the winter?
3 Where can you see buskers in London? What kind of music do they play?
4 What kind of music does Charlotte like? Whose music does she play when she busks?
5 What does Charlotte say are the good and bad things about being a busker?



c Do you have buskers where you live? Do you give them money? Why (not)?

Glossary
busker [BrE /'bʌskər/] **/ street performer** [AmE /strit pər'fɔrmər/]
noun a person who performs in public places and asks for money

6 WRITING an informal email

Writing Bank 6 *p.120* Write an email to a friend.

5&6 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 She ___ the piano.
a can play b can to play c cans play

2 ___ come tonight?
a Do you can b You can c Can you

3 **A** What's that noise? **B** ___ a party upstairs.
a They having b They're having c They're have

4 The weather is cold, but ___ snowing.
a it doesn't b it isn't c it not

5 **A** What ___ doing? **B** I'm trying to open the door.
a are you b do you c you are

6 It ___! Let's stay at home.
a is rain b rains c is raining

7 The museum ___ at 2:00 on Mondays.
a closes b is closing c close

8 **A** What ___? **B** I'm a nurse.
a are you doing b do you do c do you

9 Our son always calls ___ every day.
a we b us c our

10 Is your sister at home? I need to speak to ___.
a him b she c her

11 Do you like ___ in the ocean?
a swimming b swim c swims

12 I don't mind ___ early.
a get up b getting up c to get up

13 **A** ___ hungry? **B** Yes. What's for dinner?
a Do you b Have you c Are you

14 What song ___ listening to?
a are you b do you c you are

15 What time ___ she usually meet her friends?
a do b is c does

VOCABULARY

a **Complete the phrases with these verbs.**

buy call dance forget hear
practice run sing take tell

1 _____ a noise
2 _____ a musical instrument
3 _____ somebody's birthday
4 _____ a present for your niece
5 _____ somebody a secret
6 _____ a song
7 _____ a photo
8 _____ a marathon
9 _____ a taxi
10 _____ the tango

b **Complete the sentences with *at*, *for*, *in*, *on*, or *to*.**

1 She gets home _____ about seven o'clock.
2 They have their TV _____ very loud.
3 I can't find the keys. Can you look _____ them?
4 I need to talk _____ the doctor.
5 I'm coming! Wait _____ me!
6 My birthday's _____ July.
7 Their wedding is _____ March 2nd.

c **Circle the word that is different.**

1 cloudy fog sunny windy
2 cold warm snow hot
3 fall season spring winter
4 first seven third twelfth
5 twenty-second twenty-five twenty-one twenty-three
6 desert field mountain ring
7 accordion guitar saxophone violinist
8 drummer keyboard pianist trumpeter

PRONUNCIATION

a **Practice the words and sounds.**

Vowel sounds



bull boot train bike

Consonant sounds



singer thumb mother yacht nose

b **Sound Bank** *p.174–5* **Say more words for each sound.**

c **What sound do the pink letters have in these words?**

1 c**oo**k _____
2 sitt**ing** _____
3 ten**th** _____
4 **th**ere _____
5 v**i**olin _____

d **Underline the stressed syllable.**

1 neigh|bor
2 re|mem|ber
3 fif|ti|eth
4 sa|xo|phone
5 pi|a|nist

Can you understand this text?

a Read the article once. What is your perfect "wake-up song"?

b Read the article again. Circle a, b, or c.

1 Dr. Greenberg's list comes from information from ___.
a the internet b his friends c his students

2 One of the things Dr. Greenberg doesn't say is important in the song is ___.
a the words b the instruments c the singer

3 He says that waking up ___ can help most people feel good all day.
a to Coldplay b to the right music
c early in the morning

4 ___ doesn't have a wake-up song.
a Sandy b Martha c Martin

Can you understand these people?



Duncan Alice Tiffany Stephen Dasha

Video **Watch and answer the questions.**

1 Duncan ___.
a can't play the violin very well
b can't play the violin
c can play the violin very well

2 Alice's neighbors ___ make a noise.
a always b sometimes c never

3 Tiffany's favorite month is ___.
a October b November c December

4 Stephen doesn't like ___.
a opera b country music c the band Wye Oak

5 Right now, Dasha is reading ___.
a a modern novel
b a book about French history
c a book about the Russian Revolution

Can you say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the things you can do.

Can you...?

1 ☐ say two things you can do well, and two things you can't do (e.g., cook)

2 ☐ say three things you can or can't do in class (e.g., use your smartphone)

3 ☐ say what kind of books you usually read, and what you are reading right now

4 ☐ ask questions with the words below
- *...tired?*
- *...like watching sports on TV?*
- *...enjoying your English classes?*
- *...play a musical instrument?*

THE MOMENT I WAKE UP...



Getting out of bed in the morning is never fun, but music is something that can help you start your day the right way. There's even a playlist of the best "wake-up songs."

Psychologist David M. Greenberg's list uses data from a digital music service and considers things like how the music builds up, positive lyrics, and strong rhythm. He says that the music needs to start slowly and quietly, and gradually get faster and louder to help people wake up. It should have positive lyrics to make people's mood go from bad to good. The rhythm also needs to be strong, with a lot of bass and drums.

The first song on the playlist is *Viva La Vida*, by Coldplay, which has all the three necessary elements. Greenberg says, "Science shows that music affects us in all kinds of ways, including emotionally, physiologically, and in the brain." He believes that the right music – like *Viva La Vida* – can help you wake up and feel energetic for the rest of your day.

What's your favorite "wake-up song"?
Leave your comments below.

Comments:

S Mine is definitely *Say a Little Prayer* by Aretha Franklin. I always play it first thing in the morning. **Sandy**

M I like getting up to a song by Imagine Dragons called *On Top of the World*. I think it fits Dr. Greenberg's criteria because it's really positive! **Martha**

M I hate listening to music when I wake up. I prefer listening to the early morning news. Then I can start the day knowing what's happening in the world. **Martin**

7A This is me.

G simple past of *be*: *was / were*
V word formation: *write → writer*
P sentence stress

Who was he? *He was a famous painter.*

1 LISTENING

a Look at a self-portrait by the painter Vincent van Gogh. Answer the questions.

1 How old do you think he is in this painting?
2 Can you name any of his famous paintings?



b Video Watch *The master of self-portraits* and check your ideas in **a**.

c Watch again. Choose a, b, or c.

1 Van Gogh was born in ___ in 1853.
a Belgium b the Netherlands c Germany
2 His parents weren't ___.
a artists b married c poor
3 In the only photo there is of him, he was ___ years old.
a 17 b 18 c 19
4 There are ___ Van Gogh self-portraits.
a 25 b 30 c 35
5 In 1888, he was in Arles in France with the painter ___.
a Gauguin b Monet c Picasso
6 The relationship between the two painters wasn't ___.
a bad b easy c complicated
7 His last self-portrait was from his time ___.
a with Gauguin
b in the hospital
c at home in the Netherlands
8 He was only ___ when he died.
a 27 b 37 c 47
9 During his life, his paintings were ___.
a unpopular b valuable c famous

d Which of the five self-portraits in the video do you like the best?

2 GRAMMAR & PRONUNCIATION
simple past of *be*, sentence stress

a Look at the sentences in **1c** again. Then complete the chart with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*.

Present	is	are	isn't	aren't
Past				

b G **Grammar Bank** 7A *p.144*

c 7.2 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

+ He was a **painter**. I was **born** in **Mexico.**
They were **good friends**.
− He **wasn't married**. They **weren't** very **happy**.
? **Where** were you **born**? **Where** was the **hotel**?
Was it **expensive**? **No**, it **wasn't**.
Were they at the **concert**? **Yes**, they **were**.

d 7.3 Listen. Say the sentences in the simple past.

1 I'm at home. *I was at home.*

3 READING

a Look at the self-portrait and the photo of Jean-Michel Basquiat on p.57. Do you think the portrait looks like him? Why (not)? Do you like it?

b Read about Basquiat's life. Complete the captions for photos 1–4.



Basquiat's _____ on buildings in New York (from the movie about his life)



Basquiat with the painter _____ _____

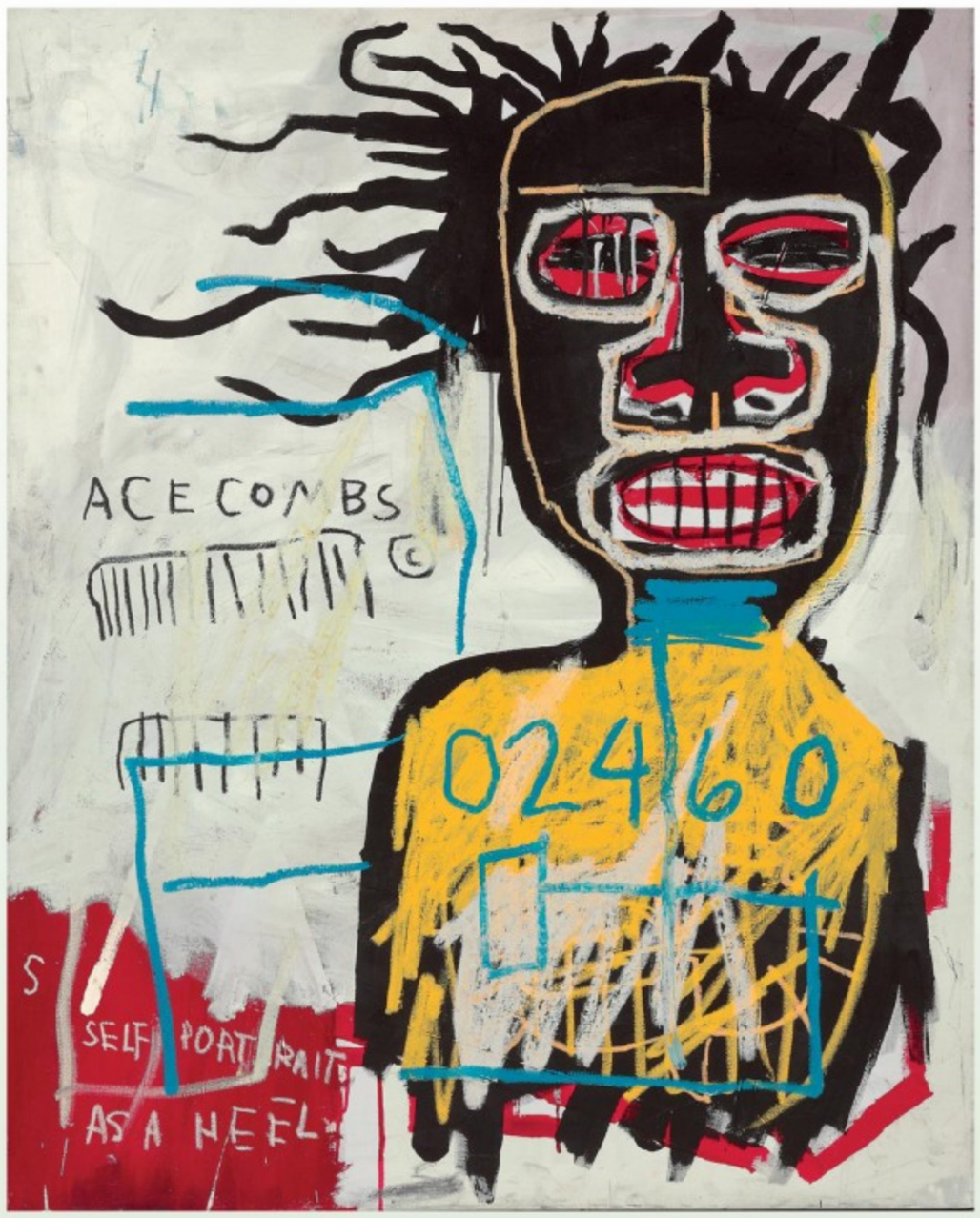


One of the _____



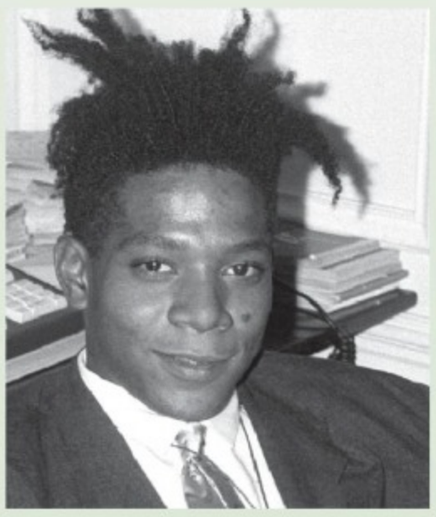
_____ _____ as Basquiat

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE



Self Portrait as a Heel, 1982 (acrylic and oilstick on canvas)

JEAN-MICHEL BASQUIAT



Jean-Michel Basquiat was born in New York in 1960. His parents were from Haiti and Puerto Rico. His family life was difficult; his mother was in a psychiatric hospital when he was young and [1] C. Basquiat was a clever child. [2] ___ – when he was 11 he was fluent in French, Spanish, and English. He was also very interested in drawing and writing. His early art, when he was still a teenager, was graffiti on buildings in Lower Manhattan. At that time, he was inspired by poetry and music in downtown New York, and he was in a hip hop band called Gray.

When he was only 20 years old, people in the art world were interested in his work. In 1980, [3] ___, and this was the beginning of his fame. At this time, he was friends with many other famous people, for example, the painter Andy Warhol, who was his mentor, and Madonna, who was his girlfriend before becoming a famous singer.

Suddenly, Basquiat was more like a rock star than an artist. [4] ___, with messages about the rich and poor, racism, and the Black community. They were often of Black athletes (e.g., Muhammad Ali), musicians, and writers, with crowns, to show them as heroes.

At that time, it was difficult to be a Black man in the white-dominated art world. Basquiat was now rich, but [5] ___. He died very young, when he was only 27. [6] ___, but he was an important influence on many of today's artists and musicians, like Banksy and Jay-Z, and his work now sells for millions of dollars. The actor Jeffrey Wright was Basquiat in a movie about his life, with David Bowie as Andy Warhol.

Glossary



crown

c Read the text again. Fill in the blanks with phrases A–F.

A He was very good at languages
B he wasn't happy
C ~~his father was strict~~
D His life was short
E his paintings were in an important art show
F His paintings were political

d How were Van Gogh and Basquiat similar / different?

4 VOCABULARY word formation

a Find four jobs in the text with these words. Whose jobs are they?

1 sing_____
2 act_____
3 art_____
4 music_____

Word building: jobs and occupations

We often add *-er* or *-or* to a verb, e.g., *writer*, *dancer*, *editor*.

We often add *-ian* or *-ist* to a noun, e.g., *librarian*, *journalist*.

b Look at the two groups below. Are the words verbs or nouns? Make the words for the jobs.

1 compose _____ dance _____
direct _____ invent _____
2 novel _____ politics _____
science _____ history _____

c 7.4 Listen and check. Underline the stressed syllable. Practice saying the words.

d Video Watch and say the nationalities and jobs.

1 Frida Kahlo was a Mexican artist.

e Write the names of three more famous people, alive and dead. Then look at a partner's choices and ask about them.

Alive Isabel Allende
Dead Charles Darwin

Who's Isabel Allende? *She's a Chilean writer.*

Who was Charles Darwin? *He was a British scientist.*

5 SPEAKING

a Think of a selfie (or another photo) you have on your phone that you like. Answer the questions.

Where were you?
Who were you with? Or were you alone?
When was it?
Why do you like the photo?

b Now show a partner the photo and talk about it. Then change roles.

7B Small mistake, big problem

G simple past: regular verbs
V past time expressions
P *-ed* endings

Where did she want to go? *She wanted to go to Costa Rica.*

1 READING

a What kind of mistakes do people sometimes make when they book travel tickets?

b Read an article by travel blogger Emma Benns. Does it have a happy ending?

c Read the article again and fill in the blanks with A–G.

A My ticket is for the wrong San José.
B Of course we can book a new flight for you, Ms. Benns.
C No. Unfortunately, it's on the way to California.
D How can I help you today?
E We can't change your ticket.
F Your gate is 37C.
G Your ticket is for San José, in California.

d 7.5 Listen and check.

e Match the verbs from the article to photos 1–4.

hand hug point smile






f Do you think it's easy to make this mistake? What do you think of Emma's advice for travelers?

2 GRAMMAR & PRONUNCIATION
simple past: regular verbs, *-ed* endings

a Find the past tense forms of these verbs in the article. Write them in the chart.

	Present	Past
+	hand	
	smile	
	hug	
	try	
–	don't smile	
?	Do you (check in)...?	

b G **Grammar Bank** 7B *p.144*



Do you know the way to San José?

"Welcome to Denver Airport. [1]___"

I handed my passport and flight confirmation to the woman at the United Airlines check-in. I was on my way to Costa Rica at the beginning of the trip of a lifetime, traveling around Central America. The woman checked in my backpack and handed me my boarding pass.

"Lucky you, going to California," she smiled. "[2]___"

"No. I booked a ticket to San José."

"Yes, Ms. Benns. [3]___"

I was horrified! "I'm so sorry, but I need your help. [4]___"

This time she didn't smile. She pointed to the help desk for United Airlines. The next few hours were terrible. The help desk assistant wasn't helpful.

"I'm sorry. [5]___"

I tried to call my travel agent, hoping they could solve the problem. No luck. A message arrived on my phone from my dad. It was a link to the Dionne Warwick song "Do you know the way to San Jose?" Not funny, Dad.

Then a new attendant arrived. "What's the problem?" she asked. I explained the situation.

"[6]___" I hugged her.

She immediately booked me onto a cheap flight to San José, Costa Rica. Suddenly, I remembered my backpack. But it was too late.

"Did you check in my luggage?" I asked.

"[7]___"

So, after 72 hours, four flights, and three days without luggage, I can say that I know the (long) way to San José. And I have one important lesson for you: always take spare underwear in your carry-on luggage. And if you can fit extra jeans, a T-shirt, and a sweater in there, too, DO THAT!



Adapted from an article by Emma Benns

Simple past regular verbs

The e in *-ed* is not usually pronounced, and *-ed* is pronounced /d/ or /t/, e.g., *closed* /kloʊzd/, *stopped* /stɑpt/.

The *-ed* is pronounced /ɪd/ **only** in verbs that end with the sound /t/ or /d/, e.g., *wait – waited* /'weɪtɪd/, *decide – decided* /dɪ'saɪdɪd/.

c Video **Watch and repeat the sounds and sentences.**

1 ***-ed*** **=**	/d/	I call**ed** a taxi. I us**ed** an app. It arriv**ed** in five minutes.
2 ***-ed*** **=**	/t/	We talk**ed** about a vacation. We look**ed** online. We book**ed** a hotel.
3 ***-ed*** **=**	/ɪd/	He need**ed** a passport. He want**ed** it fast. He wait**ed** a long time.

d 7.7 **Look at the verbs in the list. Circle the ones that belong to group 3 (/ɪd/). Listen and check.**

asked cooked ended finished liked
lived painted played started stopped
traveled watched worked

e Video **Watch what Kara did yesterday evening. Then make one affirmative [+] and one negative [–] sentence for each pair of verb phrases.**

1 finish work on time *She finished work on time.*
work late *She didn't work late.*
2 call a taxi
walk home
3 look at her watch
wait for five minutes
4 play games on her phone
listen to messages
5 arrive home
talk to a neighbor
6 book a vacation
check emails
7 cook dinner
relax on the couch
8 call a friend
watch TV



f **Make sentences about yesterday evening. Use the phrases in e, or change them to make them true for you.**

3 LISTENING

a 7.8 **Listen to Kirsty Leanne. How is her travel problem similar to Emma's? How is it different?**

b **Listen again. Then answer the questions.**

What happened...?

1 some years ago in the summer
She ended a relationship... and wanted to...
2 when she checked her travel documents
She noticed that...
3 when she called the travel agent
They offered to... and...
4 when she arrived at check-in
She showed..., but...
5 when she called the travel agent again
They discovered that...
6 after the travel agent talked to the check-in assistant
The woman at the check-in handed Kirsty...
7 when Kirsty was in her seat on the plane
She started to...



c **Do you feel sorry for Emma or Kirsty? Do you know any people with similar experiences?**

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
past time expressions

a **Number the past time expressions 1–10 (1 = the most recent).**

- [1] five minutes ago
- [ ] last night
- [ ] last week
- [ ] a year ago
- [ ] the day before yesterday
- [ ] yesterday morning
- [ ] some years ago
- [ ] three days ago
- [ ] last month
- [10] a long time ago

Past time expressions

We say *last week*, *last month*, *last summer*
NOT ~~*the last week*~~, ~~*the last month*~~, ~~*the last summer*~~.

b 7.9 **Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.**

c **When was the last time you did these things? Complete the sentences with a past time expression.**

I traveled by bus...
I booked some tickets...
I posted a photo...
I streamed a new playlist...
I walked more than 3 miles...
I played a sport...
I watched a really good movie...
I danced at a party...
I arrived late for something...

d **Work in pairs. A, tell your partner your first sentence. B, ask for more information.**

I traveled by bus this morning. — *Where to?*

7C Happy New Year!

What did you do? *We went to a party.*

G simple past: irregular verbs
V *go, have, get*
P sentence stress

1 READING

a When is New Year's Eve? Is it an important celebration in your country?

b Read three stories. Who do you think probably enjoyed their evening the most?

c Read the stories again. Complete the sentences with **A** (Andy), **J** (Jenny), or **M** (Mina).

1 ___ was outside at midnight.
2 ___ didn't know exactly when midnight was.
3 ___ was alone at midnight.
4 ___ was at work at midnight.
5 ___ heard the celebrations, but didn't see them.
6 ___ was surprised by something people did.

d How do people celebrate New Year's Eve in your country? Do you think most people enjoy it? Why (not)?

2 GRAMMAR
simple past: irregular verbs

a Look at the stories again and find the past tense of these irregular verbs.

buy	bought	/bɔt/
can	_____	/kʊd/
come	_____	/kʌm/
feel	_____	/fɛlt/
find	_____	/faʊnd/
get	_____	/gɑt/
go	_____	/wɛnt/
have	_____	/hæd/
know	_____	/nu/
put on	_____	/pʊt ɑn/
say	_____	/sɛd/
sing	_____	/sæŋ/
take	_____	/tʊk/
think	_____	/θɔt/
wear	_____	/wɔr/

b 7.10 Listen and check. Practice saying the verbs.

c G **Grammar Bank** 7C *p.144*

New Year's Eve – one to remember or one to forget?

Mina



This was last year, and I went to a hotel with some friends. It had a restaurant on the top floor, and that's where the party was. We got there at about 11:00. About half an hour before midnight I realized I didn't have my phone – it was in my hotel room. So I took the elevator down to the room. I found my phone, and then I got back into the elevator – I was the only person in it. But then between the third and fourth floors, the elevator stopped completely and I couldn't get out. I pressed the button and asked for help, but a guy said there was an electrical problem and I needed to wait. Then a few minutes later, I could hear people outside celebrating. It was awful – I didn't get out until almost 1:00 in the morning. And on top of it all, my friends didn't realize that I wasn't there!

Jenny

I had a fantastic New Year's Eve in Iceland in 2013. First, we went to a really expensive restaurant for dinner. It was early, about 6:00, because that's when people have dinner in Iceland. I wore a beautiful dress, but after dinner we got a taxi back to the hotel and I put on boots and a warm jacket. Then we went out and watched the amazing fireworks. Suddenly, at about 10:00, everyone went home to watch TV – there's this famous show they always watch on New Year's Eve! It was really strange – the streets were empty for a little bit. But then, just before midnight, they came out again and people danced and sang till about 5:00 in the morning. It was incredible.



3 VOCABULARY *go, have, get*

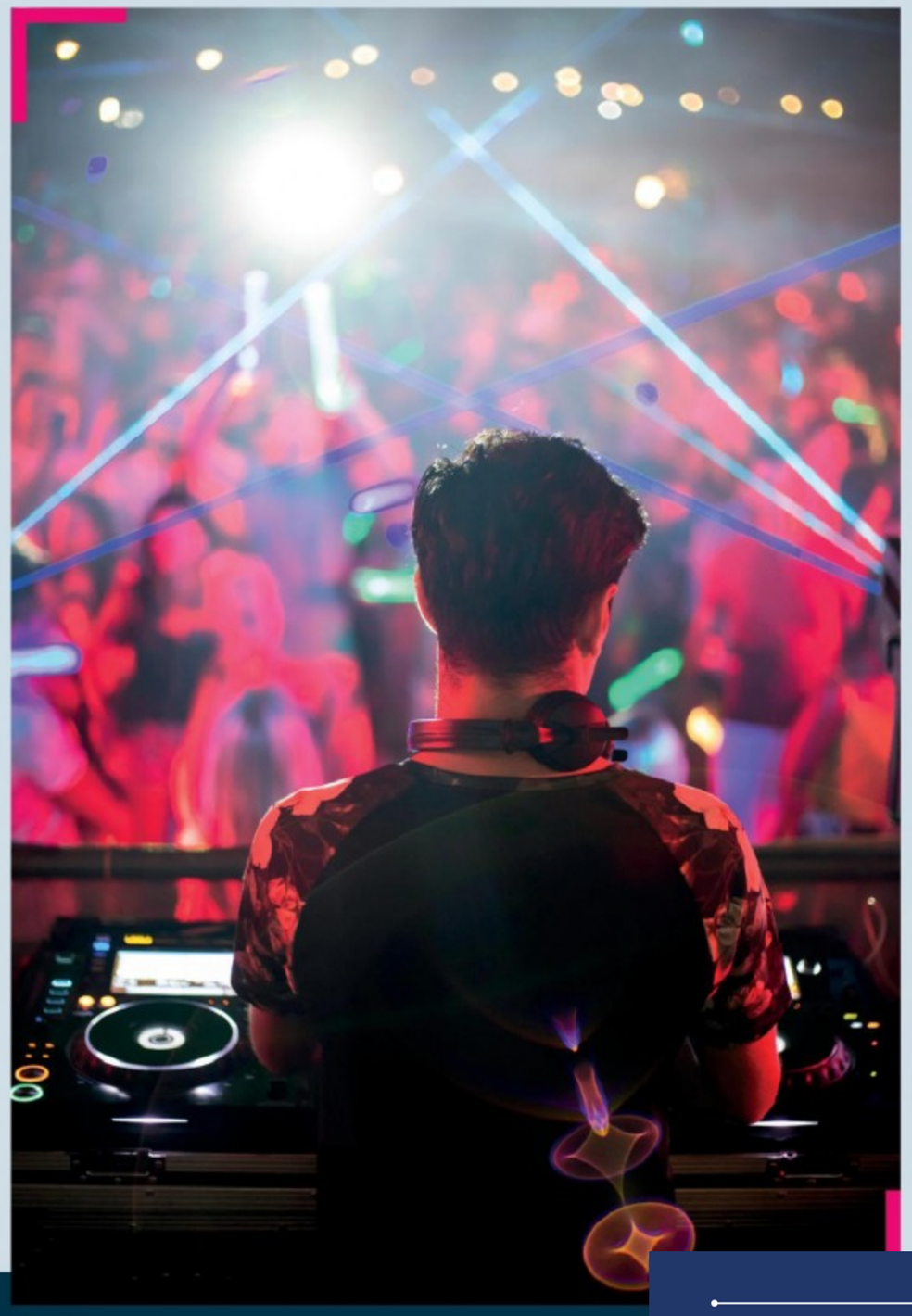
a Try to remember these phrases. Write the simple past of *go*, *have*, or *get*.

1 I _____ to a hotel with some friends.
2 It _____ a restaurant on the top floor.
3 We _____ there at about 11:00.
4 I _____ a fantastic New Year's Eve.
5 We _____ to a really expensive restaurant.
6 We _____ a taxi back to the hotel.

b **Vocabulary Bank** *go, have, get* *p.168*

Andy

I'm a DJ, and this happened to me a few years ago. It was my first time at a New Year's Eve party, and I planned all the music really carefully. I knew exactly which tracks I was going to play. The first part of the night was fine, but just when I thought it was time to start the countdown to midnight, I saw that people were all at the bar, not on the dance floor, and the TVs were on. On the screens I could see fireworks! I looked at my watch and I realized it was about two minutes slow! I felt really stupid. I bought a new watch the next day!



4 LISTENING

a 7.13 Listen to Denisa talk about a memorable New Year's Eve. Where was she at midnight?

b Listen again and answer the questions.

1 What year did this happen?
2 Where did Denisa go to celebrate the New Year?
3 Who did she celebrate with?
4 What did she wear?
5 Who did she have dinner with?
6 How did they get to Copacabana?
7 Where did they see a show?
8 What did they see at midnight?
9 What did she do after midnight?



c Where do you usually spend New Year's Eve? Is there anywhere else in the world you'd like to spend it?

5 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a Look at the questions. What words are missing?

A memorable New Year's Eve

1 What year _____ it?
2 Where _____ you?
3 Who _____ _____ with?
4 Where _____ _____ have dinner?
5 What _____ _____ wear?
6 What _____ _____ do before midnight?
7 What _____ _____ do at midnight?
8 What _____ _____ do after midnight?
9 How _____ the weather?
10 What time _____ _____ go to bed?
11 _____ _____ have a good time?

b 7.14 Listen and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.

6 SPEAKING & WRITING a diary entry

a Think about a time when you had a memorable New Year's Eve. Look at the questions in **5a** and plan your answers. Add all the extra information you can.

b Interview a partner about your New Year's Eves.

c **Writing Bank** 7 *p.121* Write a diary entry about a memorable New Year's Eve or another special day.

EPISODE 4 PICTURES OF YOU

Ben's show

Practical English | asking the way | V directions

1 IZZY'S DILEMMA



a Video Watch *Izzy's dilemma*. Then answer the questions.

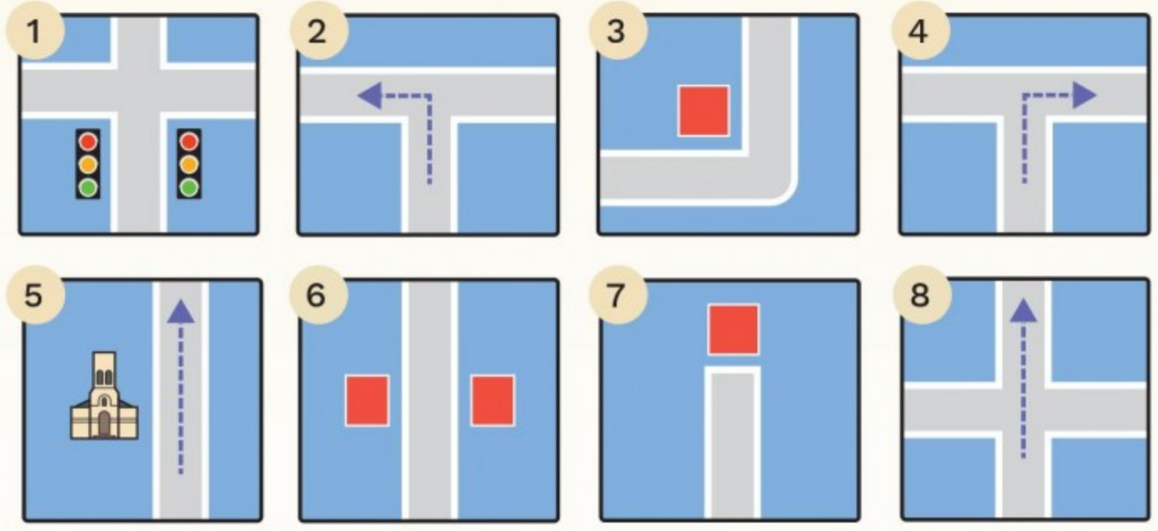
1 Do you think Pamela is Izzy's mother or her landlady?
2 What is Izzy's dilemma?
3 Why does Ben call Izzy?

b Watch again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Pamela thinks that Izzy is worried about something.
2 Izzy was a student at Tensquare School.
3 She was very happy at the school.
4 Izzy doesn't know if she likes Ben.
5 Pamela tells Izzy to go to Ben's show.
6 Izzy decides to go to the show.

2 ASKING THE WAY

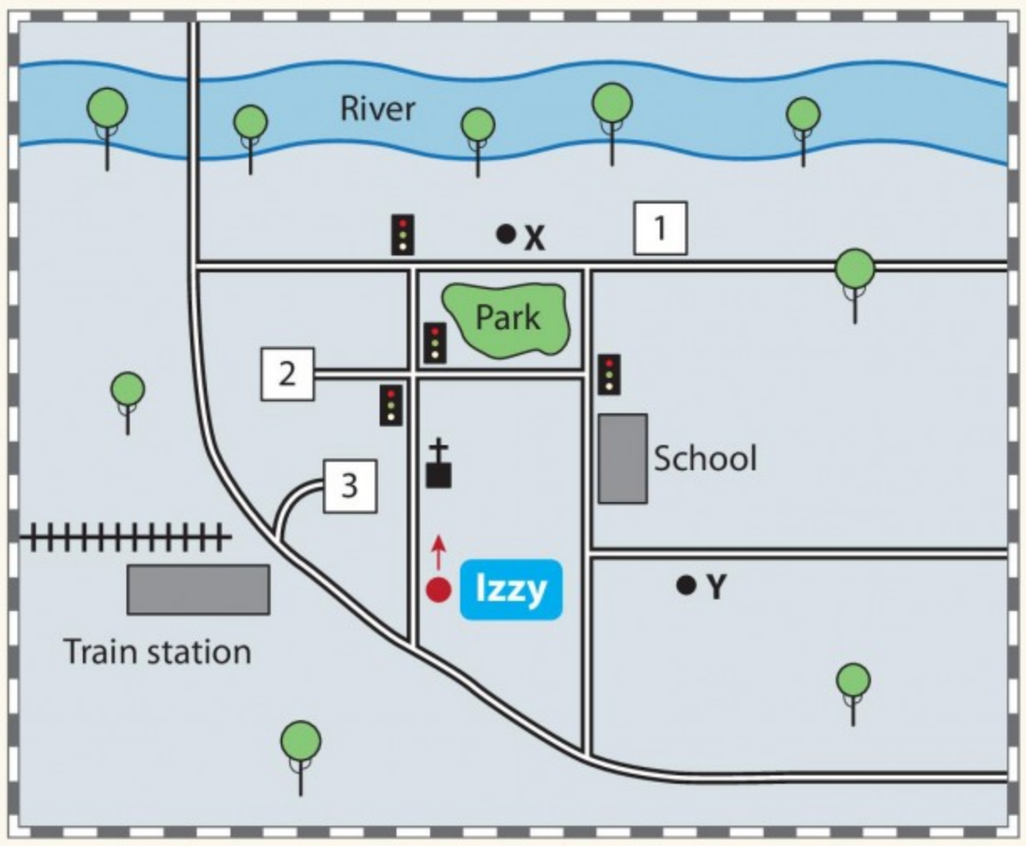
a 7.15 V Match the phrases and pictures. Then listen and check.



- on the corner /'kɔrnər/
- turn left /tərn lɛft/
- at the traffic lights /'træfɪk laɪts/
- turn right /tərn raɪt/
- go past the church /pæst/
- across from /ə'krɔs/
- go straight ahead /streɪt ə'hɛd/
- at the end of the street

b Cover the phrases and look at the pictures. Say the phrases.

c Video Watch *Asking the way*. How many people does Izzy ask? Is the Click Gallery building 1, 2, or 3 on the map?



American English	British English
go straight ahead	go straight on
across from	opposite

d Watch again. Complete the **You hear** phrases.

You say	You hear
Excuse me, please. Where's the Click Gallery?	Sorry, I don't [1] _____ here.
Excuse me. Is the Click Gallery near here?	The Click Gallery? It's [2] _____ here, but I don't know where exactly. Sorry.
Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the Click Gallery, please?	Yes, of course. Go straight on. Go [3] _____ the church, and then turn [4] _____ at the traffic lights. And it's at the [5] _____ of the street.
Sorry. Could you say that again, please?	Yes. Go straight on... You can't [6] _____ it.
Got it. Thanks.	

Can you...? or Could you...?

Can you tell me the way to the Click Gallery?

Could you say that again, please?

We can use *Can you...?* or *Could you...?* to ask another person to do something. *Could you...?* is more polite.

e Video Watch and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the rhythm. Then practice the conversation with a partner.

f **ROLE-PLAY** Work in pairs. Use the map in **2c** to ask for directions.

1 **A** You are at point **X** on the map. You want to find the Click Gallery. Ask **B** for directions. Then ask **B** to repeat them.

Begin: *Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the Click Gallery, please?*

B You know where the Click Gallery is. Give **A** directions.

Begin: *Yes, of course. Go straight ahead...*

2 **B** You are at point **Y** on the map. You want to find the Click Gallery. Ask **A** for directions. Then ask **A** to repeat them.

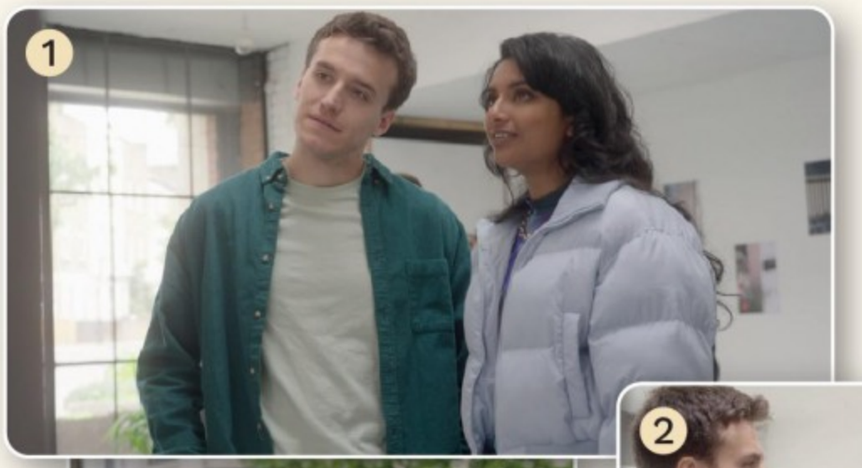
Begin: *Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the Click Gallery, please?*

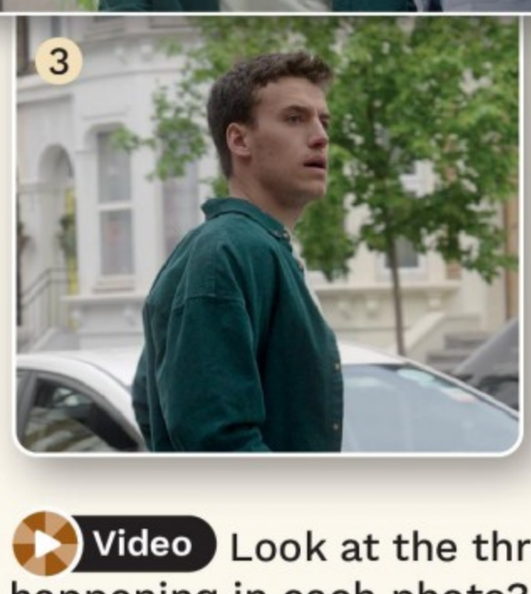
A You know where the Click Gallery is. Give **B** directions.

Begin: *Yes, of course. Go straight ahead...*



3 AT THE GALLERY







a Video Look at the three photos. What do you think is happening in each photo? Then watch *At the gallery* and check your answers.

b Watch again. Then answer the questions.

1 How does Andre know Izzy?
2 Does Andre think Izzy was a good student?
3 Why is Ben surprised?
4 Does Andre know why Izzy left the course?
5 What does Andre think of Izzy's job?

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

a Match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**.

A	B
1 You look worried.	▬ I'm working as a bike courier.
2 Is everything OK?	▬ See you.
3 Can you still come tonight?	▬ Thanks for inviting me.
4 See you later.	▬ Of course.
5 Thanks for coming.	▬ Yes...No.
6 What are you doing these days?	▬ Do I?

b Video Watch and check.

c In pairs, practice the phrases and responses. Then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In pairs, talk about what happens at the end of the episode. Why do you think Izzy leaves the gallery? How do you think Ben feels?

8A A murder in the family

G simple past: regular and irregular
V irregular verbs
P simple past verbs

Did you love your husband? *No. But I didn't kill him.*

1 READING

a Read about a TV drama based on a novel called *Who killed Jeremy Travers?* and look at the photos of the victim and the suspects. Then cover the text and look at the photos. Can you remember who the people are?

Who's Gordon? *He's Jeremy's business partner.*

b 8.1 Read and listen to an extract from the book. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Correct the **F** sentences.

1 Somebody killed Jeremy between 11:00 p.m. and 7:00 a.m.
2 The inspector questioned Amanda in the living room.
3 Jeremy went to bed before Amanda.
4 Amanda and Jeremy slept in the same room.
5 Somebody opened and closed Amanda's door.
6 Amanda got up at 7:00.
7 Amanda didn't love Jeremy.

Inspector Granger arrived at about 9:00. He [1]was a short man with white hair and pale blue eyes. Amanda, Barbara, Claudia, and Gordon [2]were in the living room. The inspector [3]came in.

"Mr. Travers died between midnight last night and 7:00 this morning," he [4]said. "Somebody in this room killed him." He looked at them one by one, but nobody [5]spoke.

"Mrs. Travers, I want to talk to you first. Come into the study with me, please."

Amanda followed the inspector into the study and they [6]sat down.

"What did your husband do after dinner last night?"

"We finished dinner at about 9:30. Then Jeremy said he was tired and he [7]went to bed."

"Did you go to bed then?"

"No, I didn't. I went for a walk in the garden."

"What time did you go to bed?"

"About quarter to twelve."

"Was your husband asleep?"

"I don't know, Inspector. We…we [8]slept in different rooms. But I [9]saw that his door was closed."

"Did you hear anything when you were in your room?"

"Yes, I [10]heard Jeremy's bedroom door. It opened. I [11]thought it was Jeremy. Then it closed again. I [12]read in bed for half an hour and then I went to sleep."

"What time did you get up this morning?"

"I [13]got up at about 7:15. I [14]had breakfast and at 8:00 I [15]took a cup of tea to my husband. I [16]found him in bed. He was…dead."

"Tell me, Mrs. Travers, did you love your husband?"

"Jeremy is…was a difficult man."

"But did you love him, Mrs. Travers?"

"No, Inspector. I hated him."



Crime Drama

Who killed Jeremy Travers?

June 22, 1965 was Jeremy Travers's 60th birthday. He had dinner at his country house with his wife, Amanda, and his daughter, Barbara. Also there were Gordon Summers, his business partner, and Claudia Pasquale, his secretary. The dinner was tense. The next morning, Amanda Travers went to her husband's bedroom and found him…dead.

2 PRONUNCIATION simple past verbs

a Look at the highlighted irregular verbs in the book extract. What are the base forms?

1 be – was 2 be – were 3 come – came

b 8.2 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

c 8.3 Find and underline nine simple past **regular** verbs in the story. How do you pronounce them? Listen and check. Then listen and repeat the verbs and phrases.

arrived *Inspector Granger arrived.*

3 LISTENING

a Video Watch part of Episode 2 of the TV drama. Focus on the body language. Do you think everyone is telling the truth? Who do you think the inspector is suspicious of?



(from left to right) Gordon Summers, Barbara Travers, Jeremy Travers (the victim), Amanda Travers, Claudia Pasquale

12 HD S 1h10m

Episode 1

Watch now



Episode 2

Inspector Granger questions the suspects.

Watch now

b Watch again, pausing after each interview. Complete the inspector's notes.

	Amanda	Barbara	Gordon	Claudia
After dinner?	She went for a walk.			
Time went to bed?	11:45			
Hear anything?	Jeremy's door opened and closed.			
Motive?	She hated him.			

c Compare your notes with a partner. Who do you think was the murderer: Amanda, Barbara, Gordon, or Claudia? Why?

d Video Watch part of Episode 3. Who killed Jeremy Travers? Why? Were you right?

4 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY
simple past: regular and irregular

a Cover the story in 1. Are the verbs in the list regular or irregular in the simple past? Write the simple past form + and − for each verb.

~~arrive~~ close come hate
kill sit sleep speak

arrive arrived didn't arrive

b 8.4 Listen and check.

c **Grammar Bank** 8A *p.146*

d **Irregular verbs** *p.173* Check (✓) the irregular verbs you know. Choose three new ones and learn them.

5 SPEAKING

Communication Police interview **A** *p.107* **B** *p.112*
Interview robbery suspects. Are they telling the truth?

8B A house with a history

G *there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns*
V the house
P /ɛr/ and /ɪr/

Is there a dishwasher? *No, there isn't.*

1 VOCABULARY the house

a Read the advertisement. Would you like to rent this house? Why (not)?

b Cover the advertisement. What can you remember about the house?

c V **Vocabulary Bank** The house *p.169*

d Video Watch the video about Paula's house. What rooms does she go into? What furniture do you see?

FOR RENT

Beautiful country house

Very quiet. Six bedrooms, four bathrooms, large yard. Five miles from town. Perfect family home. Low price.



2 LISTENING

a 8.7 Kim and Leo are a young couple. They want to rent the country house in **1**. Cover the conversation and listen. Which three rooms in the house do they go into?

b Listen again and complete the conversation.

K The yard's wonderful, I love it.
L Is there a [1]*garage*?
B Oh yes, there's a big garage over there.
K You lived in this house, is that right, Mrs. ...?
B Miss Travers. But call me Barbara, dear. Yes, I lived here. A long time ago. Now I live in town. Let's go inside the house...
This is the [2]_____. It's a lovely room, very bright.
K I love the furniture, the old sofa, the armchairs, the [3]_____...
B And this is the library...
L Wow! There's a library, Kim!
B And this is the [4]_____. It's very big, as you can see.
K Is there a dishwasher?
B No, there isn't. It's an old house, you see.
L Never mind. I think it's nice. Is there a [5]_____ downstairs?
B Yes, there's one [6]_____ and there are three upstairs.
K Are there any [7]_____ with children?
B No, there aren't any neighbors near here. But there are some families with children in town.
K That's great. We have two children.
B Very nice, dear. Now, let's go [8]_____...

c 8.8 Listen. What does Kim say about one of the bedrooms? Whose bedroom was it? Do they decide to rent the house?



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE



d 8.9 Kim and Leo go to a local restaurant. Listen to six extracts from their conversation. Fill in blanks 1–6. What do you think they find out?

Leo	Well, here's to our new [1] _____.
Leo	Is something [2] _____?
Server	Some people [3] _____ that she was the one who did it.
Server	Didn't she [4] _____ you?
Leo	Tell us [5] _____?
Kim	Oh, how [6] _____!

e 8.10 Now listen to the whole conversation. Check your answer to **d**. What do Kim and Leo decide to do in the end? Why?

3 GRAMMAR *there is / there are, some / any* + plural nouns

a In groups of three, practice the conversation in **2b**. Then complete the chart.

	Singular	Plural
+	There's a library.	There _____ some families in town.
−	There _____ a dishwasher.	There aren't any neighbors.
?	_____ _____ a garage?	_____ _____ any neighbors?

b What's the difference between...?

1 There are **three** families in town.

2 There are **some** families in town.

c **Grammar Bank** 8B *p.146*

d **Communication** *Is there...? Are there...?* **A** *p.107* **B** *p.112* Ask and answer questions.

4 PRONUNCIATION /ɛr/ and /ɪr/

a Video Watch and repeat the sounds.

 chair	
 ear	

b Put the words in the correct row in **a**.

there here careful dear wear they're near stairs we're hear where

c 8.12 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat the words. Which three pairs of words are pronounced the same?

d 8.13 Listen and write six sentences or questions.

5 SPEAKING

a Imagine you want to rent your partner's house or apartment. Ask the questions. Ask for and give more information if you can.

Is it a **house** or an **apartment**?

How **old** is it?

How **big** is it?

How many **bedrooms** / **bathrooms** are there?

Is there a **study**? / a **yard** or a **balcony**? / a **garage**? / **heat** or **central air conditioning**?

b Draw a simple plan of one room. Show the plan to your partner and describe the room.

This is the living room. It's big and it's very bright. There are two sofas and an armchair.

6 WRITING describing your home

Writing Bank 8 *p.122* Write a description of your house or apartment for a website.

8C Do you believe in ghosts?

- G *there was / there were*
- V prepositions: movement and place
- P silent letters

Were there any ghosts? *No, but there was a strange noise.*

1 READING & LISTENING

a Do you believe in ghosts? Are there buildings in your town / city that people think are haunted?

b Read a newspaper article about the Hollywood Roosevelt, a hotel in Los Angeles. Find the following information:

1 the year the hotel was built
2 some famous people who stayed in the hotel
3 a movie and a TV show that the hotel appeared in
4 the ghost that appears in the room by the pool
5 a musical instrument that a ghost plays in room 928
6 where a child ghost appears in the hotel
7 what happened to a partygoer in the hotel's ballroom

c 8.14 Listen to two guests at the hotel. Did they see a ghost? Who do you think had the more frightening experience?

d Listen again. Who did these things happen to? Check (✓) the correct column(s).

	The man	The woman	
1	☐	☐	knew about the ghosts in the hotel.
2	☐	☐	woke up during the night.
3	☐	☐	heard strange noises.
4	☐	☐	felt frightened when he / she heard the noises.
5	☐	☐	complained to reception.
6	☐	☐	wrote to the hotel after getting home.
7	☐	☐	only stayed at the hotel for one night.
8	☐	☐	doesn't want to stay at the hotel again.

e Complete the sentences from the article and the listening. What do the highlighted verb phrases mean?

1 She got _____ to open the window.
2 We woke _____ at 3:30 in the morning.
3 The noises stopped and we went _____ to sleep.
4 We checked _____ of the hotel the same morning.

f Would you like to stay in one of the haunted rooms at the Hollywood Roosevelt? Why (not)?





Would you like to stay in a haunted room?

The US is well-known for having houses and hotels with ghosts, but did you know there was one in downtown Hollywood?

The Hollywood Roosevelt is a famous Los Angeles hotel situated near the Chinese Theatre. The hotel was built in 1927 and has 300 rooms. In the past, many famous people stayed at the hotel, including Marilyn Monroe, F. Scott Fitzgerald, and Prince. Montgomery Clift, who starred in *From Here to Eternity*, also stayed there while filming the movie. More recently, the hotel appeared in the movie *Catch Me If You Can* and the TV show *Curb Your Enthusiasm*.

Many people believe that the Hollywood Roosevelt is haunted, especially room 928. People say that the hotel has several ghosts, including Marilyn Monroe, who haunts a large room by the pool. She lived there during happier times in the 1950s. Guests say they see Marilyn in the room's mirror. Montgomery Clift appears in room 928. A recent guest in that room reported she got up to open the window and felt someone pat her back. Others say Clift plays the trumpet in the room. In addition, other guests claim to see a young girl in a blue dress walk through the hotel's halls.

When a partygoer went to the hotel's ballroom for an Oscars Viewing Party, he reported that a strange thing happened during the event. He posted on social media, "Fabulous party, but it was very cold in one part of the ballroom – like ten degrees colder. Weird!" The hotel hosted the first Academy Awards in 1929. Some psychics say there is a ghost anxiously waiting in this cold spot. Perhaps the ghost is waiting for an Academy Award!

Glossary
weird strange

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

2 GRAMMAR *there was / there were*

a 8.15 **Complete the sentences from the listening with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*. Then listen and check.**

1 There _____ a strange noise outside our door.
2 There _____ any more strange noises.
3 We knew that people said there _____ ghosts.
4 There _____ anybody in that room last night.

b **Grammar Bank** 8C *p.146*

3 VOCABULARY
prepositions: movement and place



a Video **Watch Part 1 of the video. Match the words and pictures 1–6. Then watch Part 2 and check your answers.**

The ghost is going...

- [ ] from the bedroom to the bathroom.
- [1] into the wardrobe.
- [ ] out of the wardrobe.
- [ ] through the window.
- [ ] up the stairs.
- [ ] down the stairs.

b **Vocabulary Bank** Prepositions *p.170*

4 PRONUNCIATION silent letters

Silent letters

Some English words have a silent letter, e.g., in *ghost* /goʊst/ you don't pronounce the *h*.

a 8.19 **Listen and cross out the silent letter in these words.**

could cupboard friend guest half hour
island know listen talk what write

b **Practice saying the words.**

5 SPEAKING

Communication A haunted room **A** *p.107* **B** *p.112* **Look at a photo of a haunted hotel room. Remember what there was in the room.**

6 LISTENING



a Video **Watch *A haunted castle*. How many times did you see the ghost of a monk? Did you see anything else strange during the movie?**

b **Circle the correct number or word in the information about the castle.**

1 Portchester Castle is more than *170* / *1,700* years old.
2 The castle is part of a charity called *English* / *British* Heritage.
3 Some workers at the castle *left* / *lost* their jobs because of the ghosts.
4 Most visitors *are* / *aren't* afraid of the ghost of a Roman soldier.
5 The White Lady is the ghost of a woman who died when she tried to save her *husband* / *child*.
6 One visitor to the castle heard the sound of *people screaming* / *horses running* on the video that he filmed.
7 We *know* / *don't know* a lot about the ghost of the man on a black horse.

c **Would you like to visit Portchester Castle and see a ghost? Why (not)?**

7&8 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 Van Gogh and Gauguin ___ both painters.
a was b were c is

2 Basquiat ___ born in France.
a wasn't b weren't c isn't

3 ___ the tickets expensive?
a Was b Were c Did

4 I ___ my flight the day before yesterday.
a booked b book c books

5 They ___ at the right airport.
a didn't arrived b don't arrived c didn't arrive

6 ___ you meet your friends last night?
a Did b Do c Were

7 We ___ to Istanbul three years ago.
a go b were c went

8 When ___ in Los Angeles?
a you lived b did you lived c did you live

9 I ___ you at the party last night.
a didn't saw b didn't see c don't saw

10 What time ___ home?
a did you get b you did get c you got

11 ___ a big mirror in the bathroom.
a There are b There is c It is

12 How many bedrooms ___?
a there are b are there c are they

13 There aren't ___ pictures on the walls.
a any b some c a

14 ___ only three guests in the dining room.
a There was b There were c There is

15 ___ a fireplace in your room?
a There were b Was there c Were there

VOCABULARY

a Complete the professions with *-er*, *-or*, *-ian*, or *-ist*.

1 act ___
2 art ___
3 sing ___
4 music ___
5 scient ___

b Complete the phrases with *go*, *have*, or *get*.

1 _____ a good time
2 _____ an email
3 _____ long hair
4 _____ a taxi
5 _____ on vacation

c Complete the sentences with *back*, *by*, *in*, *out*, or *to*.

1 I went _____ with my friends on Saturday night.
2 They went home _____ car.
3 What time did you get _____ the hotel?
4 I was born _____ 1995.
5 After lunch, I went _____ to work.

d Label the pictures.



_____ _____ _____ _____ _____

e Write the prepositions.



_____ _____ _____ _____ _____

PRONUNCIATION

a Practice the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds



ear chair phone saw

Consonant sounds



dog tie vase bag parrot

b Sound Bank *p.174–5* Say more words for each sound.

c What sound do the **pink** letters have in these words?

1 h**a**ll _____
2 h**e**re _____
3 liv**ed** _____
4 look**ed** _____
5 th**e**re _____

d Underline the stressed syllable.

1 sci|en|tist
2 a|go
3 yes|ter|day
4 be|tween
5 fire|place

Can you understand this text?

a Read the article once. Do you have any favorite detectives or detective writers?

b Read the article again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 A lot of people read crime fiction today.
2 Edgar Allan Poe's detective was called Sherlock Holmes.
3 Before the first detective story, there wasn't a word for "detective" in English.
4 Sherlock Holmes only appeared in short stories.
5 Agatha Christie wanted her readers to try to solve the crimes themselves.
6 Sara Paretsky is a strong character in a detective novel.

Can you understand these people?



Joelle Katie Maura Asya Jake

Video **Watch and answer the questions.**

1 Joelle's family lives in ___.
a New York b North Carolina c Canada

2 Last weekend, Katie ___.
a went out with friends
b went to a friend's house
c watched a movie

3 In Maura's bedroom, there's ___.
a a TV and a cupboard
b a wardrobe and a bed
c a bed and a desk

4 Yesterday, Asya ___.
a went to bed late
b went out with her sister
c had lunch with her brother

5 Last New Year's Eve, Jake celebrated ___.
a at home b at a club c at a restaurant

Can you say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the things you can do.

Can you...?

1 ☐ say three things about a famous (dead) person from your country

2 ☐ say five things you did last week, using past time expressions, e.g., *last night*, *yesterday*, (*three*) *days ago*, etc.

3 ☐ say where and when you were born

4 ☐ ask five questions about the past with *was / were* or *did*

A history of the modern detective novel

One of the most popular types of literature these days is crime fiction. Modern crime writers include Gillian Flynn (*Gone Girl*) and Richard Osman (*The Thursday Murder Club* series). But which writers wrote the first detective stories, and who were the most famous detectives?

Edgar Allan Poe (1809–1849) wrote perhaps the first detective story in 1841. It was a short story called *The Murders in the Rue Morgue*, and it introduced the private detective, Auguste Dupin. At the time, detective fiction was very new, and the word *detective* did not exist in English.

Arthur Conan Doyle (1859–1930) created probably the most famous detective: Sherlock Holmes. Holmes first appeared in the novel *A Study in Scarlet* in 1887. He is intelligent and funny, like a real person the author knew. Doyle met Dr. Joseph Bell at the University of Edinburgh ten years before he wrote his first Sherlock Holmes book. He based the fictional character on Dr. Bell. In total, Doyle wrote four Sherlock Holmes novels and 56 short stories.



Another famous crime writer was **Agatha Christie** (1890–1976). She created not one but two famous detectives: Hercule Poirot and Miss Marple. Christie's first detective story was *The Mysterious Affair at Styles* in 1916. She liked playing games with the reader: could they solve the crime before the detective in the book? Christie wrote over 60 detective novels and 14 short story collections during her life.



Today's crime stories have a much wider variety of characters. Writer **Sara Paretsky** (born 1947) introduced a smart and strong woman detective called V.I. Warshawski, who was very popular with readers. All the authors mentioned here had a great influence on today's crime writers. They are probably going to influence them in the future, too.

9A What's for dinner?

G countable / uncountable nouns, *a / an*, *some / any*
V food and drink
P the letters *ea*

What did you have for dinner? *A pizza and some salad.*

1 VOCABULARY food and drink

a Do the quiz. Complete the food and drink words.

Food quiz

1 two things you can add to coffee
milk, s_____

2 two things on a pizza Margherita
t_____, ch_____

3 two kinds of food that vegetarians don't eat
m_____, f_____

4 a drink you buy in a bottle
w_____

5 something cold, sweet, and delicious
i_____ c_____

6 a vegetable you can make French fries from
p_____

7 something you use to make an omelet
e_____

8 a lot of people are addicted to this sweet food
ch_____

9 a snack made with two pieces of bread
s_____

10 the three meals we usually have every day
b_____, l_____, d_____

b V **Vocabulary Bank** Food and drink *p.171*

c What's your favorite...?

breakfast dessert fruit snack vegetable

Is there any food or drink you don't like?

2 GRAMMAR countable / uncountable nouns, *a / an*, *some / any*

a Journalist Hilary Rose always has the same thing when she eats out. Look at the photo. Do you think it's a healthy lunch? Why do you think she always orders it? Read the article and check.

Salad and fries? Yes, please!





When I go out to eat, I always have the same thing. Last time, I had a small Caesar salad and some fries. Before that, it was a seafood salad and fries. Sometimes, I add some extra cheese, but it's always salad and fries.

"Why do you order a healthy salad with unhealthy fries?" people ask. I don't order them because they are healthy or unhealthy – it's just what I want to eat. And, anyway, a Caesar salad isn't healthy. It has creamy dressing and fried bread, not just lettuce and chicken.

In fact, my friends and I don't like a "typical" meal of meat and two vegetables. We like small plates. My friend says this started when Spanish restaurants arrived, and with them, tapas.

Now I eat "salad and fries" all over my city. If you're in my city and you tell me where you are, I can tell you exactly where to get the best of both. However, recently I read about an interesting menu item from Pennsylvania. The Pittsburgh salad. What is a Pittsburgh salad? It's a salad with the usual lettuce, cheese, and chicken, but with some fries actually on top. Genius. Local restaurateurs: you know what you need to do!

Adapted from The Times

b Read the article again. Answer the questions.

Paragraph 1 What two kinds of salads does Hilary mention?
Paragraph 2 What unhealthy ingredients are there in a Caesar salad?
Paragraph 3 When did "small plates" become popular?
Paragraph 4 What's in a Pittsburgh salad?

c Is there anything that you often order when you eat out? Why do you choose it?

d Complete these sentences from the article with *a* or *some*.

1 I had _____ small Caesar salad and _____ fries.
2 Before that, it was _____ seafood salad.
3 Sometimes I add _____ extra cheese.

e **Grammar Bank** 9A *p.148*

f **Video** Watch the video. Circle the things the woman bought.

butter cake carrots
cheese chicken eggs fish
lettuce onions orange juice
pasta pineapple potatoes
red pepper rice sausages
strawberries



g Make sentences with *a*, *some*, or *any*.

She didn't buy any butter.

3 LISTENING



a Look at the photos posted with the hashtag #mydinnerlastnight. Which photo do you think shows...?

1 ___ something that the person cooked alone
2 ___ take-out food that the person ordered
3 ___ something that the person ate in a restaurant
4 ___ something that the person ate for a special occasion

b **9.3** Listen to the four people talking about their photos and check your answers to **a**.

Glossary
Thanksgiving a holiday in the US (in November) and Canada (in October)

c Listen again. Who (1–4) talks about...?

___ a good restaurant near their house
___ cooking with other people
___ ways of preparing something
___ a dish with two main ingredients

d Which of the four meals would you like to eat? Which wouldn't you like?

4 PRONUNCIATION the letters *ea*

a How is *ea* pronounced in these words? Put them in the correct column.

bread breakfast eat ice cream
meat peas steak tea



b **9.4** Listen and check. Practice saying the words. Which is the most common pronunciation of *ea*?

c **9.5** Listen to the definitions of some words with *ea*. Write the words.

5 SPEAKING

a Make a food diary for yesterday. Write what food and drink you had.

breakfast – a cup of coffee, some cereal

b Work in pairs. Tell each other what you had yesterday. Say where you had it and who made it.

I had breakfast at home, and I made it.
I had a cup of coffee and some cereal.

c Answer the questions in pairs.

What do you usually have...?

- for a quick lunch when you don't have time to cook
- for dessert at home or in a restaurant
- when you're hungry between meals
- for breakfast on the weekend
- for a special occasion
- when you order take-out

6 WRITING describing a memorable meal

Writing Bank 9 *p.123* Write four paragraphs about a memorable meal.

9B White gold

G quantifiers: *how much / how many, a lot of*, etc.
V food containers
P /ʃ/ and /s/

How much sugar do you eat? *A lot.*

1 VOCABULARY food containers

a 9.6 Match the words and pictures. Listen and check.

- a bag
- a bottle
- a box
- a can
- a carton
- a jar
- a package



b Make phrases with the containers in **a** and the words below.

~~cereal~~ coffee cookies jam
milk potato chips soda sugar tuna

a box of cereal

2 GRAMMAR quantifiers

a Look at the pictures of food and drink. Number the pictures **0**, **1**, **2**, or **3** (0 = no sugar / salt – 3 = a lot of sugar / salt).





b Video Watch and check your answers to **a**. Can you remember the healthy amounts of sugar and salt for a man and a woman?

c Answer the questions about the food and drink in the video. Use an expression from the list.



How much sugar is there in...?

1 the can of soda _____
2 the apple _____

How much salt is there in...?

3 the water _____
4 the bottle of olive oil _____

d G **Grammar Bank** 9B *p.148*

e Work in pairs. **A**, say how much you eat of the first thing in the list below. Give more information if you can. Then ask *How about you?* **B**, do the same for the second thing, etc.

fish meat potatoes vegetables chocolate
fast food eggs pasta olive oil butter cheese

I eat a lot of fish. I eat it maybe three or four times a week. How about you?

3 PRONUNCIATION /ʃ/ and /s/

a Video Watch and repeat the sounds and words.

	**sh**ower	**s**ugar fi**sh**
	**s**nake	**s**alt chocolate**s**

b 9.8 Put the words in the correct row in **a**. Listen and check.

center **c**ereal deli**ci**ous fre**sh** gla**ss** informa**ti**on recep**ti**on ri**ce** **s**alad **sc**ien**ce** **sh**opping spe**ci**al spi**ce** **s**ure

c 9.9 Listen and repeat the conversation. Then practice it with a partner.

A Are you **s**ure this is **s**alt? I think it's **s**ugar.
B No, I'm **s**ure it's **s**alt. I put **s**ome in the ri**ce** **s**alad.
A Let's **s**taste the **s**alad. Aargh! It was **s**ugar. I told you.
B **S**orry!

4 READING

a Read the article. Complete the facts with *sugar* or *salt*.

Fascinating facts about... sugar and salt

At different times in history, both sugar and salt were called "white gold" because they were so expensive and difficult to get. And there are many more interesting facts about sugar and salt...



- [1]_____ is used to make glass, laundry detergent, and paper.
- People often think that [2]_____ makes children more active or that it makes them behave badly. However, there is no strong scientific evidence of this.
- [3]_____ was very valuable in ancient Rome. Soldiers were paid extra money called "salarium" especially to buy it, and this is where the word "salary" comes from.
- Scientists use [4]_____ to make different kinds of plastic, e.g., for food packaging.
- Only 4% of the [5]_____ used in the US is used in food; the remaining 96% is used for things like farming and de-icing roads.
- *Sure* and [6]_____ are two of the few words in the English language that begin with "su" but are pronounced "sh."
- In the UK, there's a club for people who collect the little packets of [7]_____ you get when you order tea or coffee in a café or restaurant.
- [8]_____ removes coffee stains (though probably not from your new white carpet).
- If you put [9]_____ into a vase of flowers, the flowers last longer.



- The body of an average adult has about 250 g of [10]_____. It helps oxygen travel around the body and makes muscles work.
- Salzburg, the city in Austria where Mozart was born, means "castle of [11]_____."
- Christopher Columbus introduced [12]_____ to the Americas in 1493, on his second voyage.

b 9.10 Listen and check.

c Look at the highlighted verbs in the article. What do you think they mean? How do you pronounce them?

d How many of the facts did you know? Which ones?

5 SPEAKING

a Read the questionnaire and complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*.

b In pairs, interview your partner. Do you think they need to eat less sugar or salt?

How much sugar and salt do you have a day?

Sugar

1 _____ spoonfuls of sugar do you have in your tea or coffee?
a two or more **b** one **c** none

2 _____ bottles or cans of soda (or other carbonated drinks) do you drink a day?
a two or more **b** one **c** none

3 _____ fruit or fruit juice do you have a day?
a a lot **b** not much **c** none

4 _____ cookies do you eat a week?
a a lot **b** not many **c** none

Salt

5 How often do you add salt to your food at the table?
a always **b** sometimes **c** never

6 _____ take-out food do you eat?
a a lot **b** not much **c** none

7 _____ bread do you eat a day?
a a lot **b** a little **c** none

8 _____ bags of potato chips do you eat a week?
a a lot **b** a few **c** none

9C Quizzes and quizzers

G comparative adjectives
V high numbers
P /ər/, sentence stress

Is the US bigger than Canada? *No, Canada is bigger.*

1 VOCABULARY high numbers

a Read the questions about quizzes and guess a, b, or c.

1 How many US episodes were there of the TV quiz show *Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?*
a 33 b 339 c 3,398

2 How many places in the US have a quiz night?
a about 100 b about 1,000 c about 10,000

3 What is the most money that somebody won on a TV quiz show in the US?
a $2,520,700 b $12,520,700 c $22,520,700

b 9.11 Listen and check. Were you right? How do you say the three correct answers?

c V **Vocabulary Bank** Days and numbers *p.156* Do Part 4.

d Video Watch and do the numbers quiz in pairs or teams.

2 LISTENING

a 9.13 Listen to the introduction to a show called *Quiz Night*. Answer the questions.

1 How long do the contestants have to say if the sentences are true or false?

2 How much do they win if they get...?
a the first answer right
b the second answer right
c the third answer right
d all eight answers right

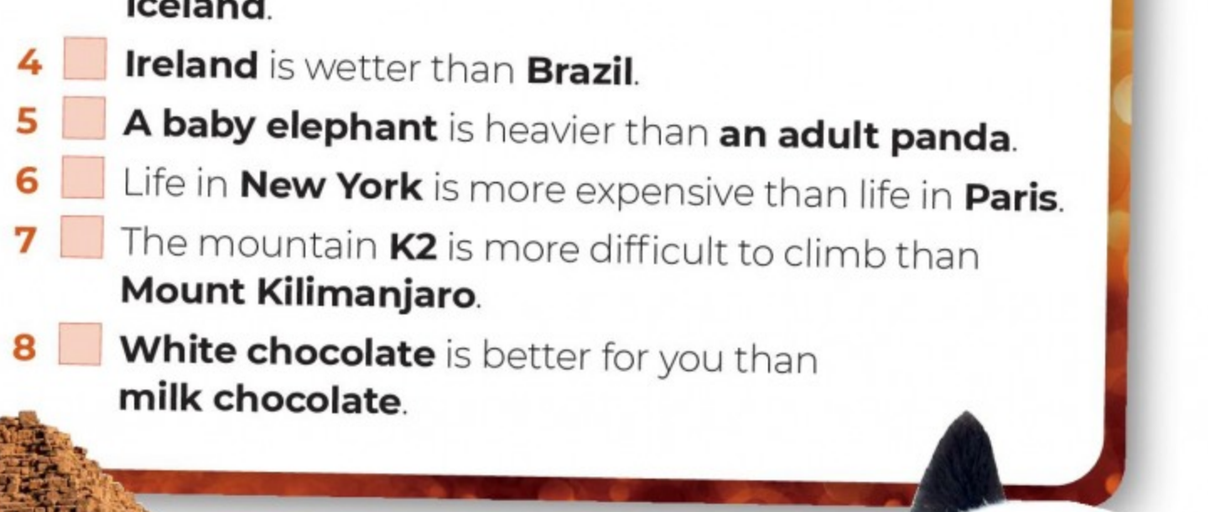
3 If they get an answer wrong, how much do they lose?

4 What can a contestant do if they are not sure of the answer?

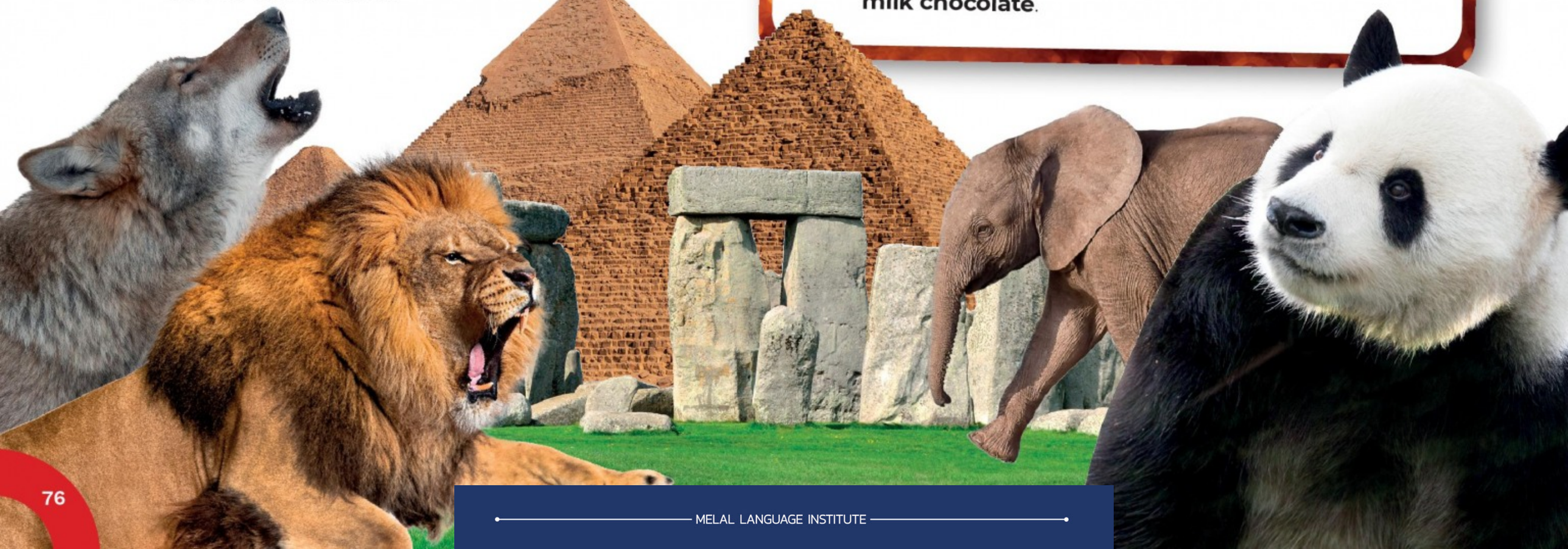
b Look at sentences 1–8 from *Quiz Night*. Write **T** (true) or **F** (false).

c 9.14 Listen to the contestant on *Quiz Night*. Check your answers to **b**. How much money does he win?

d Listen again for why the answers to questions 1–8 are true or false. Write down all the important numbers in each answer.



1 ☐ A **wolf** can make a louder noise than a **lion**.
2 ☐ **Stonehenge** is older than the **Pyramids of Giza**.
3 ☐ The island of **Cuba** is bigger than the island of **Iceland**.
4 ☐ **Ireland** is wetter than **Brazil**.
5 ☐ **A baby elephant** is heavier than **an adult panda**.
6 ☐ Life in **New York** is more expensive than life in **Paris**.
7 ☐ The mountain **K2** is more difficult to climb than **Mount Kilimanjaro**.
8 ☐ **White chocolate** is better for you than **milk chocolate**.



3 GRAMMAR & PRONUNCIATION
comparative adjectives, /ər/, sentence stress

a **Look at the adjectives in the *Quiz Night* sentences on page 76. Answer the questions.**

Using adjectives to compare two things:

1 What two letters do you put at the end of one-syllable adjectives, e.g., *loud*?
2 Why is *big* different?
3 What happens when an adjective ends in consonant + *y*, e.g., *heavy*?
4 What word do you put in front of long adjectives, e.g., *expensive*?
5 What's the comparative form of *good*?
6 What's the missing word?
China is bigger _____ *Japan.*

b **Grammar Bank** 9C *p.148*

c **9.16** **Listen to the sentence. How is *-er* pronounced at the end of a comparative adjective? How is *than* pronounced?**

A lion can make a loud**er** noise **than** a wolf.

d **9.17** **Listen and write six comparative sentences.**

e **Listen again and copy the rhythm. Are the sentences true or false?**

4 SPEAKING

Communication *Quiz Night* **A** *p.108* **B** *p.113*
Play *Quiz Night*.

5 READING

a **Read the first part of an article about trivia nights. Then cover the text. Answer the questions with a number or day.**

1 When did trivia nights start?
2 How many people are usually on a team?
3 How much does a team pay to play on a trivia night?
4 When do restaurants often hold their trivia nights?
5 How many people took part in one virtual trivia night during the pandemic?

b **Now read Tips for how to win and complete them with A–G.**

A Choose your team carefully.
B Don't be a bad loser.
C Don't cheat!
D Enjoy yourself!
E Keep your eyes open.
F Know about current affairs.
G Learn the big names.

Trivia Night!

A trivia night is a general knowledge quiz held in a bar or restaurant. They started in the UK in the 1970s and have become very popular in the US. There are now trivia nights in more than 10,000 places all over the country. Friends form teams, usually of about five or six people, and they decide on a name for their team. The person who asks the questions is called the "M.C." (or the master of ceremonies), and the teams write their answers on a piece of paper. You can't use your phone to look for the answers! Sometimes teams pay to be part of the event – from about $5 to $25 per person. The winning team gets the money, or they get a gift card to the bar or restaurant where the event is held. But a lot of trivia nights are free because restaurants and bars want people to come on nights that aren't usually busy, like Mondays and Tuesdays. During the Covid-19 pandemic, when most places were closed, people took part in virtual "trivia nights" that helped them stay in touch with family and friends. At least 300,000 people took part in one online trivia night during Covid lockdown!

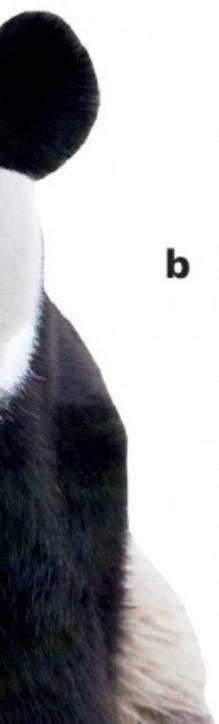
TIPS FOR HOW TO WIN

1 [D] That's really what it's all about. And don't take it too seriously.
2 [ ] Make sure you have friends who are experts at different subjects.
3 [ ] Cell phones, reference books, newspapers, etc., are not permitted.
4 [ ] Find out about events in the news, especially politics.
5 [ ] Memorize the winners of recent and past sporting events, Academy Awards, Grammys, reality TV shows, etc., as well as the latest singles and album charts.
6 [ ] Always look out for new facts, wherever you are.
7 [ ] If you don't win the quiz, remember, there is always next time.



c **Answer the questions with a partner.**

1 Do you have something similar to trivia night in your country?
2 Do you play any games or do quizzes with general knowledge questions, e.g., *Trivial Pursuit*?
3 Are you a good or bad loser? Do you ever cheat?
4 What TV quiz shows are popular in your country? Do you watch any of them? Why (not)?
5 Do you know anyone who loves a particular quiz show? Which one? Why?
6 Would you like to be a contestant on a quiz show? Which one?



EPISODE 5 PICTURES OF YOU

On Primrose Hill

Practical English | going out for dinner | V understanding a menu

1 IZZY EXPLAINS EVERYTHING



a Video Watch *Izzy explains everything*. How do Izzy and Ben feel at the end of the conversation?

a angry
b happy
c sad

b Watch again. Then choose the correct answer, a, b, or c.

1 Izzy said that Ben's show was...
   a OK.
   b good.
   c really good.
2 She left the photography course because...
   a she didn't like Andre.
   b she stopped enjoying taking photos.
   c the course was very hard work.
3 Izzy...
   a is sorry that she left the school.
   b doesn't know if she likes "the real world."
   c likes taking photos again.



2 GOING OUT FOR DINNER

a V Complete the menu with *Main courses*, *Desserts*, and *Starters*.

b 9.18 What do the highlighted words mean? How do you pronounce them? Listen and check.

c Cover the menu. In pairs, try to remember what's on it.

POMODORA

2 courses £19.50 3 courses £23.50

1 _____

- ☐ Pea soup V GF
- ☐ Mozzarella and tomato salad V GF

2 _____

- ☐ Grilled chicken breast with vegetables
- ☐ Mushroom ravioli V
- ☐ Seafood risotto GF

3 _____

- ☐ Homemade vanilla ice cream with hot chocolate sauce V GF
- ☐ Fresh fruit salad V GF
- ☐ Tiramisu V

V Vegetarian GF Gluten-free

If you have any other dietary requirements, please let us know and we will try our best to accommodate your needs.

Tables of 8 or more are subject to a discretionary service charge of 18%.



d Video Watch *Going out for dinner*. Check (✓) the things they order on the menu.

e Watch again. Complete the **You hear** phrases.

You hear	You say
	Hello, we have a reservation. The name is Ben Fischer.
Yes, here we are. A [1] _____ for two?	Yes, that's right.
OK. Come this [2] _____.	
Are you ready to [3] _____?	Yes, I'll have the soup and the mushroom ravioli, please. I'd like the mozzarella salad and then the chicken, please.
What would you like to [4] _____?	Just water for me. A bottle of mineral water, please.
[5] _____ or sparkling?	Is sparkling OK? Yes, sparkling.
How was your [6] _____?	It was great, thanks. Really delicious.
Would you like a [7] _____?	No, thank you. Could we have the bill, please?
Of course.	Thank you.

American English	British English
check	bill

f Video Watch and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the rhythm. Then practice the conversation with a partner.

g **ROLE-PLAY** Use the menu. Work in groups of three to have conversations. Then change roles.

A You are the waiter.
Begin: *Good evening.*

B and **C** You are customers at Pomodora.
Begin: *Hello. We have a reservation. The name is...*

3 IZZY HAS SOME NEWS

a Video Watch *Izzy has some news*. Then answer the questions.

1 What is Izzy's news?
2 How does Ben feel about Izzy's news?
3 What happens at the end?



b Watch again. Then answer the questions.

What does Izzy say about...?
- the park
- the job she wants

What does Ben say about...?
- Izzy's photos
- the job Izzy wants

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

a Match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**.

A	B
1 Sorry I'm late.	☐ Yes, it is.
2 Are you OK?	☐ No problem.
3 I'm sorry I left like that.	☐ That's OK.
4 It's a beautiful evening.	☐ Wow, that's great!
5 I got an interview.	☐ Yes, I'm fine.

b Video Watch the video and check.

c In pairs, practice the phrases and responses. Then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In pairs, talk about Ben and Izzy. Do you think they're good together? Do you think Izzy gets the job as a photo editor?

10A Top of the list

G superlative adjectives
V places and buildings
P consonant groups

What's the oldest building in your town? *I'm not sure. Probably the cathedral.*

1 VOCABULARY places and buildings

a Video Watch the video. Then complete the famous tourist sights with a word from the list.

Bridge Castle Gallery Park Square Street

1 Times _____
2 Sydney Harbour _____
3 Hyde _____
4 Edinburgh _____
5 Wall _____
6 The National _____

b Can you remember any other information about the places in **a**? What other famous bridges, castles, etc., do you know?

c V **Vocabulary Bank** Places and buildings *p.172*

2 GRAMMAR superlative adjectives

a Look at the photos. What countries do you think they are in?

b Complete 1–6 with a phrase from the list.

The biggest The busiest The longest
The most dangerous The tallest The widest

c 10.2 Listen and check your answers to **a** and **b**.

d Complete the chart with the correct forms.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
old	older	the oldest
	taller	the tallest
long		the longest
big	bigger	
	busier	the busiest
dangerous	more dangerous	

e How are superlative adjectives different in form from comparative adjectives?

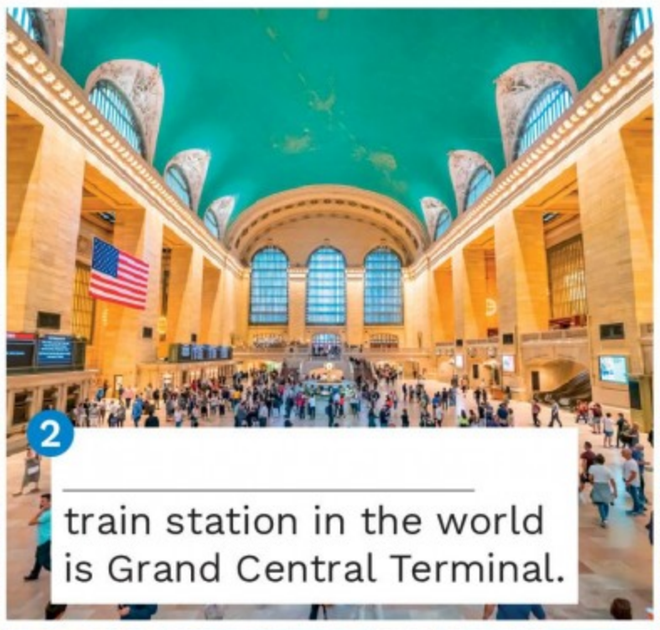
f G **Grammar Bank** 10A *p.150*

g 10.4 Listen and write six superlative questions.

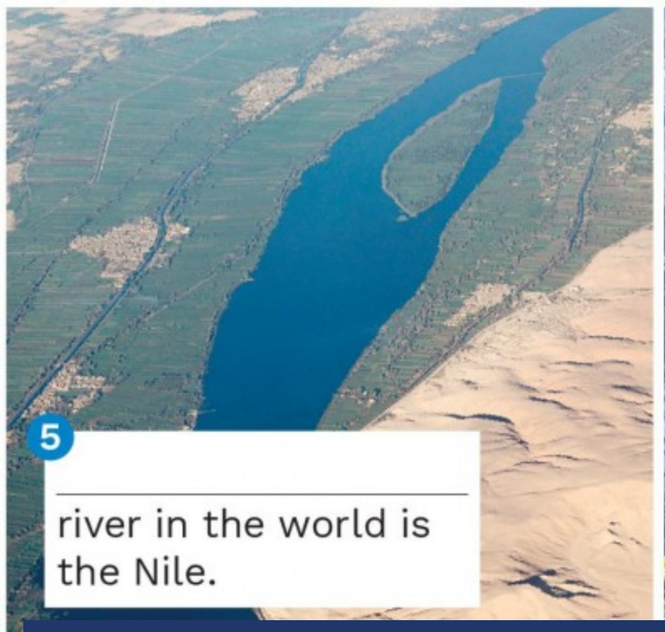
h In groups, ask and answer the questions in **g**. Choose from the cities in the list.

Atlanta Dhaka Istanbul La Paz
Las Vegas New York









MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
consonant groups

Consonant groups
Two or three consonants together can be difficult to pronounce, e.g., *fa**st**est*, *mo**st d**angerous*.

a 10.5 Listen and repeat.

beautiful
the most beautiful
the most beautiful square
What's the most beautiful square?

b 10.6 Now listen and repeat the same pattern with 1–4.

1 old (building)
2 interesting (museum)
3 good (shopping mall)
4 nice (place)

c **Communication** I'm a tourist. Help! **A** *p.108* **B** *p.113*
Role-play being a tourist.

4 READING

a Read the article. Which suggestion do you think is the most useful?

b Read the article again. Complete the paragraphs with sentences A–E.

A All you need to do is smile and wave to them.
B The only thing that saved me was a student who shouted, "Don't stop, keep walking!"
C So if you really can't cross the street, you can hire one to take you to the other side.
D When I heard this I thought, "Maybe it's better to just stay in my hotel and read!"
E The second time I chose a woman selling vegetables with baskets full of sweet potatoes, and again I survived.

c Cover the article. Can you remember seven words for vehicles?

d Work in groups and answer the questions.

1 What's the most popular form of transportation in your town or city?
2 In what part of town and at what time of day is the traffic the worst?
3 How do you usually get around?
4 Do cars always stop at crosswalks?
5 Are there any streets that are really dangerous to cross?
6 Are there any towns or cities you visited where you had problems crossing the street, or where you found the traffic really frightening?



The most dangerous place in the world to cross the street

Ho Chi Minh City in Vietnam is a high-energy, cosmopolitan city. In most cities, if you want to cross the street and there is no crosswalk or traffic light nearby, you wait for a gap in the traffic, and then you cross. But not in this city, where there's never a gap. Apart from the cars, trucks, bikes, and buses, there are millions of motorcycles and scooters, which are the most popular form of transportation in Vietnam. Crossing the street is an adventure, and many tourists find it impossible. So what can you do?



Keep walking. The receptionist at my hotel told me, "When it feels right, walk into the street. The most important thing to remember is to keep walking. Don't stop. Don't run. Don't look left or right. And don't walk in front of a bus, because they can't stop easily." [1]___

Cross with a local person. They know what they're doing, and this is the safest way for beginners. I looked for a middle-aged local man, and I crossed the street with him. I made sure that he was between me and the traffic, and I prayed as I walked next to him. And I got to the other side! [2]___

Cross in a group. I met some American students who were happy to walk across the street with me. But this time, when I saw a car coming straight at me, I stopped and put up my arm (like a traffic police officer). This was a big mistake. [3]___

Find a police officer. There are really nice police officers in green uniforms, and their job is to help frightened tourists cross the street. [4]___

Take a taxi. For one or two dollars, they take you anywhere you want to go. [5]___

Adapted from JourneyWoman.com

5 WRITING

Write an ad for your town or city using superlative adjectives. Add photos if you can, or you could film the ad on your phone.

Come to Eagle Rock. It isn't the biggest or the most beautiful part of Los Angeles, but it has the nicest people and the the best tacos...

10B In the footsteps of Marco Polo

Where are you going to stay? *We're going to rent an apartment.*

G *be going to* (plans), future time expressions
V city vacations
P sentence stress

1 GRAMMAR *be going to* (plans)

a 10.7 Vienna Cammarota is planning to walk 13,000 miles from Venice to Beijing along the route of the Silk Road. Listen to an interview with her. Number the photos in the order she mentions them.



b Now read the interview. Fill in the blanks with a verb from the list. Then listen again and check.

be ~~do~~ follow go leave start stay take use ~~walk~~

I **Vienna, tell us about your plan. Why are you going to [1]walk from Venice to China?**

VC It's an amazing adventure! I'm going to [2]do the same journey that the famous Venetian traveler Marco Polo did. It's called the Silk Road. But you know, Marco Polo started it when he was only 17, and I'm starting it at 72!

I **When are you going to [3]_____ home?**

VC I'm going to [4]_____ the journey next week. First, I'm going to walk to Slovenia. Then from Slovenia to Croatia, and then Bulgaria.

I **How many countries are you going to [5]_____ through?**

VC Thirteen – that's not counting Italy and China. Some very exciting places, like Kazakhstan, Mongolia...

I **And how long is it going to [6]_____?**

VC A long time. Probably three years.

I **Wow! Are you nervous? Do you think the journey is going to [7]_____ dangerous?**

VC I'm a little nervous, but I'm ready for the challenge. And I have an app on my phone so that my doctor can check my health.

I **Are you going to take a lot of photos?**

VC Yes, I am. I also want to make videos of my journey, so I'm going to [8]_____ a GoPro camera.

I **What's going to be the most difficult thing about the journey?**

VC Probably the weather! It's going to be very cold in Mongolia.

I **Where are you going to [9]_____?**

VC I'm not going to stay in hotels. I want to stay with local people I meet along the way, so I can listen to their different stories.

I **Well, good luck, Vienna – I'm going to [10]_____ your journey on social media to see how it's going.**

VC Thank you very much.

c Look at some extracts from the interview. Answer questions 1 and 2.

When are you going to leave home?

I'm going to start the journey next week.

I'm not going to stay in hotels.

1 What form is the verb after *be going to*?

2 Do we use *be going to* to talk about the past, the present, or the future?

d G **Grammar Bank** 10B *p.150*

e 10.9 Do you think Vienna succeeded? Listen and find out.

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

2 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
sentence stress

a 10.10 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

1 A **What** are you going to **do** this **summer**?
B I'm going to **go** to **Thailand.**

2 A Are you going to **go out** on **Friday night**?
B **Yes**, I'm going to **see** a **movie.**

b C **Communication** What are you going to do? **A** *p.108* **B** *p.113* Interview a partner about his / her plans.

3 LISTENING

a Imagine you are planning a vacation. What do you think about first? Number the following 1–4.

- Where am I going to go?
- What am I going to do?
- Who am I going to go with?
- What previous vacations did I really enjoy?

b 10.11 Read about Justin Francis, and then listen to his advice. Does he agree with your order in **a**?

RESPONSIBLE TRAVEL DESTINATIONS VACATION TYPES LAST MINUTE OFFERS CONTACT US



Justin Francis, the founder of a successful travel company, has a simple idea. When tourism works for local people, it works for visitors, too. "We travel in places they call home," he says. "All our trips support communities and preserve nature, which helps you get closer to both. So when you travel with us, everyone wins." Justin's advice to travelers is to decide what you want from a vacation before you go.

c Listen again and make notes to answer the questions.

1 What examples does Justin give if you want to...?
- relax
- go somewhere different
- have an adventure
- learn a new skill

2 If you are going to enjoy a vacation with other people, what is the most important thing to consider?

3 What does he recommend if you want to meet new people on vacation?

4 What three examples does he give of things that can make you happy on vacation?

5 What are you ready to start thinking about after following steps 1–3?

d Answer the questions.

- What do you think of Justin's ideas? What do you usually want to do on vacation?
- Can you remember a vacation that made you very happy? Why was it special?

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
city vacations

a Complete the vacation phrases with a verb from the list.

book buy eat go have
meet rent stay visit

1 _____ a flight / a train / accommodations
2 _____ by train / bus / plane
3 _____ a car / an apartment
4 _____ in a hotel / hostel
5 _____ in local restaurants
6 _____ a museum / an art gallery
7 _____ souvenirs
8 _____ new people
9 _____ a good time

b Talk to a partner. What do you like doing on vacation? Try to find some things you have in common.

c With your partner, plan a dream trip. You are going to visit three cities. Your vacation can be a maximum of ten days. Answer the questions.

What cities are you going to visit?
How long are you going to stay in each city?
How are you going to get there?
Where are you going to stay?
What are you going to do in each place?

Making suggestions
Let's (go to)...
Why don't we (go to)...?
That's a good idea.

d Change partners. Tell each other about your vacation plans.

We're going to go to South America – to Buenos Aires, Rio, and Montevideo. We're going to stay in hostels because we don't have much money...

e Would you prefer to travel with your new partner instead?

5 WRITING a formal email

W **Writing Bank** 10 *p.124* Make a reservation at a bed-and-breakfast.

10C The cards don't lie.

G *be going to* (predictions)
V playing cards
P the letters *ear*

Am I going to fall in love? *Yes, and you're going to be very happy.*

1 VOCABULARY playing cards

a Do you like playing card games? What games do you play?

b Match pictures A–I to a word or phrase from the list.



1 ___ a deck of cards
2 ___ to shuffle
3 ___ the ten of spades
4 ___ the seven of diamonds
5 ___ the jack of hearts
6 ___ the king of clubs
7 ___ the queen of hearts
8 ___ a joker
9 ___ the ace of spades

c 10.12 Listen and check.

2 READING & LISTENING

a Do you believe in fortune-telling? Do you know anyone who does? Why do you think people do it?

b 10.13 Read and listen to Part 1 of the story. Answer the questions.

1 Why is the inspector suspicious of Mrs. Myers?
2 How does Mrs. McCleary prepare for her visit to Mrs. Myers? Why do you think she does this?
3 What is Mrs. Myers going to do for Mrs. McCleary?

c 10.14 Listen to Part 2. Number the cards in order 1–5.





The Fortune-Teller

Adapted from a Czech short story by Karel Čapek first published in 1929

PART 1

One night in London, a young police inspector called McCleary had a conversation with his wife.

"My dear," said McCleary. "I can't stop thinking about our neighbor, Mrs. Myers. I'd love to know how she makes her money. She lives so luxuriously – she even buys asparagus in the winter!"

"Leave it to me," said Mrs. McCleary. "I have an idea." The next day, she dressed like a younger woman, took off her wedding ring, and went to visit Mrs. Myers.

"Sit down, my child," said Mrs. Myers. "What can I do for you?"

"I'm going to be 20 tomorrow. I want to know what's going to happen to me in the future."

Mrs. Myers picked up a deck of cards and began to shuffle them. "You are Miss...?"

"Jones," said Mrs. McCleary, very quietly.

"My dear Miss Jones," said Mrs. Myers. "Please take five cards and put them on the table face down."

d Listen again. What do the cards mean? Fill in the blanks with a word or phrase. How much does the reading cost? What happens after she returns home?

Card 1 She's going to be _____.
Card 2 She's going to _____ a _____ _____.
Card 3 She's going to _____.
Card 4 Somebody is going to try to _____ _____.
Card 5 She's going to _____ _____ _____ with the _____ _____.

e 10.15 Read and listen to Part 3. Why did Mrs. Myers...?

1 read the cards for people
2 say it wasn't a problem if she didn't read the cards properly
3 predict that Mrs. McCleary was going to marry a rich man
4 predict problems with an old man, and that she was going to travel
5 get a fine

PART 3

Some months later, Mrs. Myers appeared in court.

"So, Mrs. Myers," said the judge, "what's all this with the cards?"

"I need to earn money," said the old lady. "At my age, I'm not going to be a dancer!"

"Somebody complained that you are not reading the cards properly," said the judge. "If they're going to pay you a pound, people expect a proper reading."

"But most people don't complain," the old lady replied. "I tell them things they want to hear. And sometimes I even get it right..."

"But," said the judge, "here we have a witness. Please tell us about it, Mrs. McCleary."

"Mrs. Myers read the cards for me," said Mrs. McCleary. "She told me that in a year I'd be married, that my husband would be a rich young man, and that we'd move abroad."

"But Mrs. McCleary is already married," said the judge. "She married Inspector McCleary three years ago. So how do you explain this nonsense, Mrs. Myers?"

"Well, she said she was single," said the old lady, calmly. "So I predicted a wedding for her and a rich husband."

"And what about the old man and the journey abroad?" asked Mrs. McCleary.

"For something more to say," replied Mrs. Myers. "For a pound, you need to say more than just two things."

"You are a fraud, Mrs. Myers," said the judge. "You must pay a fine of fifty pounds. I hope you learn your lesson."

Glossary
fraud a person who pretends to be something they are not in in order to cheat other people

f 10.16 What do you think is going to happen at the end? Listen to Part 4 and check.

3 PRONUNCIATION the letters *ear*

a Look at some words from the story. How is *ear* pronounced? Put them in the correct column.

appear dear earn hear hearts learn year



ear



car



bird

b 10.17 Listen and check. Practice saying the words. How do you pronounce *early*, *heard*, and *near*?

4 GRAMMAR *be going to* (predictions)

a Look at the two sentences. Which one is a *plan*? Which one is a *prediction*?

1 The card means she's going to be rich.
2 My sister's going to go on vacation in May.

b G **Grammar Bank** 10C *p.150*

c Write four predictions, about the weather, sports, your town / country, and you.

d Compare your predictions with a partner. Do you agree?

5 SPEAKING

C **Communication** Fortune telling *p.114*
Role-play fortune-telling.

6 LISTENING



a Read questions 1–8. Do you know or can you guess the answers to any of them? Compare with a partner.

1 What continent did the first playing cards come from?
2 Were there ever any different suits from the four we have today?
3 How many cards are there in a standard deck?
4 Do the kings usually have a mustache?
5 What do the queens always have in their hand?
6 What are jokers usually used for?
7 Why did cards quickly become very popular?
8 What else are cards used for apart from games?

b Video Watch *The fascinating history of playing cards* and check. Then watch again and correct any of your answers that were not right.

c What new fact from the video did you find the most surprising?

9&10 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 There's ___ cheese in the refrigerator.
a some b any c a

2 We don't need ___ pasta.
a no b any c a

3 How ___ fruit do you eat a day?
a much b many c a lot

4 I drink ___ milk.
a much b a lot c a lot of

5 **A** How much salt do you eat? **B** ___.
a A little b A few c Much

6 **A** Is there any sugar? **B** No, sorry, ___.
a there isn't none b there isn't any
c there isn't some

7 Tea is ___ coffee in this café.
a cheaper that b more cheap than
c cheaper than

8 This exercise is ___ than the last one.
a more easy b easier c easyer

9 Your sandwich is ___ than mine.
a gooder b better c more good

10 This is ___ hospital in the area.
a the biggest b the most big
c the bigger

11 It's ___ restaurant in the city.
a the baddest b the worst
c the worse

12 What's ___ building in your town?
a the most beautiful b most beautiful
c the more beautiful

13 ___ to get a new job soon.
a I go b I going c I'm going

14 ___ to get married?
a Do they going b They are going
c Are they going

15 I think ___ tomorrow.
a it snows b it's snowing
c it's going to snow

VOCABULARY

a Circle the word that is different.

1 breakfast snack dinner lunch

2 mushrooms onions peas strawberries

3 milk water orange juice sugar

4 fries potato chips potatoes tomatoes

5 cake chicken fruit salad ice cream

b Match the food to the containers.

chocolates fruit juice honey rice tomatoes

1 a box of _____
2 a can of _____
3 a jar of _____
4 a package of _____
5 a carton of _____

c Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 It's *a hundred twenties / a hundred and twenty* miles from here.
2 The population is about three *million / millions*.
3 That new *department shop / department store* is great.
4 Let's have a coffee at one of those cafés in the *square / bridge*.
5 Where is the train *center / station*?

d Complete the phrases with these verbs.

book buy rent stay visit

1 _____ in a hotel
2 _____ a car
3 _____ souvenirs
4 _____ a museum
5 _____ accommodation

e Match the words and pictures.

ace jack joker seven of clubs seven of spades



1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____ 5 _____

PRONUNCIATION

a Practice the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds



egg owl boy tourist

Consonant sounds



key girl right monkey television

b Sound Bank *p.174–5* Say more words for each sound.

c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?

1 br**ea**d _____
2 de**ck** _____
3 **oi**l _____
4 t**ow**n _____
5 **wr**ote _____

d Underline the stressed syllable.

1 cho|colate
2 de|ssert
3 su|per|mar|ket
4 in|te|re|sting
5 dan|ge|rous

Can you understand this text?

a Read the article once. Match the hotels A–C to the photos 1–3. Which one would you like to stay in?

b Read the article again. Match the hotels (A–C) to the sentences.

At which hotel can you...?

1 ▬ see the ocean all around you
2 ▬ be completely alone with your partner
3 ▬ get married
4 ▬ spend time with working animals
5 ▬ stay in your room for the first meal of the day
6 ▬ relax and look after your body
7 ▬ only see more of a place on a guided tour
8 ▬ have a business meeting

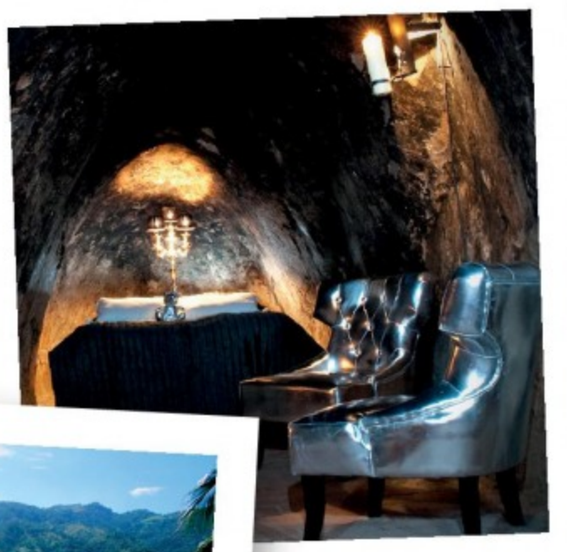
TRAVEL

The world's most unusual hotels

A For people who love nature, **Verana** in Puerto Vallarta in Mexico is an amazing spa hotel with beautiful views on all sides. It has ten guesthouses, and four new buildings with balconies above the trees from where you can see the beautiful Bay of Banderas. The spa has an infinity pool and offers a variety of different spa treatments, as well as yoga classes. You can go whale-watching, go fishing, and explore the area on foot. This is the perfect place for your wedding, your honeymoon, or both. But remember, you can only get there by boat!

B Would you like to sleep in a mine? Then book the underground suite in **Sala Silvermine** in Sweden and enjoy one of the world's deepest bedrooms, 508 feet below the surface. Although the corridors are cold and dark, your rooms are warm (64°F), and the light comes from candles in beautiful silver candlesticks. You can also explore the caves and magical lakes with a guide. There are no other guests, so it's not for nervous people. Cell phones don't work, but you have a radio for emergencies. In the morning, they bring breakfast down to you. Perfect for romantic couples who like a bit of adventure.

C You don't need to travel to the Arctic Circle to spend time with Siberian huskies. At the **Husky Lodge** in the mountains of Switzerland, dog-lovers can sleep in cabins heated with wood fires next to the dogs' kennels. During the day, you can join in with their training runs. They pull sleds in the winter and bikes and carts in the summer. In the evening, there's an excellent restaurant. And if you have to work, there are three rooms for small conferences and seminars. If you can't afford the cabins, there's a campsite too – though maybe only in the summer!



3 ▬



1 ▬



2 ▬

Can you understand these people?

Video Watch and complete the sentences with a word, a number, or a time.



Graziella Kara James Kevin Mica

1 Graziella thinks her diet is healthy because she eats a lot of fruit and _____.
2 Kara is good at cooking food from her _____'s country.
3 James thinks Paris at _____ is beautiful.
4 Kevin is going to stay in Thailand for _____ nights.
5 Mica thinks that the _____ in New York is very different from the UK.

Can you say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the things you can do.

Can you...?

1 ▬ say what you usually have for breakfast
2 ▬ compare your country with the US in three ways
3 ▬ say what the best and worst things are about the town or city where you live
4 ▬ ask somebody what they are going to do...
• *tonight* • *tomorrow* • *next weekend*

11A Culture shock

G adverbs (manner and modifiers)
V common adverbs
P connected speech

How do they drive? *They drive fast, but very well.*

1 READING

a Think of a time when you went to another country or another city / region in your country for the first time. Was there anything that surprised you?

b Read some posts on a forum by people who moved to another country. Which topic don't they mention?

drink exercise food health
machines money traffic rules weather

c Read the posts again. Match sentences 1–8 to the people **J** (Jennifer), **M** (Miguel), **N** (Natasha), or **B** (Brendan).

1 The weather is really cold in the winter.
2 The president isn't paid very well.
3 Tourists need to cross the streets carefully.
4 Some stores sell really interesting packages of milk.
5 Some hospitals are incredibly luxurious.
6 You can eat well in a train station.
7 Doctors talk very openly to their patients.
8 You can buy extremely delicious food from a machine.

d Look again at sentences 1–8. Are they true in your country? If not, say why.

2 GRAMMAR adverbs

a Look at the highlighted phrases with adverbs in **1c**. Choose a or b to complete the rules.

1 Regular adverbs

An adverb is a an adjective + *-ly*.
b an adjective + *-lly*.

2 Use of adverbs

Adverbs describe a nouns.
b verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

3 Position of adverbs

Adverbs go a **before** a verb or verb phrase.
b **after** a verb or verb phrase.

Adverbs go a **before** another adverb or adjective.
b **after** another adverb or adjective.

b G **Grammar Bank** 11A *p.152*

c Video Watch the video. Make sentences about what's happening. Use an adverb.

1 *They're speaking quietly.*

NEWS COMMENT POLITICS **TRAVEL** SPORT INFO

THINGS I DIDN'T KNOW UNTIL I GOT THERE

What was a surprise for you when you first arrived?



Jennifer from the US

Some Canadian grocery stores sell milk in bags, not in cartons! That surprised me a lot. Bags aren't as safe or as strong as cartons.

I'm from New York, so I grew up with freezing weather. But it gets a lot colder in Canada. In the winter, the temperature goes down to -20 degrees! Brrr! That's too cold for me.

Miguel from Mexico

People in Ireland drive on the left side of the road, not on the right, like in Mexico. So, at the beginning, I was a little nervous before I crossed a street, because the cars came from the "wrong" side! Later, I learned to be careful and look both ways every time I crossed a road...

Natasha from Belarus

The American president's salary is about the same as a doctor's. That surprised me!

Some hospitals are like fancy hotels – but a lot of people can't go there because they don't have medical insurance. Also, here doctors explain everything to you. In my country, they don't.

Brendan from the US

In Japan, you can buy all kinds of food from vending machines. They're everywhere – in subway and bus stations, in airports, and even on the street! And the food is really tasty! My favorite vending machine food was ramen. Now I am home again, and I really miss it.

3 LISTENING & PRONUNCIATION
connected speech



a Video You are going to watch *Life in Costa Rica*, about things that surprised Jack Horton when he arrived there. First, watch some extracts. Do you think he's going to be positive or negative about life there? Why?

b Video Now watch the whole video. Were you correct in **a**? Then complete the sentences and watch again to check.

The people (the *ticos*)

1 They are much _____ than people in Jack's home country.

2 They have a different sense of time, so it's not a _____ to be late for appointments.

The weather

3 The temperature is about _____ _____ all year round.

4 In September and October, it _____ _____ for two hours a day.

The country

5 The scenery is even _____ _____ than Jack expected.

6 He was _____ _____ the first time a volcano erupted.

The food

7 The only things you can buy cheaply are _____, _____, and _____.

8 Jack really likes the _____.

San José

9 He doesn't feel that it's _____.

10 Some of the roads are _____.

c 11.3 Now listen to seven three- and four-word phrases from the video where the words are linked together. Write the phrases.

1 *how incredibly friendly*

d Would you like to go to Costa Rica for a vacation? Would you like to live there?

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
common adverbs

Answer the questions in small groups. If the answer is yes, give more details. If the answer is no, say how people do these things. How about you?



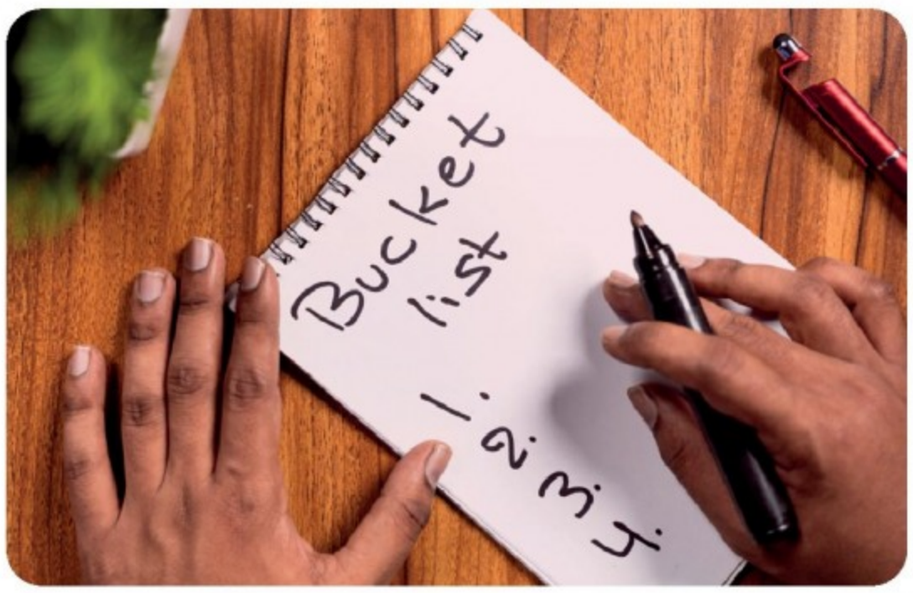
In some US cities, I think that some people drive dangerously. They drive very fast and they don't obey traffic rules. But I never drive dangerously. I drive very slowly and carefully.

11B It's on my list.

G verb + infinitive
V more verb phrases
P weak *to*, sentence stress

Would you like to go on a cruise? *No, but I want to go on a safari one day.*

1 LISTENING & VOCABULARY
more verb phrases



a Video Watch *Bucket lists*. Answer the questions.

1 What is a bucket list?
2 What four categories does the video mention?

b **Complete the phrases with a verb from the list. Watch again and check.**

be do get go hike learn read ride see travel

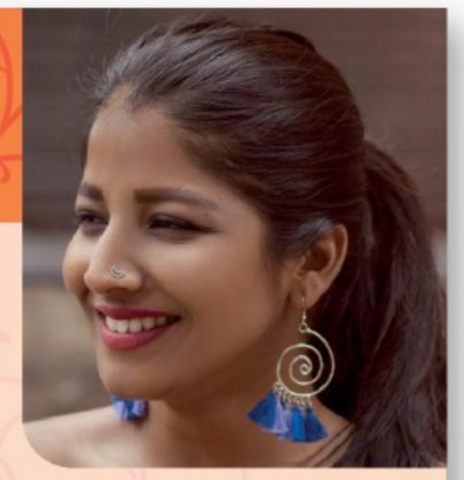
1 _____ on a cruise / on a safari / on a blind date
2 _____ to scuba dive / to play an instrument / to play chess / to cook
3 _____ the Northern Lights / the sun rise / a tennis match at Wimbledon
4 _____ an extra in a movie / on TV
5 _____ a tattoo
6 _____ a bungee jump
7 _____ through a rain forest
8 _____ a horse on the beach
9 _____ a classic novel
10 _____ to all seven continents

c **Close your books and try to remember at least ten activities in the video. Which three things would be on your bucket list?**

2 READING

a Read part of a bucket list called *30 before 30*, by vlogger Aartie Dharampuriya. Which one did she do the most recently?

30 before 30



Why "30 before 30"? Well, there are 30 things on my bucket list, and I want to do them before I'm 30 years old. Some I managed to do last year, some I'm trying to do right now, and the others I hope to do before my 30th birthday. Here are some of my favorite things from the list!

Write a blog
Well, as some of you know, I finally started one last year.

Color my hair a crazy color
I did this last year, blue! [1]___

Stay in an ashram
My dad often goes, so that's why I wanted to do this. Last September I finally stayed in one for three days and it was an amazing experience. [2]___

Work for myself
I'm trying! I do a lot of things on social media. [3]___

Take health and fitness seriously
This year I decided to stop eating sugar for one month, and I know it was good for me. [4]___

Try not to get angry so often
This is still a work in progress. [5]___

Babysit someone's children for a day
I did it a few weeks ago. It was exhausting. [6]___

Learn to dance
Oh dear! I love music and dancing, but I'm a terrible dancer. [7]___

Get over my lizard phobia
When I see a lizard, I just freeze. I can't move. [8]___

Start financial planning
It's something that I know I need to start doing. [9]___

Go back to my elementary school.
This is something I really want to do. Go back to the school, visit the teachers – [10]___

Go trekking
I never understood why people wanted to climb mountains, and I wanted to find out. Then two days ago I did it! [11]___

Adapted from Aartie's vlog

a lizard

b Read Aartie's bucket list again and complete blanks 1–11 with sentences A–K.

A But I think I'm 50% better than I was!
B But it wasn't easy for someone like me to be quiet for three days!
C But it's not a real job...yet!
D I can only move a bit, like people do in clubs.
E I loved it and want to do it again this year, maybe pink?
F But I need to exercise more, too. It's not just about what you eat.
G I slept so well that night.
H I want to see if it's all the same!
I I'm not any better yet. I hate them.
J Now I understand! The views were unbelievable!
K It's boring, but serious.

c Choose three things from Aartie's list that you would like to do. Compare with a partner. Did you choose the same things?

3 GRAMMAR
verb + infinitive

a Match the phrases from the bucket list. Which word is missing?

1 I decided ___
2 I need ___
3 I want ___
4 Try not ___

A do them before I'm 30.
B exercise more, too.
C get angry so often.
D stop eating sugar for one month.

b Grammar Bank 11B *p.152*



Glossary
ashram a place where people go for a short time to say prayers

4 PRONUNCIATION
weak *to*, sentence stress

a 11.5 Listen and write six sentences. Then listen and repeat them. How do you pronounce *to*?

b 11.6 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm. Practice it with a partner.

A Would you **like** to **go** to **Australia**?
B **No**, I **wouldn't**.
A **Why not**?
B **Because** I **don't like snakes** or **insects**.

c Work with a partner. Choose five things from the verb phrases in **1b**. Ask questions using *Would you like to...?*

Would you like to go on a safari?

Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't.

5 SPEAKING

a Work in pairs. Take turns.

A Tell your partner about the things below.
B Respond to what **A** says. Ask questions.
A Answer, and then ask *What about you?*

- a country you **want to go** to
- something you **would like to learn** to do
- something you **need to do** tomorrow
- a vacation you **are planning to have** soon
- a famous person you **hope to meet** one day
- a movie you **want to see** soon
- a dangerous sport you **would like to try**
- something you **need to buy** soon
- a singer or group you **hope to see** one day
- a change you are **planning to make** to your lifestyle

I really want to go to New Zealand.

Really? Why New Zealand?

Because I have a cousin there. What about you?

I want to go to Colombia...

b Write your own bucket list of five things you would like to do this year. Then compare with a partner. Is there anything on his / her list that you would like to add to yours?

6 WRITING a forum post

Writing Bank 11 *p.125* Write a forum post about your plans.

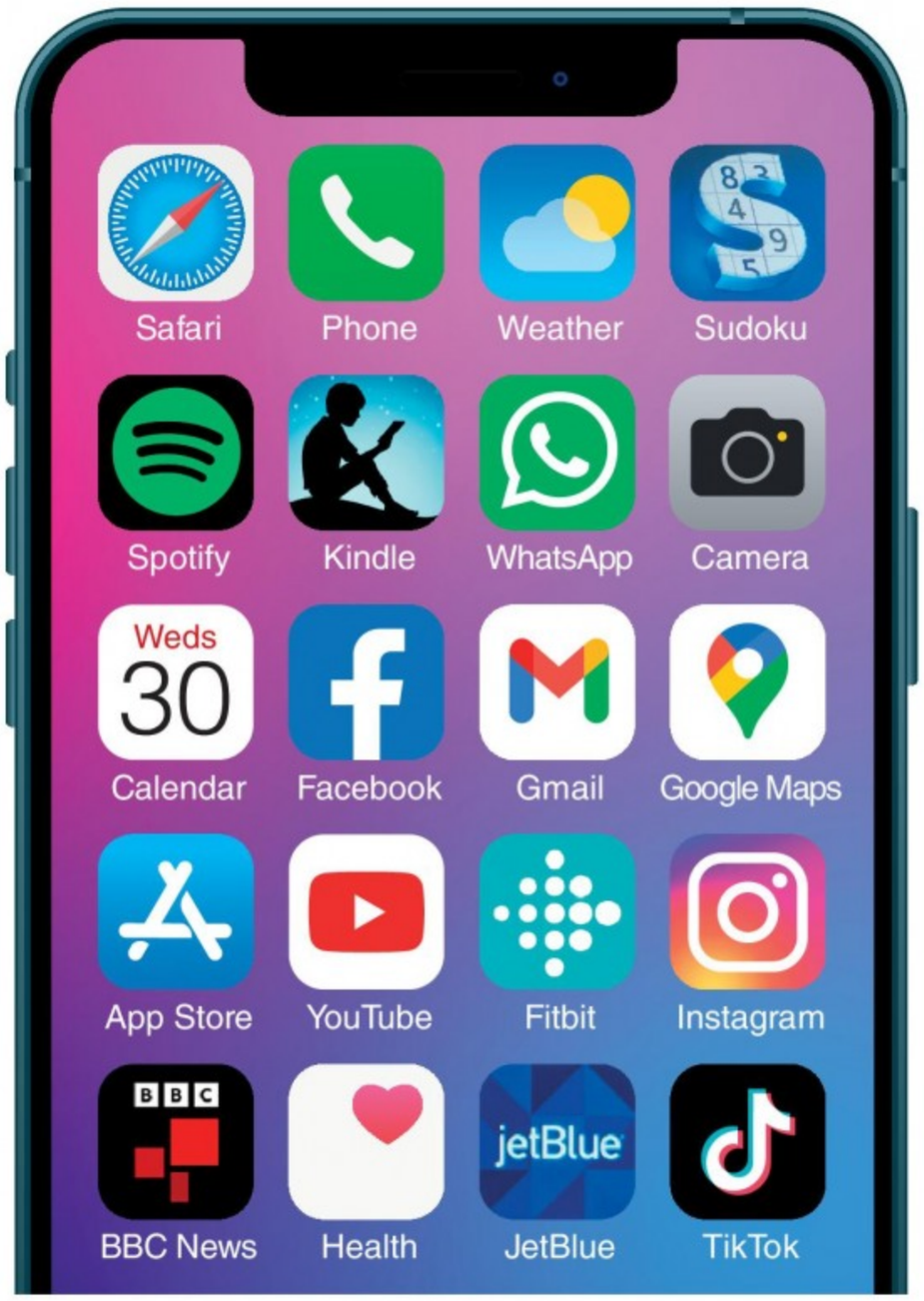
11C Download the app.

G definite article: *the* or no *the*
V phones and apps
P *the*

What do you use your phone for the most? *I take photos and I play games.*

1 VOCABULARY phones and apps

a Look at the phone screen. How many of the apps do you have on your phone?



b Which app(s) can you use to do the following?

share a photo or a video
make a video call
stream a video
text a friend

c Match phone activities 1–11 to apps in **a**.

1 download a new app
2 send an email
3 take a photo or make a video
4 get directions
5 read a book
6 count your steps
7 listen to a playlist
8 book a flight
9 get information about your health
10 read the news headlines
11 play a game

2 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 11.7 Listen to questions 1–7 about using phones. Fill in the blanks.

1 What _____ of phone do you have?
2 How _____ is it?
3 How _____ do you change phones?
4 What do you _____ your phone for the most?
5 How often do you _____ actual phone calls?
6 What _____ do you use a lot?
7 Do you have any _____ apps on your phone?

b 11.8 Now listen to Jackson, 17, Sophie, 40, and Rose, 65. Which speaker (**J**, **S**, or **R**)...?

1 ☐ doesn't like getting a new phone
2 ☐ has a secondhand phone
3 ☐ only calls people when he / she has a lot to say
4 ☐ doesn't have any unusual apps
5 ☐ doesn't have an iPhone
6 ☐ uses an app when he / she needs a taxi
7 ☐ uses some apps to find information about nature
8 ☐ sometimes watches planes on his / her phone

c Look at three frequency phrases from the interviews. Do you remember which question they were answers to? What do you think they mean?

almost never once in a blue moon very rarely

d In pairs, interview your partner with questions 1–7 in **a**. If you can, film the interview on your phone.

3 READING

a Look at photos A–F of things people don't really use any more. Do you recognize any of them? What do you think each thing was for?

b Read the article and complete the headings with the things on the list. Did you guess correctly in **a**?

carbon paper encyclopedias fax machines
a Thomas Guide Walkmans the Yellow Pages

c Talk to a partner. Do you do any of these things? Why (not)?

watch a DVD use a landline go to a travel agent
write by hand read a paperback book use an ATM

I never watch DVDs. I stream everything on my TV.

Life before the internet

What was life like before the internet? How did people listen to music, or find out the latest news? Here are some things that were once part of people's everyday lives.

1 _____ This morning in the office somebody mentioned it. "What's that?" our intern Francesca asked. She genuinely had no idea. For all of you who are too young to remember, it was a way to make one or two copies of a document as it was typed. That's where the term "cc" or "carbon copy" came from. After that conversation, we started to remember life before the internet.

2 _____ Sending an email is so easy these days, but some years ago, when you needed to send something to somebody urgently and the mail was too slow, you sent one of these. When they were introduced in the 1970s, people thought they were a technological miracle. "You can print something and send it over the phone in seconds! Magic!"

3 _____ If you needed to make an appointment for a haircut or order some Chinese food, what did you do? You looked up the phone number or address in a big, fat yellow book. Amazingly, it still exists online.

4 _____ When you needed information for your homework, or to win an argument, you looked it up in an enormous set of books – sometimes ten or twelve books of information in alphabetical order. Some people had them at home, or they went to a library.

5 _____ This is how you listened to music when you were out of the house. It was a lot heavier than your phone! And if you didn't have the cassette or CD of a song, you couldn't listen to it.

6 _____ If you had a meeting or job interview, or you wanted to go to a new restaurant in a part of town you didn't know, what did you always take with you? Your book of maps. And your reading glasses to read the street names, because they were so small!

Adapted from Marie Claire



4 GRAMMAR definite article

a Look at the three opinions. Do you agree? Say why (not).

- Teenagers today can't live without the internet.
- Children don't need to have phones with them when they're at school.
- The most practical way to pay for things is with an app.

b Look at the sentences in **a** again. Complete the rules with "Use *the*" or "Don't use *the*."

1 _____ before superlatives.
2 _____ when you talk about people or things in general.
3 _____ before some general places, e.g., *work*, *college*, and before meals.
4 _____ when there is only one of something (*sun*, *world*, etc.).

c G **Grammar Bank** 11C *p.152*

5 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING *the*

a 11.10 Listen to six phrases. How is *the* pronounced in group 1 and group 2? Why?

1	2
the alphabet	the president
the end	the sun
the internet	the world

b Practice saying the phrases.

c Work in pairs. **A**, choose a topic in the *Articles Challenge*, think of three things, places, etc., and tell **B**. **B**, respond and ask for more information. Then change roles. Be careful to use *the* correctly.

Articles Challenge

3 things teenagers often do but adults don't

3 ways that the internet makes your life easier

3 animals that make good pets and **3** that don't

3 things you did last night

3 kinds of food you love and **3** you hate

3 good ways you can travel around your town / city

3 places that you think are the most beautiful in your country

3 things you do before you go to work / school

I think teenagers are often on social media, but adults aren't.

It depends. Some adults use social media a lot.

EPISODE 6 PICTURES OF YOU

Good news, bad news

Practical English | using public transportation | V public transportation

1 EVERYTHING CHANGES



a Look at the photos of Izzy and Ben. Answer the questions.

1 Where do you think Izzy is going?

2 Do you think Ben's phone call is good or bad news? Why?

b Video Watch *Everything changes*. Check your answers.

c Watch again. Number the events (1–8) in the order you see them.

- ☐ Ben packs his bag.
- ☐ Izzy gets a text message from Ben's aunt Jenny.
- ☐ Ben gets a call from his aunt Jenny.
- ☐ Izzy leaves the house.
- ☐ Ben calls Izzy, but she's in her interview.
- ☐ Ben sees his phone has no battery.
- ☐ Izzy finishes her interview and listens to Ben's message.
- ☐ Ben leaves the house.

d What do you think Izzy is going to do next?

American English	British English
to/in the hospital	to/in hospital
round-trip ticket	return ticket
one-way ticket	single ticket
5:30 p.m.	17:30

2 USING PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION

a V Look at the words for vehicles. Which ones refer to "public transportation"?

bike bus / coach car motorcycle taxi
train underground / subway van

b Video Watch *Using public transportation*. Complete the sentences with *airport*, *station*, *taxi*, or *train*.

1 Izzy is going to take a _____ to Victoria _____.

2 Ben is going to travel by _____ from Victoria to Gatwick _____.

c Watch again. Complete the **You hear** phrases.

You hear	You say
Booking a taxi	
Good afternoon. Thank you for calling Express Taxis. To [1] _____ a taxi, press one. For customer service, press two.	
Hello. Express Taxis. How can I [2] _____?	Hello. Can I book a taxi from 109 The Strand, please?
Of course. [3] _____ to?	Victoria Station.
Train station or coach [4] _____?	Train station.
And [5] _____ would you like it for?	As soon as possible.
OK. About ten minutes?	Thanks. How much is it?
[6] _____ £14.	Can I pay by card?
Yes, of course.	Perfect. Thank you.
Buying a train ticket	
Can I help?	Yes. Can I have a ticket to Gatwick Airport? As soon as possible, please.
No problem. The next train is at [7] _____.	OK. That's fine.
Single or [8] _____?	Single.
That's £18.50. Cash or [9] _____?	Card, please.
Do you need a receipt?	No, thank you. Which platform is it?
Platform [10] _____.	Thanks.

d Video Watch and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the rhythm. Then practice the conversations with a partner.

e **ROLE-PLAY** Work in pairs. Have a conversation. Then change roles.

1 **A** You are the taxi company receptionist. The taxi costs $15.00.

Begin: *Hello, Express Taxis. How can I help?*

B You want to get a taxi from The Strand Hotel to Penn Station.

Begin: *Hi. Can I book a taxi from...*

2 **B** You are the ticket agent. The train ticket costs $22.40. The next train leaves at 6:30 from platform 8.

Begin: *Can I help you?*

A You want to get a train to JFK Airport as soon as possible.

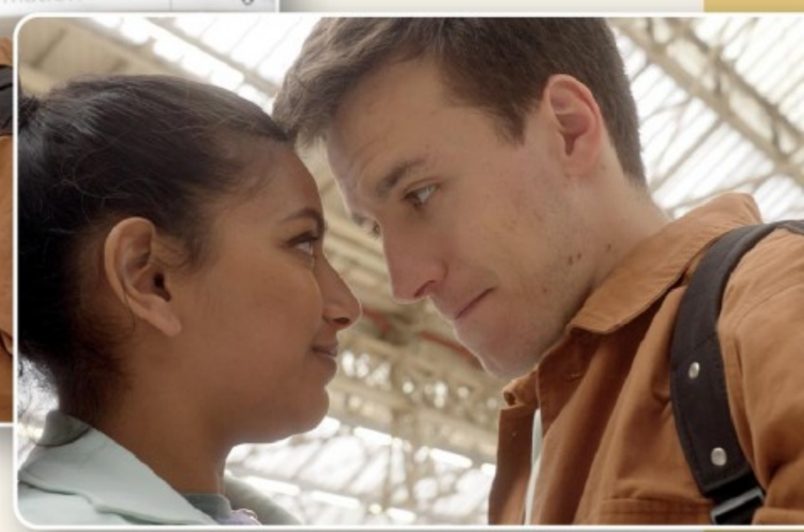
Begin: *Can I have a ticket to...*



3 SAYING GOODBYE

a Video Look at the photos of Izzy and Ben. Do you think the story has a happy ending? Watch *Saying goodbye* and check your answer.





b Watch again. Who says...? Write **B** (Ben) or **I** (Izzy).

1 **She**'s in hospital, but **she**'s OK. ___
2 **It** went very well. ___
3 **I** was amazing. ___
4 That's **me**. ___
5 See **you** when **you** get back. ___
6 **I'**m going to miss **you**. ___

c Look at the sentences in **b** again. Who or what do the **bold** pronouns refer to?

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

a Match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**.

A	B
1 Good luck!	___ I don't know. In a week or two. It depends.
2 Are you nervous?	___ I hope so.
3 Your sister's OK. She's in hospital, but she's OK.	___ Well, a little bit.
4 How did the interview go?	___ What a relief!
5 I'm sure you're going to get it.	___ It went very well.
6 When are you going to come back?	___ Thanks, (Pamela).

b Video Watch and check.

c In pairs, practice the phrases and responses. Then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In pairs, talk about *Pictures of you*. Do you think this was a good ending for Season 1? Who was your favorite character and why? What do you think is going to happen in Season 2?

12A It's a classic!

G present perfect
V irregular past participles
P sentence stress

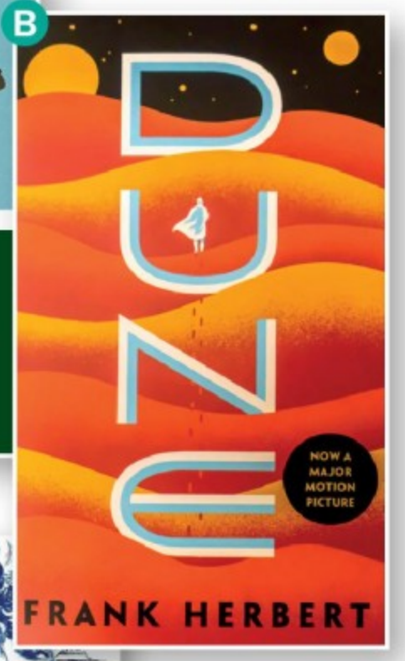
Have you seen Bridgerton? *No, but I've read the books.*

1 GRAMMAR present perfect

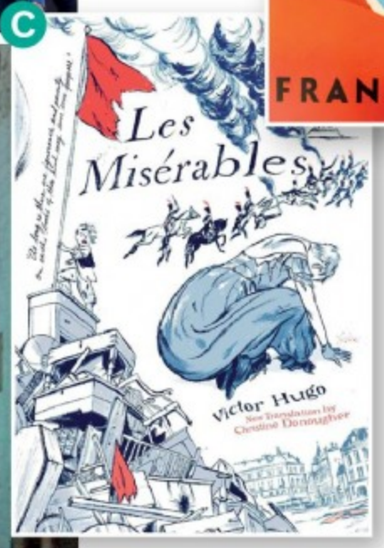












a Look at the photos from a movie, a musical, and a TV series. Can you match them to the books?

b 12.1 Listen to three conversations. Complete them with the phrases below.

I've read the book I haven't seen it
~~Have you seen it~~ No, I haven't Yes, I have

1 **Stella** *Dune* is on Netflix now. Have you seen it?
Paul The new one that won a lot of Oscars not so long ago? _____! And _____. The book's better than the movie, I think. It's a classic!
Stella Would you mind watching it again with me? I really want to see it.

2 **Matt** Have you read the Sherlock Holmes books?
Tom _____. There are so many of them! Life's too short!
Matt Have you watched *Sherlock*?
Tom Yes, I've watched the first three seasons, and I've downloaded the fourth.

3 **Lexi** Have you seen *Les Misérables*? The musical, I mean.
Mason I've seen the movie, but _____ at the theater. I'd love to go.
Lexi Let's get tickets. I've read the book and I love the music!

c Listen to and read the conversations again. Complete the chart for *read*, and answer the questions.

Present perfect: read		
+	I've read	the book.
−		the book.
?		the book?
✓	Yes, _____.	
✗	No, _____.	

1 What is the full form of *I've read*?
2 How do you think *have* and *haven't* change in the third person singular?
3 *Seen*, *read*, and *heard* are **irregular past participles**. What are the base forms?
4 *Watched* and *downloaded* are **regular past participles**. What are the base forms?
5 When Tom says *I've watched the first three seasons*, do we know when he watched them?

d Have you seen or read any of the things in **a**? Which ones?

e G **Grammar Bank** 12A *p.154*

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

f Complete 1–10 with a past participle from the list of regular verbs.

act ask book celebrate ~~open~~ play post travel watch work

1 opened a bank account
2 _____ a flight or hotel online
3 _____ in a play or movie
4 _____ a team sport
5 _____ as a waiter
6 _____ somebody to marry me
7 _____ to another continent
8 _____ a live soccer game
9 _____ New Year's Eve in another country
10 _____ something online that I later deleted

g With a partner, make true sentences. Say *I've...* or *I've never...*

2 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a 12.3 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm.

A Have you **seen** ***Little Women***?
B **No**, I **haven't**.
A Have you **read** the **book**?
B **Yes**, I **have**. I've **read** it **twice**.

b Write down three more movies, TV shows, or musicals from books. Have conversations with a partner as in **a**.

3 VOCABULARY irregular past participles

a Look at the past participles. Which verbs are they from? Write the base form and the simple past.

	Base form	Simple past	Past participle
1	buy	bought	bought
2			fallen
3			given
4			heard
5			left
6			read
7			seen
8			told

b 12.4 Listen and check. How do you say *read* (base form) and *read* (simple past and past participle)?

c 12.5 Cover **a**. Listen and say the simple past and past participle.

buy bought, bought

d Complete the **Verb** column with a past participle from **a**.

		Verb
1	Have you ever ___ a Japanese novel?	
2	Ben's ___ in love with Sally.	
3	Have you ___ Mica about the party?	
4	We've ___ the news – congratulations!	
5	She's never ___ a Marvel movie.	
6	Tim's ___ some tickets for the game.	
7	Oh no! I've ___ my bag on the train.	
8	I've ___ my old computer to my brother.	

e Cover the **Verb** column. Say the sentences.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a Complete the phrases with the past participle of the verb in parentheses.

Movies, books, and TV

Have you ever...?

1 _____ asleep during a movie (fall)
2 _____ the soundtrack of a movie (buy)
3 _____ the movie theater before the end of a movie (leave)
4 _____ a movie more than three times (see)
5 _____ during a movie (cry)
6 _____ a movie in English with subtitles (see)
7 _____ somebody to be quiet in a movie theater (tell)
8 _____ a book more than once (read)
9 _____ watching a TV show after the first or second season (stop)
10 _____ to an audiobook (listen)
11 _____ a book to a friend as a present (give)
12 _____ three or more episodes of a TV show in one evening (watch)

b 12.6 Listen to six people (A–F). Which question (1–12) in **a** does each person answer?

A ___ B ___ C ___ D ___ E ___ F ___

c Listen again. Make notes about their answers.

d Choose six of the questions in **a**. Ask a different person each question. If they answer *Yes, I have*, ask *What movie / book / TV show was it?* Write their name and answer.

e Tell the class your two most interesting answers.

12B Let's go out for dinner!

G present perfect or simple past?
V learning irregular verbs
P irregular past participles

Have you been to the new Thai restaurant? *Yes, I have. I went there last week.*



1 LISTENING

a Video **Watch *Let's go out for dinner!* Which person in the photo is Joe? Check (✓) the restaurants he's been to.**

1 ☐ Curry Up
2 ☐ The Great Wall
3 ☐ Thai Chi
4 ☐ Mexican Wave
5 ☐ The Acropolis

b Watch again and circle the correct information. What do they decide in the end?

1 Curry Up *was / wasn't* very good. Joe *says / doesn't say* when he went there.
2 Joe went to The Great Wall last *week / month*. He *does / doesn't want* to go again.
3 Thai Chi *is / isn't* a new restaurant. Joe went there on *Tuesday / Wednesday*.
4 Joe went to Mexican Wave last *week / month*. He went with *his girlfriend / work friends*.
5 The Acropolis *opened / closed* a few months ago.

c What are the most popular types of restaurant where you live? What different types of food have you tried? Which do you like best?



2 GRAMMAR
present perfect or simple past?

a Look at part of the conversation in 1. Answer the questions.

Alison	Have you been to Mexican Wave?
Joe	Mexican Wave? Yes, I have.
Alison	When did you go there?
Joe	Last month. I went for dinner with people from work.

1 What tense is Alison's first question?
2 What tense is Alison's second question?
3 Which of the two questions is about a specific time in the past?

b G **Grammar Bank** 12B *p.154*

c Write down the names of two restaurants you've been to recently, two movies you've seen recently, and two places you've visited recently.

d In pairs, ask and answer questions.

Have you been to...? *Yes, I have.*

When did you go there? Did you like it?

3 VOCABULARY
learning irregular verbs

a 12.9 Write the base forms for the irregular verbs. Then listen and check.

	base form	simple past / past participle
1	_____	had
2	_____	lost
3	_____	met
4	_____	won

b 12.10 Now look at some verbs where the past participle is different from the simple past. Write the base form and the simple past. Then listen and check.

	base form	simple past	past participle
1	_____	_____ / _____	been
2	_____	_____	done
3	_____	_____	eaten
4	_____	_____	spoken
5	_____	_____	sung

c **Irregular verbs** *p.173* Underline the verbs that have the same form for the simple past and the past participle.

4 PRONUNCIATION
irregular past participles

a Put the irregular past participles in the correct column.

bought done eaten fallen given gotten left lost met read seen spoken sung won

clock	fish	tree	up

phone	saw	egg

b 12.11 Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

5 SPEAKING

a Look at the first questions below. What words are missing in the present perfect question? What form do you need of the verb in **bold**? What words are missing in the simple past question?

Recently...	Present perfect	Simple past
	/ **see** a good movie recently?	What / see? Why / like it?
	/ **eat** out with friends recently?	Where / go? What / have?
	/ **meet** someone interesting recently?	Who / meet? How / meet the person?
	/ **get** a taxi recently?	Where / go? Why / get a taxi?
	/ **buy** anything online recently?	What / buy? Where / buy it from?

In your life...	Present perfect	Simple past
	/ ever **sing** a song in public?	What / sing? How / feel?
	/ ever **lose** your phone?	Where / lose it? / find it?
	/ ever **win** a prize or medal?	What / win it for? When / win it?
	/ ever **speak** to a famous person?	Who / speak to? What / say?
	/ ever **have** very long (or short) hair?	When / have it? / like it?

b Work in pairs. **A** ask **B** the questions. If **B** answers *Yes, I have*, ask the simple past questions. Then change roles.

Have you seen a good movie recently?

Yes, I have.

What did you see?

12C International stars

G review: question formation

What kind of music do you like? *I like classical music.*

1 READING

a Look at the photos of Sir Ian McKellen. Do you know the names of any movies he has been in? Have you seen any of them?



b Look at sentences 1–10 about Sir Ian McKellen, and headings A–F in the interview. In which section do you expect to find the information?

1 F He became an actor when he was a student. T
2 ___ He lives outside London. ___
3 ___ He gets up early every day. ___
4 ___ He's never been to India. ___
5 ___ He spends a lot of time on the internet every day. ___
6 ___ He read *The Lord of the Rings* when he was young. ___
7 ___ He's reading a book about Shakespeare. ___
8 ___ He doesn't like animals. ___
9 ___ He relaxes by playing games. ___
10 ___ He's not interested in learning new things. ___

c Now read the whole interview. Then check the facts in **b**. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Say why the **F** ones are false.

d What three things from the interview with Sir Ian McKellen did you find the most interesting?

Interviewed especially for **American English File**

Sir Ian McKellen

A Your tastes

What kind of music do you like?
I hardly ever listen to music at home – I prefer going to concerts. I enjoy classical music and pop, but my favorite kind of music is traditional American jazz.

What book are you reading right now?
I'm reading *The Hammersteins*, a biography of the American theater family written by Oscar Andrew Hammerstein.

Who's your favorite historical character?
Perhaps William Shakespeare.

B Your lifestyle

What time do you usually get up in the morning?
If I am working, I get up one hour before I have to leave the house. If I am not working, and I went to bed late the night before, I get up at about 10:00 in the morning.

How much time do you spend a day on the internet?
I can very easily spend three or four hours on the internet, answering emails, reading the news, etc. I think of the internet as a wonderful encyclopedia of information.

How do you relax?
I enjoy a late-night sudoku, but especially being with friends.

C Your home

What's your favorite room in the house?
Perhaps the living room where I cook and eat, and from where I can see the River Thames in London.

What do you always have on your desk?
I always have too many letters, papers, and books, which are waiting for me to read.

Do you have any pets?
I love dogs, but I can't have one because I'm often away from home.

D Your abilities

What languages do you speak?
I only speak English, but I can remember a little of the French I learned at school.

Can you play a musical instrument?
No.

Is there something you would like to learn to do?
Yes – many things, for example, to sing well, to play the piano, and to speak foreign languages.

E Your places

What's your favorite place in London?
I love the River Thames and the views from its many bridges.

Where are you going to go for your next vacation?
I am going to go to India for the first time in February.

What's the most beautiful city you've ever visited?
I can't choose between Edinburgh, Prague, and Venice.

F Your work experiences

What was your first job?
The first money I earned as a professional actor was when I was a student at Cambridge University in 1959. I played small parts in audio recordings of Shakespeare's plays.

When did you first read *The Lord of the Rings*?
I read it first when I was preparing to play Gandalf in the movie trilogy.

What was the best and worst thing about filming *The Lord of the Rings*?
The best thing about filming was discovering the countryside and people of New Zealand. But the worst thing was living away from home for a year or more.

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

2 GRAMMAR & SPEAKING
review: question formation

a In pairs, look at the groups of questions (1–6). Complete them with *'s*, *are*, *can*, *do*, *did*, or *have*.

1 Your lifestyle

What *do* you usually do in the morning?

How _____ you relax?

What _____ you do last weekend?

2 Your home

What _____ your favorite room in your home?

_____ you neat or messy?

_____ you do a lot of housework last week?

3 Your abilities

What languages _____ you speak?

_____ you sing or play a musical instrument?

Why _____ you learning English?

4 Your places

What _____ your favorite place to spend the weekend?

Where _____ you go for your last vacation?

Where _____ you going to go for your next vacation?

5 Your tastes

What _____ your favorite time of year?

What book _____ you reading right now?

What kind of TV shows _____ you like watching?

6 Your experiences

What movies _____ you seen recently?

What _____ the most beautiful place you've ever been to?

_____ you ever been to the US or Britain?

b 12.12 Listen and check.

c Work with a partner.

A, interview **B** with the questions in group 1. Ask more questions where appropriate and show interest in **B**'s answers.

B, answer the questions, giving as much information as you can. Then interview **A** with the questions in group 2, etc.

3 LISTENING

a Look at the movies on the list. They all star the actor Dame Judi Dench. Have you seen any of them?

Macbeth *A Room with a View* *Murder on the Orient Express*
Henry V *GoldenEye* *Mrs. Brown* *Skyfall*
Shakespeare in Love *Cats* *Spectre*

b Video Watch *Judi Dench – a life in acting*. Check (✓) the movies in **a** that are mentioned.



c How much can you remember about Judi Dench? Complete the missing information. Then watch again to check.

Her early life

1 She was born in York.
2 Her father was a _____.
3 Her mother made _____ for the Theatre Royal.
4 As a teenager, she acted in the York _____ Plays.

Her early career

5 In the 1950s and 1960s, she acted mainly in the _____.
6 In the 1970s and 1980s, she also started to work in _____ and in movies.
7 She acted with Ian McKellen in the play _____.

Global fame

8 She played _____ in eight James Bond movies.
9 She was nominated for an _____ for her role in the movie *Mrs. Brown*.
10 She won her first Oscar for her role as Queen _____ in the movie *Shakespeare in Love*.

d Are there any famous actors from your country who are the same generation as Judi Dench and Ian McKellen? Do you like them? Why (not)?



4 WRITING a biography

W **Writing Bank** 12 *p.126* Write a biography of an actor you like.

11&12 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 He ___.
a sings beautiful b sings beautifully
c beautifully sings

2 She paints ___.
a very well b very good c very goodly

3 My partner works ___.
a incredible hard b incredibly hard
c incredibly hardly

4 I'd like ___ an electric car.
a drive b to drive c driving

5 What do we need ___ next?
a to do b do c doing

6 She wants to pass her exams, but she doesn't like ___.
a study b studing c studying

7 ___ are often better with technology than adults.
a The teenagers b Teenagers c The teenager

8 It's ___ best place to eat in the city.
a the b a c –

9 Do you go to ___ bed late on weekends?
a the b a c –

10 How often do you use ___ internet?
a the b a c –

11 I've read the book, but I ___ the movie.
a haven't see b haven't saw c haven't seen

12 **A** Have you ___ anyone famous?
B Yes, I have. Lady Gaga!
a ever met b ever meet c met ever

13 ___ he been to Boston?
a Has b Did c Have

14 We ___ to Egypt last year.
a have gone b have been c went

15 She ___ in a restaurant before.
a has never work b have never worked
c has never worked

VOCABULARY

a Write the opposite adjective or adverb.

1 quickly _____
2 safe _____
3 well _____
4 noisy _____
5 hot _____
6 weakly _____

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

be book do download go
learn listen play ride send

1 _____ to scuba dive
2 _____ a new app
3 _____ an email
4 _____ a bungee jump
5 _____ a horse
6 _____ a flight
7 _____ on a cruise
8 _____ to a playlist
9 _____ a game
10 _____ an extra in a movie

c Write the past participle of these verbs.

1 be was / were _____
2 go went _____
3 sing sang _____
4 give gave _____
5 fall fell _____
6 speak spoke _____
7 eat ate _____
8 do did _____
9 see saw _____

PRONUNCIATION

a Sound Bank *p.174–5* Review vowel and consonant sounds.

b What sound do the pink letters have in these words? Match them to the sound pictures.

bought want women
spoken flight



c Underline the stressed syllable.

1 po|lite|ly
2 dan|ge|rous|ly
3 de|cide
4 in|for|ma|tion
5 down|load

Can you understand this text?

a Read the article once. Do you prefer experience presents or things to keep? Why?



So, it's your partner's birthday again. What do you give them? A nice scarf? Their closet is full of them. Some expensive chocolates? They're trying to be healthy. [1]___ The solution? Give them an "experience" present.

An experience present isn't a thing to keep, but an activity to do, such as taking a trip somewhere or learning to do something new. [2]___ The giver and the receiver can share the experience and always remember it. And the best thing is, you aren't giving your partner an object they didn't really want or need.

There are all kinds of different experience presents you can give. For example, is there a city you and your partner would like to visit together? [3]___ Are they a big fan of water sports? You could go surfing. Do they enjoy Japanese food? Then do a sushi-making class.

Creating an experience present is easy. First, decide how much money you want to spend – more about that later. Then think about the activities your partner enjoys and choose one of them. [4]___ Book accommodations and transportation, if necessary. Don't forget to tell your partner to keep the time free so that they don't make any other plans.

Experience presents don't need to be expensive. It's not difficult to find cheap accommodations. You can go camping instead of staying in a hotel. Or, if you don't want to travel, there are great experience presents that are all online, for example, yoga classes or cooking classes. [5]___ It's the fact that you planned an experience especially for them. Why not try it?

b Read the article again. Match sentences A–F to blanks 1–5. There is one sentence that you do not need to use.

A Many people prefer this kind of gift because it's more personal.
B You could spend a weekend there.
C Remember, it isn't the cost that's important to your partner.
D We've changed the way we celebrate birthdays.
E Choosing the right gift is a problem.
F Next, research where you can do it.

Can you understand these people?



Cara Madeleine Chris Susan Martin

Video **Watch and choose the correct answers, A, B, or C.**

1 Cara thinks that New York _____.
A is a really busy city
B isn't a very large place
C doesn't have many good restaurants

2 How do people drive where Madeleine lives?
A They drive carefully.
B They drive quickly.
C They drive dangerously.

3 What does Chris hope to do this year?
A She'd like to visit friends in Australia.
B She's going to travel around Europe.
C She wants to see a family member.

4 What's one of the things Susan likes best about *Casablanca*?
A It has great music.
B The story is romantic.
C It isn't very long.

5 What does Martin say about phones?
A He uses his phone mainly for social media.
B He usually buys a new phone every two years.
C His current phone is three years old.

Can you say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the things you can do.

Can you...?

1 ☐ say how people in your country drive and dress
2 ☐ say three things you would like to do in the future
3 ☐ say which of the following you prefer and why
- *classical music or pop music*
- *summer vacation or winter vacation*
- *Chinese food or Japanese food*

4 ☐ say what things you use the internet for, and how often
5 ☐ answer the questions below
- *What city have you been to recently?*
- *When did you go there? What did you do there?*
- *What's the best / worst thing about your town?*

Communication

1B Where are they from?
Student A

a Look at the chart. Take turns to ask and answer the questions about each person. Ask about person 1. Then answer **B** about person 2.

Where's Masako from? *She's from (country).*

Where in (country)?

Taking turns

A I'm A and you're B. **B** Yes. You start.



Name	Masako	Ali	Nadir
From	_____ _____	Türkiye Ankara	_____ _____

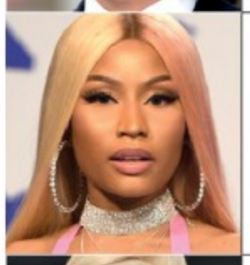


Name	Maria	Sofia	Oluwa
From	Mexico Acapulco	_____ _____	Nigeria Lagos

b Repeat for the other people.

1C What's his / her real name?
Student A

a Look at list 1. Read the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Cross out the names you think are not their real names.

1		2	
	**Andrea Bocelli**, singer _____		**Benedict Cumberbatch**, actor (real name)
	**Nicki Minaj**, singer _____		**Lana del Rey**, singer (real name Elizabeth Grant)
	**Lady Gaga**, singer _____		**Bruno Mars**, singer (real name Peter Gene Hernandez)
	**Dev Patel**, actor _____		**Taylor Swift**, singer (real name)

b Talk to **B**. Check your answers to **a**. Write the real name next to the photo.

Is _____ his / her real name?

What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?

c Now look at list 2 and answer **B**'s questions.

2A *in, on, under* Student A

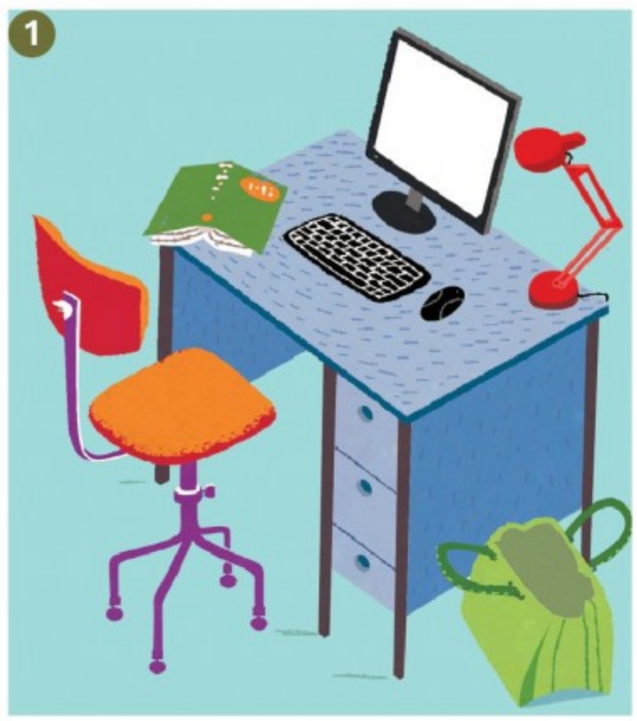
a Where are these things? Ask **B**. Draw them in the correct place in picture 1.

charger glasses keys laptop
scissors umbrella wallet

Where's the charger? *It's in the...*

b Look at picture 2. Answer **B**'s questions.

c Now compare your pictures. Are all the things in the correct place?





2B The same or different? Student A

a Describe picture 1 to **B**. Is your picture the same or different? Write **S** or **D** on the picture. Then listen to **B** describe picture 2, etc. Find eight differences.

Number 1. It's an old house.

In my picture, it's a new house. They're different.



b Compare your pictures and check.

2C What's the matter? Student A

a Have this conversation in pairs. You are **A**.

A What's the matter?
B I'm sad.
A Cheer up.
B OK.

b Have four more conversations. Ask, *What's the matter?* **B** answers. Then choose a phrase below.

Don't worry. It's OK. Take a vacation.
Open the window. Have a drink.

c Have four more conversations. **B** asks, *What's the matter?* Answer with 1 below. **B** responds. Then respond with a phrase from the box below.

1 *I'm bored.*
2 *I'm cold.*
3 *I'm tired.*
4 *I'm hungry.*

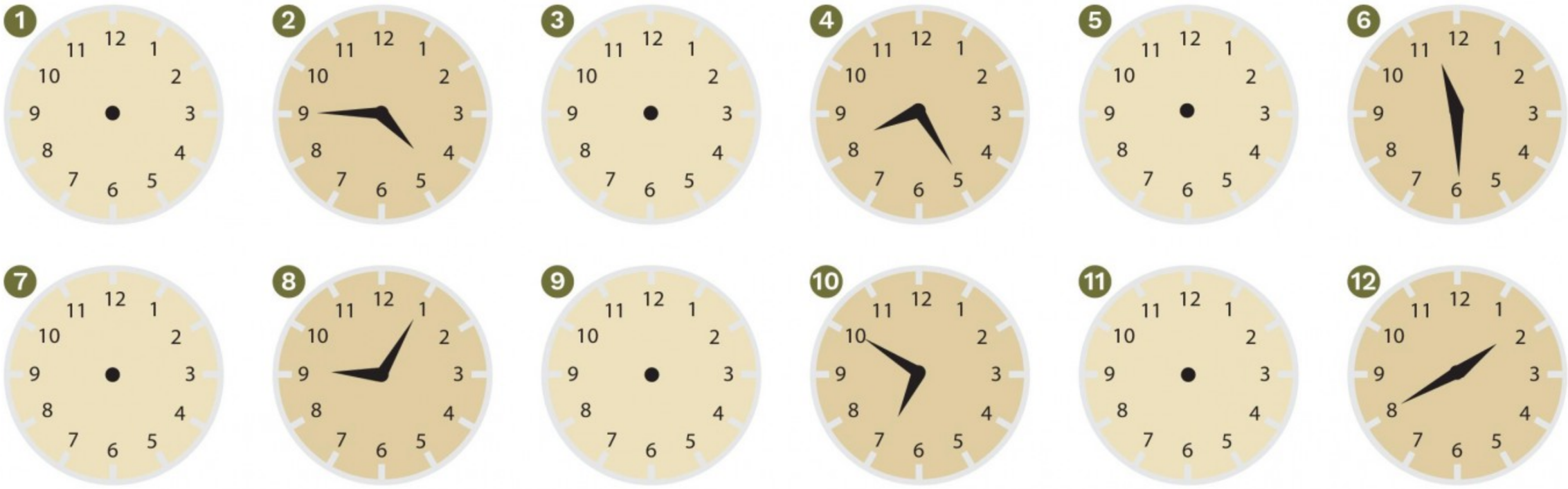
Responding to your partner
Thanks. OK. Good idea.

d Have all eight conversations again. Try to do them from memory.

PE2 What's the time? Student A

Ask and answer questions with **B** and complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

Clock 1: What's the time? / What time is it?



4C **Ikaria** Student A

a Read the article about Ikaria and answer the questions.

1 Where is Ikaria?
2 What do the people eat and drink?
3 How do they exercise?
4 What do they do after lunch?
5 Is Ikaria a safe place? How do you know?
6 Do the people have a good social life? What examples does the article give?
7 What do people call the island?

b Listen to **B** describe life in Nicoya.

c Tell **B** about life in Ikaria. Use your answers to questions 1–7. What do the two places have in common?

Ikaria, Greece

Ikaria is a small Greek island near the coast of Türkiye. How do the people there live? They eat a lot of beans, potatoes, and green vegetables, and they sometimes eat fish, but they hardly ever eat red meat or sugar. They also drink a lot of herbal tea. They exercise a lot, but they never go to the gym. They work in their gardens, and they walk everywhere – not many people in Ikaria have a car. They also take a siesta every afternoon.

Ikaria is a very safe place. In the village of Raches, the police station is closed. The people say they don't need police. People also have a very good social life. The island is famous for its tradition of *panagiria*, or festivals. Between May and October, the island has between two and four festivals every week, where people eat, drink, and dance all night. They call Ikaria "the island where people forget to die."

Glossary



beans



herbal tea

siesta a rest or nap taken in the early afternoon, especially in hot countries

5B **Spot the differences** Student A

You and **B** have the same picture, but with seven differences.

a Tell **B** what is happening in apartments 1–4 and in the yard. What is happening in **B**'s picture? Listen and circle the differences.

b Listen to **B** describe what is happening in apartments 5–8 and in the yard. What is happening in your picture? Is it the same or different? Tell **B**. Circle the differences.

c When you finish, compare the two pictures.



5C What do you do? What are you doing now? Student A

a Ask **B** your questions.

What do you do?
What are you doing now?
Are you wearing a watch today?
Do you usually wear a watch?
What kind of books do you usually read?
What are you reading right now?

b Answer **B**'s questions.

8A Police interview Student A

Work in pairs with another **A**. You are police officers. There was a robbery last night. **B** and **B** are your suspects. They are friends. They say that they went out for dinner and then went to the movies last night. You want to know if this is true.

a **A**s, look at the police interview form and prepare to ask the **B**s the questions. Think of questions to get more details about the evening, e.g., *What did you eat and drink? What movie was it?*

POLICE interview form

Name: _____ Date: _____

	What time?	Where?	More details
/ meet?			
/ have dinner?			
/ go to the movies?			
What / do after the movies?			
What time / get home?			

b Interview one of the **B**s. Write down his / her answers in the form. (Your partner interviews the other **B**.)

What time did you meet? *About 6:30.*

c Compare with your partner. Did the two **B**s tell exactly the same story? If not, arrest them!

8B *Is there...? Are there...?* Student A

a Make questions with *Is there a...?* or *Are there any...?* to ask **B**.

Is there a bathtub in your bathroom?

1 bathtub in your bathroom
2 books in your living room
3 stores near your house
4 desk in your bedroom
5 dishwasher in your kitchen
6 supermarkets on your street

b Answer **B**'s questions with *Yes, there is / are.* or *No, there isn't / aren't.*

8C A haunted room Student A

a Look at the photo of a haunted hotel room for one minute. Try to remember what's in the room.



b Ask **B** the questions.

/ a single or a double bed? (*There was a double bed.*)
How many tables / ? (*There were three.*)
/ a rug on the floor? (*Yes, there was.*)
/ any armchairs? Where were they? (*Yes, there were. They were across from the bed, next to the windows.*)
/ any books in the room? (*No, there weren't.*)
What / over the bed? (*There was a light.*)

c Close your book. Answer **B**'s questions.

9C Quiz Night Student A

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative form of the **bold** adjectives.

1 **small** Mexico is _____ than Argentina.
(True. Mexico is 758,449 square miles and Argentina is 1,073,518 square miles.)

2 **cold** Alaska is _____ than Greenland.
(False. The minimum temperature in Alaska is -80 degrees Fahrenheit, but in Greenland it can be -93 degrees Fahrenheit.)

3 **old** Oxford University is _____ than Cambridge University.
(True. Oxford University was founded in about 1170 and Cambridge 40 years later, in 1209.)

4 **short** The English alphabet is _____ than the Arabic alphabet.
(True. There are 26 letters in the English alphabet and 28 in the Arabic alphabet.)

5 **expensive** Hotels in New York are _____ than hotels in Tokyo.
(True. Hotels in Tokyo are about 55% cheaper than similar hotels in New York.)

6 **dry** The Sahara Desert is _____ than the Atacama Desert.
(False. In the Sahara Desert, the average rainfall is 1 inch, and in the Atacama Desert it's less than 1 inch.)

7 **far** New Zealand is _____ south than Australia.
(True. It's about 1,250 miles southeast of Australia.)

8 **hot** The Earth is _____ than the moon.
(False. The temperature of the moon during the day can be 250 degrees Fahrenheit, but the maximum temperature of the Earth is about 140 degrees Fahrenheit.)

b Play *Quiz Night*. You are the host.

Read sentence 1 to **B**. **B** says "true" or "false."

Say if **B** is right and give the extra information in parentheses. If **B** is right, **B** wins $100.

Then read sentence 2 for $200, sentence 3 for $400, sentence 4 for $800, etc.

If **B** gets a question wrong, **B** loses all the money, but continue to play. The prize starts again from $100.

c Play *Quiz Night* again. You are the contestant. Listen to **B**'s sentences and answer. Who won more money?

10A I'm a tourist. Help! Student A

a Imagine you are an English-speaking tourist in your town (or the nearest big town). **B** lives in the town. Ask **B** six questions about the town using superlative adjectives. Get as much information as you can.

What's the most beautiful square?

I think it's the Jemaa el-Fnaa.

Where is it?

It's in the city center, near the Koutoubia Mosque. It has...

1 What's _____ square? (beautiful)
2 What's _____ way to get around? (easy)
3 What's _____ museum? (interesting)
4 What's _____ time of year to visit? (good)
5 What's _____ place to eat typical food? (nice)
6 What's _____ shopping area? (famous)

b Then change roles. **B** is an English-speaking tourist in your town. Listen and answer **B**'s questions about the town. Explain everything very clearly and give as much information as you can!

10B What are you going to do? Student A

a Ask **B** the questions below. Use *be going to*.

Tonight
What / do after class?
/ study English? Why (not)?

Tomorrow
What time / get up tomorrow?
Where / have lunch?

Next weekend
/ go away next weekend? Where to?
What / do on Saturday night?

What are you going to do after class?

b Answer **B**'s questions.

1B Where are they from?
Student B

a Look at the chart. Take turns to ask and answer the questions about each person. Answer **A** about person 1. Then ask about person 2.

Where's Ali from? *He's from (country).*

Where in (country)?

Taking turns

A I'm A and you're B. **B** Yes. You start.



Name	Masako	Ali	Nadir
From	Japan Osaka	_____ _____	Thailand Bangkok

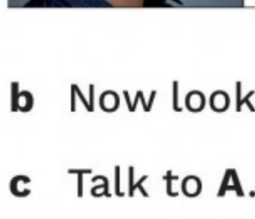
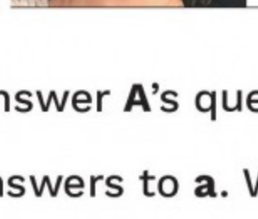
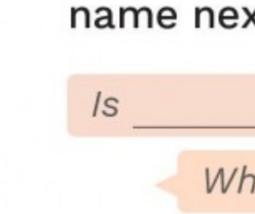
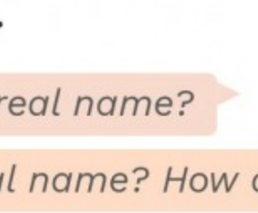
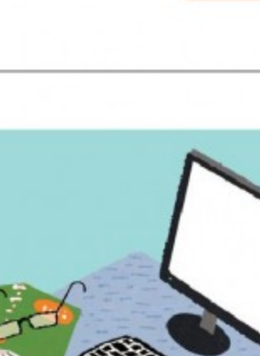
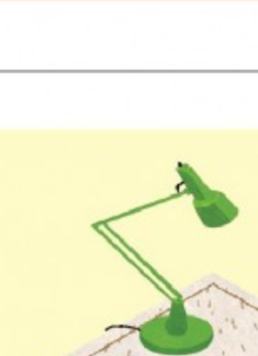


Name	Maria	Sofia	Oluwa
From	_____ _____	Argentina Rosario	_____ _____

b Repeat for the other people.

1C What's his / her real name?
Student B

a Look at list 2. Read the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Cross out the names you think are not their real names.

1		2	
	**Andrea Bocelli**, singer (real name)		**Benedict Cumberbatch**, actor _____
	**Nicki Minaj**, singer (real name Onika Tanya Maraj-Petty)		**Lana del Rey**, singer _____
	**Lady Gaga**, singer (real name Stefani Joanne Angelina Germanotta)		**Bruno Mars**, singer _____
	**Dev Patel**, actor (real name)		**Taylor Swift**, singer _____

b Now look at list 1 and answer **A**'s questions.

c Talk to **A**. Check your answers to **a**. Write the real name next to the photo.

Is _____ his / her real name?

What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?

2A *in, on, under* Student B

a Look at picture 1. Answer **A**'s questions.

Where's the charger? *It's in the...*

b Where are these things? Ask **A**. Draw them in the correct place in picture 2.

file headphones magazine phone photo tissues watch

c Now compare your pictures. Are all the things in the correct place?

2B The same or different? Student B

a Listen to **A** describe picture 1. Is your picture the same or different? Write **S** or **D** on the picture. Then describe picture 2 to **A**, etc. Find eight differences.

Number 2. They're black cats.

In my picture, they're black cats, too. They're the same.



b Compare your pictures and check.

2C What's the matter? Student B

a Have this conversation in pairs. You are **B**.

A What's the matter?
B I'm sad.
A Cheer up.
B OK.

b Have four more conversations. **A** asks, *What's the matter?* Answer with 1 below. **A** responds. Then respond with a phrase from the box below.

1 *I'm hot.*

2 *I'm thirsty.*

3 *I'm worried.*

4 *I'm stressed.*

Responding to your partner

Thanks. OK. Good idea.

c Have four more conversations. Ask, *What's the matter?* **A** answers. Then choose a phrase below.

Close the window. Have a sandwich.
Read a book. Sit down.

d Have all eight conversations again. Try to do them from memory.

PE2 What's the time? Student B

Ask and answer questions with **A** and complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

Clock 2: What's the time? / What time is it?



4C Nicoya Student B

a Read the article about Nicoya and answer the questions.

1 Where is Nicoya?
2 What do people there do?
3 What do they eat and drink?
4 How do they exercise?
5 When do they get up and go to bed?
6 How long do they sleep?
7 What is a *plan de vida*? How does it make a difference in their lives?

b Tell **A** about life in Nicoya. Use your answers to questions 1–7.

c Listen to **A** describe life in Ikaria. What do the two places have in common?

Nicoya, Costa Rica

Nicoya is in the northwest of Costa Rica, near the border with Nicaragua. Most of the people who live there are farmers. In Nicoya people eat small meals. They usually have beans, rice, sweet potatoes, and sometimes a little meat, an egg, or some cheese. They also have some unusual fruits, for example, the marañón, a fruit similar to an orange, with a lot of vitamin C. They drink a lot of water – the local water is unusually rich in calcium and magnesium.

They are very active during the day – they work outside, and they walk everywhere, or ride horses. They don't watch television and they don't use the internet, so they go to bed when it's dark and get up when it's light. They sleep well, usually eight hours a night.

All people in Nicoya have something called a *plan de vida*. It means "a reason to get up every morning." This may be work or family, and it's what makes even people who are over 100 still feel needed.

Glossary



beans

5B Spot the differences Student B

You and **A** have the same picture, but with seven differences.

a Listen to **A** describe what is happening in apartments 1–4 and in the yard. What is happening in your picture? Is it the same or different? Tell **A**. Circle the differences.

b Tell **A** what is happening in apartments 5–8 and in the yard. What is happening in **A**'s picture? Listen and circle the differences.

c When you finish, compare the two pictures.



5C What do you do? What are you doing now? Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions.

b Ask **A** your questions.

Do your parents work? What do they do?

Think of someone in your family. What do you think they are doing now?

What kind of TV shows do you like?

What TV shows are you watching right now?

Is it raining now?

Does it rain a lot at this time of year?

8A Police interview Student B

Work in pairs with another **B**. You are friends. Last night you met, had dinner, and went to the movies. But there was a robbery last night. **A** and **A** are police officers. You are their suspects, and they want to interview you separately. If you both tell exactly the same story, you are innocent!

a **B**s, prepare your story. Answer these questions. Think of more details, e.g., *What did you eat and drink? What movie was it?*

What time / Where did you meet?

What time / Where did you have dinner?

What time / Where did you go to the movies?

What did you do after the movies?

What time did you get home?

b Answer **A**'s questions. (Your partner answers the other **A**.)

c Compare with your partner. Did you both tell the same story?

8B *Is there...? Are there...?* Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions with *Yes, there is / are* or *No, there isn't / aren't*.

b Make questions with *Is there a...?* or *Are there any...?* to ask **A**.

Is there a TV in your kitchen?

1 TV in your kitchen
2 pictures in your classroom
3 park near your house
4 mirror in your living room
5 plants in your hall
6 shelves in your bedroom

8C A haunted room Student B

a Look at the photo of a haunted hotel room for one minute. Try to remember what's in the room.



b Close your book. Answer **A**'s questions.

c Ask **A** the questions.

/ any plants or flowers in the room? (*No, there weren't. / Yes, there were. There were some painted on the wall.*)

/ a table between the armchairs? (*Yes, there was.*)

How many windows / ? (*There were two.*)

What / at the end of the bed? (*There was a TV.*)

/ a sofa? (*No, there wasn't.*)

/ a phone? Where was it? (*Yes, there was. It was on the table next to the bed.*)

9C Quiz Night Student B

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative form of the **bold** adjectives.

1 **old** The Leaning Tower of Pisa is _____ than Machu Picchu in Peru.

(True. The Leaning Tower was finished in 1372. Machu Picchu was built between 1438 and 1472.)

2 **small** Monaco is _____ than San Marino.

(True. Monaco is 0.77 square miles, but San Marino is 23 square miles.)

3 **high** The mountains on Earth are _____ than the mountains on Mars.

(False. The highest mountain on Mars is about 15 miles high, but the highest mountains on Earth are all less than 5.5 miles high.)

4 **big** Lake Baikal in Russia is _____ than Lake Superior in the US and Canada.

(False. Lake Baikal is 12,248 square miles and Lake Superior is 31,700 square miles.)

5 **popular** In the UK, coffee is _____ than tea.

(True. 63% of British people drink coffee regularly, and only 59% drink tea.)

6 **large** A gigabyte is _____ than a megabyte.

(True. A megabyte is 1,024 kilobytes and a gigabyte is 1,024 megabytes.)

7 **warm** The Mediterranean Sea is _____ than the Red Sea.

(False. The average temperature of the Mediterranean Sea is 66 degrees Fahrenheit, but the average temperature of the Red Sea is 82 degrees Fahrenheit.)

8 **busy** Heathrow Airport in London is _____ than Atlanta Airport in the US.

(False. 100 million people a year travel through Atlanta, but only 70 million go through Heathrow.)

b Play *Quiz Night*. You are the contestant.

Listen to **A**'s sentence 1. Say if it's true or false.

A tells you if you are right and gives you extra information. If you are right, you win $100.

Then listen to **A**'s sentence 2 for $200, sentence 3 for $400, sentence 4 for $800, etc.

If you get a question wrong, you lose all the money but continue to play. The prize starts again from $100.

c Play *Quiz Night* again. You are the host. Use your sentences 1–8. Who won more money?

10A I'm a tourist. Help! Student B

a **A** is an English-speaking tourist in your town. Listen and answer **A**'s questions about the town. Explain everything very clearly and give as much information as you can!

b Then change roles. Imagine you are an English-speaking tourist in your town (or the nearest big town). **A** lives in the town. Ask **A** six questions about the town using superlative adjectives. Get as much information as you can.

What's the oldest building?

I think it's the cathedral.

How old is it?

I'm not sure. About 500 years old, maybe?

1 What's _____ building? (old)
2 What's _____ place to go for a day trip? (nice)
3 What's _____ place to go to with children? (good)
4 What's _____ souvenir? (typical)
5 Where's _____ area to go at night? (popular)
6 Where do you have _____ view? (beautiful)

10B What are you going to do? Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions.

b Ask **A** the questions below. Use *be going to*.

Tonight

What / do after dinner?

What time / go to bed?

Tomorrow

/ go to work (or school) tomorrow?

What / do in the evening?

Next weekend

/ go out on Friday night? What / do?

What / do on Sunday?

What are you going to do after dinner?

3B What's my job? Students A+B+C

a Work in groups of three, **A**, **B**, and **C**. Each student chooses a job from **Vocabulary Bank** Jobs *p.162*.

b First guess **A**'s job. **B** and **C** take turns. Ask **A** ten questions from the chart.

WHERE?

Do you work...?
inside outside in an office from home

WHEN?

Do you work...?
in the evening at night on the weekend

HOW?

Do you work...?
with the public on a team long hours

Do you...?

have a lot of vacation	drive a lot
have special qualifications	make things
speak foreign languages	earn a lot of money
travel for work	wear a uniform or special clothes
	like your job

c **B** and **C**, check the information you know. Then guess **A**'s job.

So, you don't work in an office...?

d Change roles. Guess **B**'s job. Then guess **C**'s job.

e Now think of a person you know who has one of the jobs in this lesson. Play the game again.

Does she speak foreign languages?

4C Short life, long life? Students A+B

Interview your partner. **A**, ask the questions in the questionnaire. **B**, answer and give more information if you can. Then change roles.

How often do you...?

1 **have breakfast**
- a hardly ever / never
- b sometimes / usually
- c always

2 **eat fresh fruit and vegetables**
- a hardly ever / never
- b once a day
- c three times a day

3 **eat fast food**
- a often
- b sometimes, not often
- c hardly ever / never

4 **exercise**
- a hardly ever / never
- b once or twice a week
- c three or four times a week

5 **feel tired or stressed**
- a always / often
- b sometimes
- c hardly ever / never

6 **drink soda**
- a every day
- b sometimes
- c hardly ever / never

7 **see your friends**
- a sometimes
- b often
- c very often

How many...?

8 **hours do you usually sleep at night**
a 0 to 4 b 5 to 6 c 7 to 9

9 **cups of coffee do you drink a day**
- a more than five
- b usually only one or two
- c I don't drink coffee.

10 **Which of these is true for you?**
- a I'm not very positive about life.
- b I'm usually positive about life.
- c I'm always positive about life.

Now calculate your partner's score. a = 5 b = 7 c = 10

Total score = number of years you live

10C Fortune telling Students A+B

a What pictures can you see on the fortune-teller's cards? Match the cards and verb phrases.

- become famous
- get a new job
- get married
- meet somebody new
- fall in love
- get a lot of money
- have a surprise
- A be lucky
- travel
- move to a new house

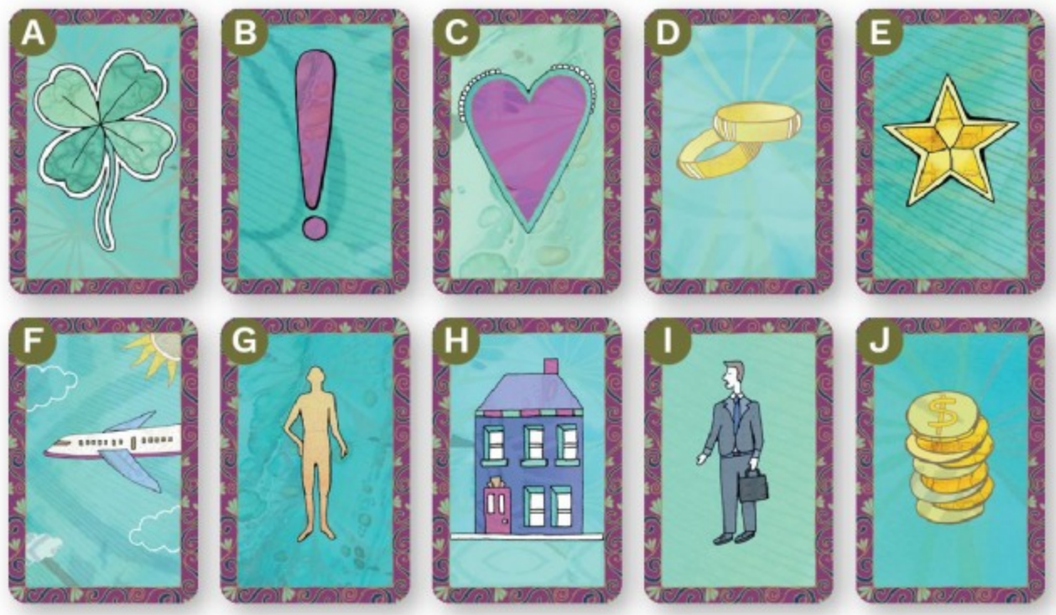
b Role-play fortune telling.

A Look at the ten cards in **a**. Secretly number the cards in a different order (1–10).

B Choose five numbers from 1–10 and tell **A**.

A Predict **B**'s future using those cards.

B Ask for more information. Then change roles.



I'm going to tell you about your future. Your first card is a star. You're going to become famous. You're going to be on TV.

Great! What TV show?

Writing Bank

1 Completing a form

a Look at the form for a visa. Match 1–3 to headings A–C in the form.

1 Your contact details
2 About you
3 Passport information



VISIT AND SHORT STAY
Visa application form for a visitor or student

A

First name Lorena
Last name (Family name) Ferreira Campos

Sex – *please put an X in the box*
male ☐ female X prefer not to say ☐

Marital status – *please put an X in the box*
single X married ☐ divorced ☐ other ☐

Date of birth 0 3 2 1 2 0 0 2

Place of birth Salvador
Country of birth Brazil

Nationality Brazilian

B

Passport / Identity card number

C

Your home address and zip code
Rua Doutor Azevedo Sampaio 1101
Sorocaba, SP
Brazil 18010-220

Phone number home (landline) +55 (15) 5555-1108
cell +55 (15) 95555-0175

Email address lorena21.zyx@oup.com

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY
Date application received:

b Read about Lorena. Correct the wrong information.

1 Lorena is from Brazil.
2 Her last name is Campos Ferreira.
3 She's married.
4 Her home is in Sorocaba.
5 Her landline number is +55 (15) 95555-0175.
6 Her email address is lorena21.zyx@oup.com.

Capital letters

In English, these words start with a CAPITAL letter:

1 first names and last names ***M**elissa **R**ogers*
2 continents, countries, nationalities, and languages ***A**sia, **C**hina, **C**hinese*
3 towns and cities ***N**ew **Y**ork*
4 street names ***K**ing **S**treet*
5 days and months ***M**onday, **J**anuary*
6 the first word in a sentence ***S**he's a student.*
7 the pronoun *I* *She's Japanese and **I**'m Mexican.*

c Read the information box. Which of the uses 1–7 can you find in the form?

d Write this paragraph again with CAPITAL letters where necessary.

my name is omar. i'm from cartagena in colombia, and i speak spanish, french, and a little english. my teacher is american. her name's kate. my english classes are on tuesdays and thursdays.

e Complete the visa form about you.

VISIT AND SHORT STAY
Visa application form for a visitor or student

A

First name
Last name (Family name)

Sex – *please put an X in the box*
male ☐ female ☐ prefer not to say ☐

Marital status – *please put an X in the box*
single ☐ married ☐ divorced ☐ other ☐

Date of birth ☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐

Place of birth
Country of birth

Nationality

B

Passport / Identity card number

C

Your home address and zip code

Phone number home (landline)
cell

Email address

f Check your spelling. Make sure you use capital letters correctly.

p.13

2 Messages, notes, and notices

a Read three short texts. Match texts A–C to places 1–3.

1 ___
2 ___
3 ___

b Read the short texts again. Which text is for...?

1 a friend ___
2 a family member ___
3 a lot of people ___

Imperatives in short texts

We often use imperatives in short texts.

1 We usually use imperatives to tell someone (not) to do something: *Go home. Don't be late.* We add *please* to be polite: *Please be quiet.*
2 We also use imperatives in public notices and ads: *Come to New York! It's a great city.*

c Read the information box. Find three examples of imperatives in texts A–C. Match the examples to uses 1 and 2 in the box.

d Cross out the extra word in these imperatives.

Please take ~~you~~ a cake.

1 To visit my website.
2 You don't use my computer.
3 Please to make fajitas.
4 Please don't to worry.

e Plan three similar short texts. Make notes to answer the questions.

1 You aren't at home. It's time for dinner. Write a note to a family member.
   - Who is the note for?
   - Where are you?
   - What do you want the family member to do?
2 Your band has a free concert. Write a public notice.
   - When and at what time is the concert?
   - Where is the concert?
3 It's Lin's birthday and there's a party. Write a message to another friend about the party.
   - Who is the message for?
   - What day is Lin's birthday?
   - Where is the party, and at what time?

f Now write your short texts. Use your notes in **e** and the language in the information box.

g Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you use imperatives correctly.

p.21

A



CHEAP BOOKS!

Come to our book sale!

Friday October 15 at 10:30

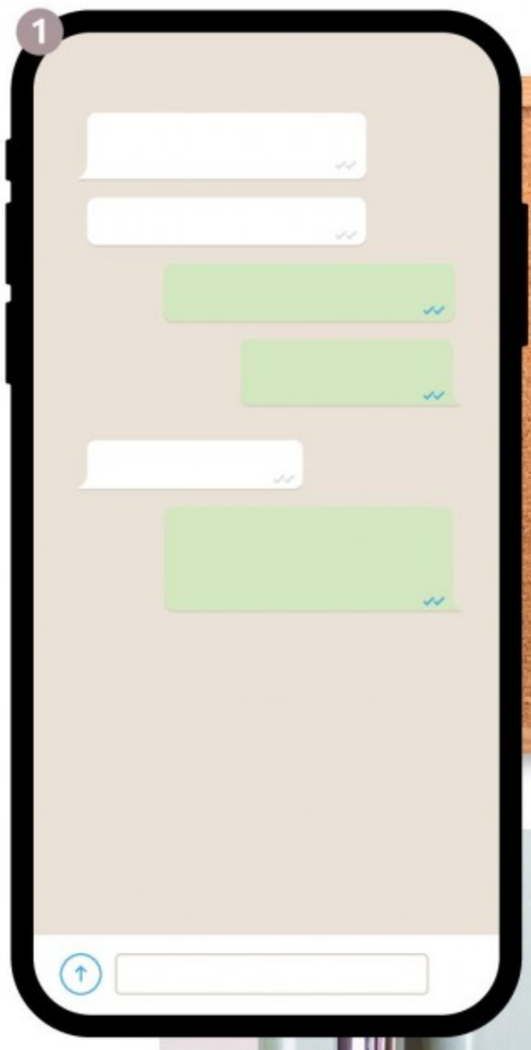
Longmont Community Center

B

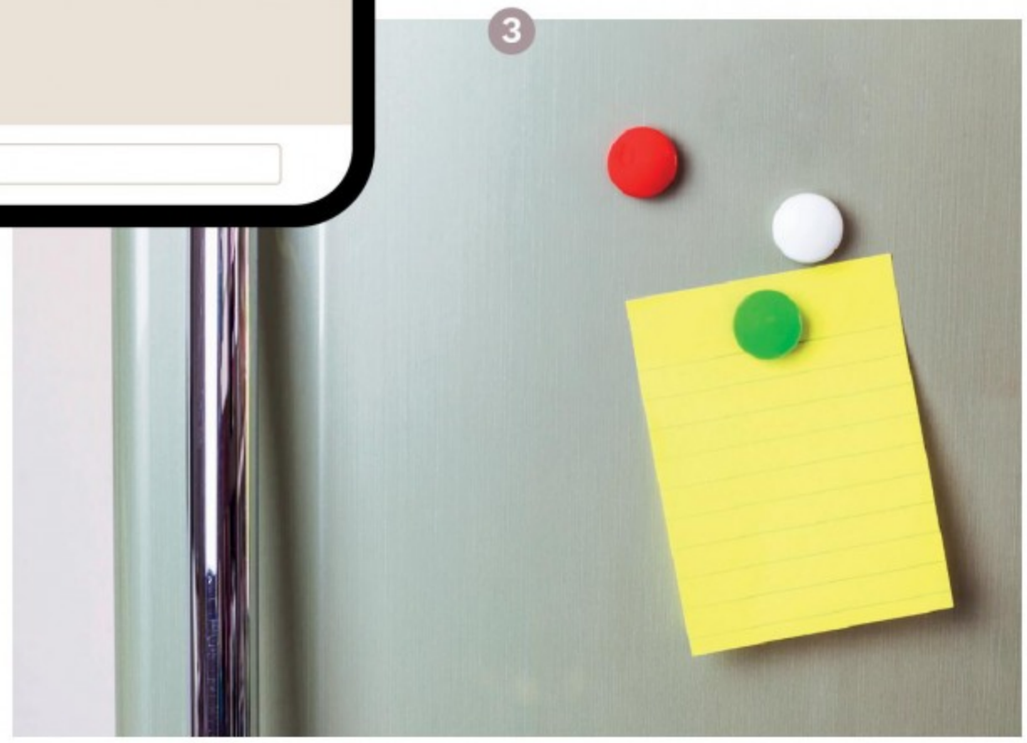
Alex,
I'm at the gym.
Please make
salad for lunch.
Love Mom

C

Hi, Chris! It's Sam's birthday on Friday. 🥳 Surprise party at Acropolis Restaurant 7:30. Don't tell Sam! 🤐







3 A personal profile

a Read Fatima's profile. Do you have similar interests?



Fatima Khan

My profile

Hometown
I'm from Chicago, but I live in Los Angeles.

Occupation
I'm a web designer. I work for an international company.

Languages
I speak English and a little Urdu. My father is from Pakistan.

Interests

Music I like dance music and jazz. I don't like opera or loud rock music.

Movies I like foreign language movies. I love South Korean movies, e.g., *Parasite*.

TV I don't watch a lot of TV, but I like reality shows.

Sports I don't watch basketball or other sports. I go to the gym in my free time.

e.g. = *for example*

b Read the profile again. Answer the questions.

1 Where does Fatima live?
2 Why does she speak a little Urdu?
3 What movies does she like?
4 What does she do in her free time?

and, but, or

We can use *and*, *but*, or *or* to link two ideas in a sentence.

We use **and** to link two similar ideas.
*I speak English **and** a little Urdu.*

We use **but** to contrast ideas.
*I'm from Chicago, **but** I live in Los Angeles.*

We use **or** to link negative ideas.
*I don't like opera **or** loud rock music.*

c Read the information box. Find one more example of *and*, *but*, and *or* in the profile.

d Complete the sentences with *and*, *but*, or *or*.

1 I play soccer _____ tennis.
2 Max is an engineer, _____ he works as a waiter.
3 My friends don't drink tea _____ coffee.
4 We're Chinese _____ we live in Shanghai.
5 He doesn't eat fish _____ meat.
6 Mia likes cats, _____ she doesn't like dogs.

e Plan your profile. Make notes to answer the following questions:

Where do you live?
What do you do?
What languages do you speak?
What music do you listen to?
What movies do you like?
What do you watch on TV?
What sports do you watch or play?

f Now write your profile. Use your notes in **e** and the language in the information box. Add a photo if you can.

My profile

Hometown

Occupation

Languages

Interests

Music

Movies

TV

Sports

g Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you use *and*, *but*, and *or* correctly. p.29

4 An article

a Read Javier's article. How does he feel at the end of his favorite day?

b Read the article again. In which paragraph can you find the answers to these questions? Write 1, 2, 3, or 4.

A What do you usually do in the morning? ___

B What do you usually do in the evening? ___

C What's your favorite day of the week? Why? ___

D Where do you sometimes have lunch? Who with? What do you usually do after lunch? ___

Time words

Use **after** + noun, e.g., *after lunch, after work*.

Use **then** to say what happens next, e.g., *I take a shower, (and)* ***then*** *I get dressed.*

Other time words: *before, during, from...to..., until*

c Look at the highlighted words in the article and read the information box. Then complete sentences 1–6 with time words.

1 I sometimes take a bath _____ I go to bed.

2 Jack usually gets home at 7:30. _____ he has dinner.

3 On Fridays, I work _____ 9:00 _____ 2:30.

4 I don't usually sleep _____ the day.

5 We usually watch TV _____ midnight, and then we go to bed.

6 She always takes a shower _____ the game.

d Choose the correct options in sentences 1–6.

1 I sometimes see friends *after* / *then* work.

2 They do the housework and *after* / *then* they go shopping.

3 Sophie gets dressed, and *after* / *then* she puts on her make-up.

4 We always relax *after* / *then* dinner.

5 Max checks his emails *after* / *then* breakfast.

6 I get home, and *after* / *then* I take the dog for a walk.

e Plan an article called *My favorite day*. Plan four paragraphs. Make notes to answer the questions in **b** in the correct order. What other information could you include to make the article interesting?

f Write your article. Use your notes in **e** and the language in **d**.

g Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you use time words correctly.

p.35



My favorite day

March 24 #favorite #weekend #family #food

1 **My favorite day of the week is Saturday because it's the first day of the weekend!**

2 I get up very early during the week and I get up early on Saturdays, too! I play basketball for a club in my town and we usually have a game on Saturday mornings. We sometimes play in my town and we sometimes go to other towns. We practice together for an hour before the game and then we play. My family often comes to watch.

3 When we play in my town, I usually have lunch with my basketball team after the game. We only meet on weekends, so it's nice to eat together. We go to the café in the park for lunch. The café has great food and it isn't expensive. We usually stay there from about 1:30 to 4:00. Then I go home and rest.

4 In the evening, I usually see my friends. We often make dinner together at my house or at a friend's house. We sometimes go to the movies and we have a pizza or a burger after the movie. I'm usually out until one or two o'clock in the morning, and then I go home. At the end of the day, I'm always tired, but happy.

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

5 Posting on social media



1
Fri Apr 11 Terrible weather in Washington, DC, this afternoon – it's raining a lot!
No problem – I'm visiting the Library of Congress. I'm looking at a very old photo by Ansel Adams. It's fantastic! 2:20 p.m.

2
Fri Apr 11 It's still raining. I'm having Mediterranean food at Jose Andres's restaurant called Zaytinya – beef and vegetables. It's perfect for an awful day like today. 7:00 p.m.

3
Sat Apr 12 Great weather this morning – the sun's shining! I'm on a walking tour of Washington. I'm learning a lot about places in the city. 10:45 a.m.

4
Sat Apr 12 I'm sitting at a café on Pennsylvania Avenue, and I'm watching some amazing street musicians. It's cold, but it isn't raining. Pennsylvania Avenue is full of tourists (like me!). 1:30 p.m.

5
Sat Apr 12 I usually watch women's soccer, but today I'm watching a completely different sport. I'm at the National Mall at an Ultimate disc game. Ultimate disc is a fun, fast game played with a Frisbee. 5:00 p.m.

a **Jing-Wen is on a short vacation in Washington, DC. She posts news and photos from her vacation. Read her posts and match them to the photos.**

b **Read the posts again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).**

1 On Friday afternoon, she's at a famous camera store.
2 She doesn't like beef and vegetables.
3 It isn't raining on Saturday morning.
4 A lot of people are on vacation in Washington, DC.
5 Jing-Wen often watches Ultimate disc on Saturday afternoons.

Synonyms: *good* and *bad*

A **synonym** is a word that has the same or a similar meaning to another word.

We can use synonyms for *good* and *bad* to make our writing more interesting.

Synonyms for *good*:
excellent, _____, _____, _____

Synonyms for *bad*:
horrible, _____, _____

c **Read the information box. Find four more synonyms for *good* and two more synonyms for *bad* in posts 1–5. Add them to the box.**

d **Rewrite some sentences from Jing-Wen's posts on Sunday, April 13. Use a different synonym for good or bad each time.**

1 I'm having a good time in Washington, DC, today.
2 I'm eating a good chocolate dessert in a café in Georgetown.
3 This is my lunch! The view from the restaurant is good.
4 I'm traveling to the airport, and the traffic is bad.
5 The food in the airport is bad.

e **Imagine you are on a short vacation in a city. Plan four social media posts about different places or activities in the city. For each post, make notes to answer the following questions:**

1 Where are you?
2 What are you doing?
3 Who are you with?
4 What's the weather like?

f **Write your posts. Use your notes in e and the language in the information box.**

g **Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you use synonyms for *good* and *bad* correctly.**

p.45

6 An informal email

Subject: Hi from Merida x Inbox

From: Mateo <mateo7sanchez83762.zyx@oup.com>
To: Monika Weber

Hi Monika,

1 My name's Mateo. I'm 24, and I'm from Merida, in Mexico. I'm a tour guide for a travel company. It's an international company and I work with tourists from different countries. I'm studying English because I need it for my job.

2 I live with my parents and my brothers. My father's an architect, but he doesn't go to his office every day. He often works from home. My mother's an engineer. She isn't at home a lot during the week. My brothers are 14 and 16, and they're at school. What's your family like?

3 I don't have much free time because I work six days a week. I usually go cycling in the mountains on my day off. In the evening, I like watching live music with my friends. I really like Latin alternative and hip hop. What kind of music do you like?

Please write soon.

Best wishes

Mateo


A


B


C

a Read Mateo's email to a pen pal. Which photo shows Mateo? Choose the best option, A, B, or C.

b Read the email again. In which paragraph can you find the answers to these questions? Write 1, 2, or 3.

What do you do? ☐
What's your name? ☐
What do you like doing in your free time? ☐
Who do you live with? ☐
What do your parents do? ☐
How old are you? ☐
Why are you studying English? ☐
Where are you from? ☐

Informal emails

Beginning: *Hi* + name
Middle: Use contractions, e.g., ***I'm*** *21.*
Show you're interested in the person you're writing to. Ask questions, e.g., *What's your job like? Do you have a big family? What kind of movies do you like?*
End: *Best wishes* or *Love* (for a good friend)

c Read the information box. Find all the examples of contractions in Mateo's email.

d Rewrite the sentences below using contractions.

1 They are in college.
_____.
2 I am studying economics.
_____.
3 He does not have a job.
_____.
4 We are not working today.
_____.
5 She is a doctor.
_____.
6 I do not like dancing.
_____.

e Which two questions does Mateo ask in his email?

f Plan an informal email to a new pen pal. Make notes to answer the questions in **b**. Plan three paragraphs.

g Write your email. Use your notes in **f** and the language in the information box. Ask two questions.

h Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you use contractions correctly and the correct expressions to start and finish the email.

p.53

7 A diary entry

a Read Anele's diary entry. Do you think she enjoyed New Year's Eve more than usual?

b Read the diary entry again. Answer the questions.

1 What does Anele usually do on New Year's Eve?
2 Why did she and Johan climb Lion's Head this year?
3 Where did they eat? Who with?
4 When did the fireworks start?
5 What did they do after the fireworks?
6 How did Anele feel when she got home?



Tuesday, January 1st

What a fantastic New Year's Eve! We usually go to a party in the city, but this year we did something different.

First, we climbed a mountain! Johan wanted to see the sunset, so we went to Lion's Head. We got to the top at about 8:00 p.m., and we watched the sunset over Cape Town. It was a very special moment.

Then we met our families for dinner on Signal Hill. We got a taxi there from the bottom of Lion's Head. It was a beautiful summer night, and we all sat together.

Next, we watched the fireworks. They started just after midnight, and we had a great view from the top of the hill. They were amazing!

After that, we had a big party. Some people sang and played guitars, and others danced. It was a lot of fun, and I didn't want the night to end.

Finally, we all said goodbye and we went home. I was tired, but very happy. It was a great way to start the New Year, and I hope we do the same again next year!

Time sequencers

We use time sequencers, e.g., *first*, *then*, to show the order in which things happen.

***First**, we had soup. **Next**, we had fish. **After that**, we had meat. **Then** we had ice cream. **Finally**, we had coffee.*

c Read the information box. Find five time sequencers in the diary entry.

First,

d Look at some events from a different story. Number them in the order they happened. Then rewrite them using time sequencers.

4 We stopped for a coffee.
___ We went out for a walk.
___ We got home and had the pizza for lunch.
___ We got up.
___ We bought pizza on the way home.
___ We had breakfast.

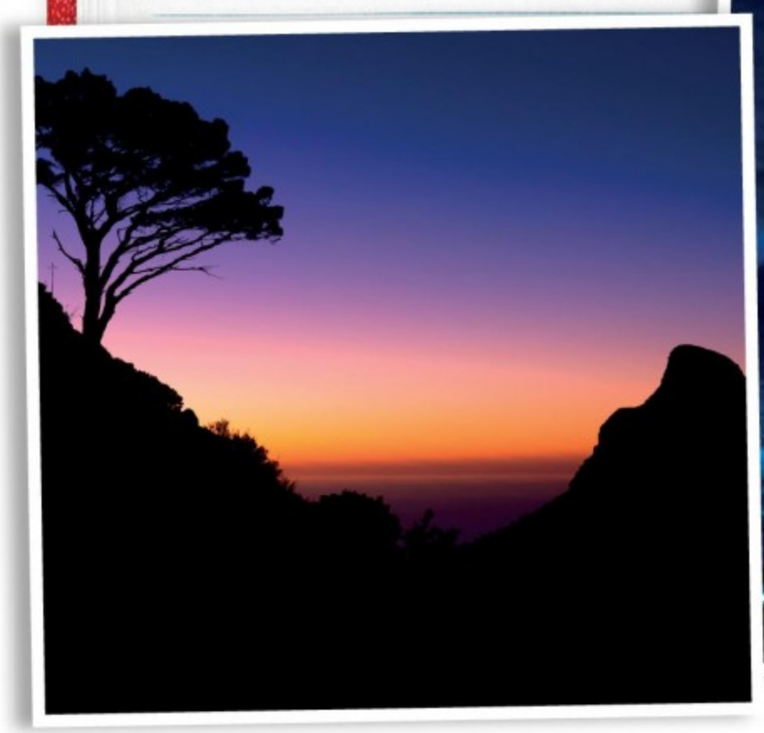
e Plan a diary entry about a memorable New Year's Eve or other special day. Make notes to answer the following questions:

1 Where were you?
2 Who were you with?
3 What did you do? Make a list of the events in the order they happened.
4 How did you feel when you got home?

f Write your diary entry. Use your notes in **e** and the language in the information box.

g Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you use time sequencers correctly.

p.61





8 Describing your home

a Look at the photos and read the description of an apartment to rent in Portugal. Imagine you want to go to Porto for a week of vacation. Would you like to stay in the apartment? Why (not)?

b Number the questions in the order the information comes in the description.

- ___ What are some of the rooms like?
- ___ Where's the apartment?
- ___ How far is the apartment from the city center?
- ___ What floor is the apartment on?
- ___ What rooms are there?
- ___ What interesting places are nearby?
- ___ What can you see from the apartment?

because and *so*

We use *because* to express a cause or reason, e.g., *I like living here* ***because*** *it's quiet.*

We use *so* to express a result or consequence, e.g., *There's a sofa and armchairs and a table and chairs,* ***so*** *it's a living room and a dining room.*

c Read the information box. Then complete the sentences with *because* or *so*.

1 My house is in the mountains, _____ it's cool in the summer.
2 There's a great view from the apartment _____ it's on the top floor.
3 You can go to the beach every day _____ my apartment is near the ocean.
4 The town is in the country, _____ it's very quiet.
5 There's a grill in the yard, _____ you can cook dinner outside.
6 The living room is very bright _____ it has a big window.

d Underline adjectives the writer uses to describe these things.

the city the kitchen the view the parks

e Imagine you want to rent your house or apartment to tourists. Plan a description for the website. Make notes on the questions in **b**. What adjectives could you use to make the description interesting?

f Write your description. Use your notes in **e** and the language in the information box.

g Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you use *so* and *because* correctly and use a variety of adjectives.

p.67

A place to stay

Search

Log in

List your place



My apartment is in Vila Nova de Gaia in Portugal. It's a big town on the Douro River, near the wonderful city of Porto. I like living here because it's quiet.

The apartment is on the first floor. There are two bedrooms, a living room, a hall, a bathroom, and a modern kitchen with a small balcony. The main room is large. There's a sofa and armchairs and a table and chairs, so it's a living room and a dining room. All the rooms have a great view of Porto and the river. In the evening, you can see the city lights when you have dinner.

There are several beautiful parks near my apartment, or you can go for a walk on the path next to the river. It's only 25 minutes to the Dom Luis I Bridge and Porto. You can also take the cable car to the top of the bridge and then walk to the center of the historic city.



9 Describing a memorable meal



A About five years ago, I was on vacation in Florence with my husband. It was lunchtime and we were hungry, so we found a small, traditional Italian restaurant and went inside.

B The restaurant was very busy. There were only two free seats on a long table with other people, so we sat there. There was no menu, but there was a board on the wall with a list of different dishes. We don't speak Italian, but we understood "mixed salad" and "Florentine steak," so we ordered that.

C After five minutes, the waiter brought us some food. First, we had a large salad of lettuce, carrot, and cheese. It was amazing! Then we had a delicious steak. It was big, and we ate it with hot bread. After that, we asked for the check – it was only €25 for two people, including our drinks!

D This meal is memorable for me because it was a big surprise. The restaurant was small, but the food was fantastic and very cheap. I loved Florence, and one of the reasons was that wonderful meal!

a Read the description of a memorable meal. Would you like to go to that restaurant? Why (not)?

b Read the description again and answer the questions.

1 When and where was the meal?
2 Who was the writer with?
3 What kind of restaurant was it?
4 What was the restaurant like?
5 What did they order?
6 What was the food like?
7 How much was the meal?
8 Why was the meal memorable?

Writing in paragraphs

A paragraph is usually about one topic. Each paragraph has two or more sentences. We introduce the topic of the paragraph in the first sentence and then give more information. Remember to plan your paragraphs before you start writing.

c Read the information box. Which paragraph (A–D) is mainly about...?

1 what the food was like
2 why the meal was memorable
3 what the restaurant was like
4 the reason they had the meal

d Complete the chart with all the adjectives the writer uses to describe these things.

The restaurant	The salad	The steak

e Plan a description of a memorable meal. Plan four paragraphs. Make notes to answer the questions in **b** and decide what information to include in each paragraph.

f Write your description. Use your notes in **e**.

g Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you use clear paragraphs and use a variety of adjectives.

p.73

10 A formal email

Subject: Hunter House B&B x Inbox

H **From: Carl** <c.hansen87.zyx@oup.com>
To: Hunter House

Dear Mr. and Mrs. Hunter,

I am writing about my [1]_____ at your bed-and-breakfast. I booked a [2]_____ room and a single room on your [3]_____ this morning for three nights, from July 5 to July 8.

We are planning to arrive by [4]_____ at about 4:00 in the afternoon on July 5. Is there a [5]_____ where we can park near your house?

We chose your bed-and-breakfast because our son is a wheelchair user, so he needs a room downstairs. We [6]_____ like the double room next to him. I hope that is not a [7]_____. Could you please [8]_____ that this is possible?

Sincerely,

Carl Hansen

Hunter House Bed and Breakfast

Bozeman, Montana, US



The Rocky Mountains



Wheelchair access

Overview **Photos** **Reviews**

Travis and Greta Hunter and their family welcome you to their comfortable home near the Rocky Mountains and Yellowstone National Park. Two double bedrooms upstairs, and one double and one single (with wheelchair access) downstairs. Breakfast 7:30–9:30. Dinner optional. We can pick you up from Gallatin Field Airport (the closest airport).

Places to stay in Bozeman, Montana

a **Read the advertisement and Carl's email. Complete the email with the words in the list.**

booking car confirm double place problem website would

b **Read Carl's email again. What does he ask about? Choose two options from the box.**

arriving by plane food parking pets restaurants rooms the yard

Formal emails

We use formal language in an email to a person we don't know, e.g., to a hotel, a language school, etc. We often add *please* and *thank you* to sound more polite.

Beginning:
Dear Mr. / Mrs. / Ms. (+ last name),
Dear Sir or Madam, (if you don't know the person's name)
Use a comma (,) after the name, e.g., *Dear Mr. Brown,*

Middle:
Use full forms, not contractions, e.g., *I would like to make a reservation* **NOT** ~~*I'd like to...*~~

End:
Sincerely,
(your first name + last name)

c **Read the information box. What expressions does Carl use to begin and end his email?**

d **Rewrite the sentences below using full forms.**

1 We're visiting the area in June.
_____.

2 I'd like a single room.
_____.

3 I didn't receive your email.
_____.

4 I'm planning to arrive by train.
_____.

5 There's a problem with my booking.
_____.

e **You made a booking at Hunter House. Plan a formal email to ask questions about your booking. Make notes using the questions below.**

1 How many people did you book for?
2 What rooms did you book?
3 How many nights did you book? What dates?
4 What time are you planning to arrive? Do you need parking?
5 Do you have any special requests?

f **Write your email. Use your notes in e and the language in the information box.**

g **Check your email. Make sure you start and finish your email correctly and use formal language to sound polite.**

p.83

11 A forum post

a Read Mason's forum post and the replies. Are any of the dreams and ambitions similar to yours?

b Read the forum posts again. Who writes about...?

1 health and fitness Aisha
2 travel and adventure _____
3 work and studies _____ _____
4 home and family _____
5 learning new skills _____

Giving a reason

When we write a forum post, we usually give a reason for what we say. The reason can come first or second.

I hope to visit Beijing in the future, so I'm planning to learn Chinese.

I'd like to have my own apartment because I don't want to live with my parents.

c Read the information box. Complete the chart.

Name	Dream or ambition	Reason
Enzo	learn sign language	talk to his girlfriend's brother
Aisha	_____	_____
Ximena	_____	_____
Max	_____	_____
Kenji	_____	_____
Diana	_____	_____

d Plan a reply to Mason's forum post. Make notes to answer the questions below.

1 What are you planning to do this year?
2 What do you hope to do next year?
3 What would you like to do in the future?

e Write your forum post. Use your notes in **d** and the language in the information box.

f Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you give reasons for your dreams and ambitions.

p.91

Forums > Life & Style > General

☆ WATCH THIS THREAD

What are your dreams and ambitions for this year, next year, or in the future?

Please share your ideas with me.

Posted by **Mason** at 4:45 p.m. on May 4.

This year

I'm planning to learn sign language this year. My girlfriend's brother can't hear well, so we can't communicate easily. I'd like to know sign language so we can talk to each other.

Posted by **Enzo** at 5:05 p.m. on May 4.

I hope to run a half-marathon for charity, so I need to get in shape. I don't play sports or exercise very often, but this year is going to be different. I'm going to exercise every day!



Posted by **Aisha** at 5:40 p.m. on May 4.

Next year

I'm going to try to finish my studies in environmental science in college. I have four more classes to go, and then I graduate! Then I'd really like to teach my subject at a high school. I don't know where, maybe Florida or Texas.

Posted by **Ximena** at 5:55 p.m. on May 4.

I hope to go to Cambodia next year because I want to see Angkor Wat. It's the biggest temple in the world and it's about 900 years old! It's an amazing place in the middle of the forest. I'm very excited about the trip and I'm going to take lots of photos.



Posted by **Max** at 6:30 p.m. on May 4.

In the future

I'd like to live in my own apartment in the future. Right now, I'm living with my parents and I'm sharing a room with my younger brother. I'm 23 now, and I really need to have my own bedroom!

Posted by **Kenji** at 10:30 p.m. on May 4.

I'm working as a chef in a big hotel in Santiago de Chile, but I hope to have my own restaurant one day. I'd like to open a vegetarian restaurant. I know many people prefer meat or fish, but vegetarian food can be really delicious.

Posted by **Diana** at 9:15 a.m. on May 5.

12 A biography

a Read the biography of an actor. What information is included in each paragraph?

acting awards childhood early career first acting experience
first roles on screen Hollywood career

Paragraph 1 _____ _____
Paragraph 2 _____ _____
Paragraph 3 _____ _____

Daniel Kaluuya

1 **Daniel Kaluuya** is a British actor. He was born in 1989 in London, and he grew up there with his mother and his older sister. His mother is from Uganda. Daniel became interested in acting when he was a child. He wrote a play when he was nine, and it won a competition. Later, he attended acting classes after school, and he appeared in several plays.

2 Daniel continued to act when he left school. He worked with the Royal Court Theatre in London, and he acted in the play *Sucker Punch*. He also played small parts in popular British TV shows and movies like *Black Mirror* and *Johnny English Reborn*.

3 Then, in 2017, Daniel played Chris Washington in the American movie *Get Out*. The movie was a great success and it made him famous. In 2018, he played W'Kabi in the Marvel superhero movie *Black Panther*. In 2021, he played Fred Hampton in *Judas and the Black Messiah* and he won many awards, including an Oscar for Best Supporting Actor. Today, he is one of the most famous actors in Hollywood.



b Read the biography again. Number the events 1–8 in the correct order.

- [ ] Daniel became famous.
- [ ] Daniel wrote a play.
- [ ] Daniel began to act in TV shows.
- [ ] Daniel was born in London.
- [ ] Daniel began to make movies in the US.
- [ ] Daniel acted in his first play.
- [ ] Daniel won his first Oscar.
- [ ] Daniel went to acting classes after school.

Life events

We use a range of verbs and phrases in a biography to write about the events in a person's life, e.g., *be born*, *grow up*, *become interested in* (*acting*).

c Read the information box. Then complete the phrases below with the base form of the highlighted verbs in the biography.

1 be born in 1989
2 _____ in London
3 _____ interested in acting
4 _____ a competition / an award / an Oscar
5 _____ acting classes
6 _____ / _____ in a play / a movie / a TV show
7 _____ school
8 _____ a part in a play / a movie / a TV show

d Plan a biography about an actor you like. Plan three paragraphs. Make notes to answer the questions below.

1 When and where were they born?
2 Where did they grow up and who with?
3 When did they become interested in acting?
4 Where did they learn how to act?
5 What did they do in their early career, before they became famous?
6 When did they become famous and what for?
7 What plays / movies / TV shows have they appeared in recently?
8 Have they won any awards? What for?

e Write the biography. Use your notes in **d** and the language in the information box.

f Check your spelling and grammar. Make sure you organize the information in the correct order and use a range of verbs to describe the actor's life events.

p.101

Listening

1.12

1 **A** A turkey and cheese sandwich, please.
B That's $9.15.
2 **A** So, Anna, your classes are on Tuesday and Thursday mornings.
B *Qué*? Sorry?
A Your classes are on Tuesday and Thursday mornings.
3 The JetBlue flight to Burbank is now boarding at Gate number 5.
4 **A** Where to?
B 16 Manchester Road, please.
5 **A** Here's your key. Room 12.
B Thank you.
6 **A** Here we are.
B Oh no! It's closed.
A Look, it says, "Closed on Monday."

1.24

1 **Announcer** The 6:12 train to Poughkeepsie, making stops at Harlem, Beacon, New Hamburg, and Poughkeepsie is departing from Track 30.
A That's our train. Track 30. Come on.
B OK. Let's go.
2 **A** Excuse me! How far is it to Austin?
B It's about 40 miles.
A Thanks a lot.
3 **A** Just one more game. Come on!
B 15–love.
A Great serve!
4 **A** Will all passengers on Delta flight 1182 to Portland please go to Gate 16 immediately.
B Gate 16. Is that our flight?
C No, it's to Portland, Maine, not Portland, Oregon.
5 **A** How much is that?
B Two slices of pizza, a salad, and a soda. That's $17.
6 **A** What's your address?
B It's 80 Park Street.
A Sorry?
B 80, eight–oh. Park Street.
7 **A** OK, be quiet, please. Open your books to page 90.
B What page?
C Page 90.

1.35

John Legend isn't his real name. His real name is John Roger Stephens.
Billie Eilish is her real name. Her full name is Billie Eilish Pirate Baird O'Connell.

2.4

1 On my desk I have my computer. I have some pens and pieces of paper. I have a lamp and a photo of my family. Oh, and a phone. It's very neat.
2 In my study I have a desk, a table, and two chairs. I have a lot of books and a big dictionary on the desk – it isn't very neat! And I have a map of the world on the wall.
3 I have a lot of things in my bag. I have my phone. I have the charger for my phone. I have my sunglasses, tissues, and a mask. And I have my house keys and my change purse.

2.13

Lisa The Highland Hotel's 20 miles from here.
Mel Fine. No problem. Let's go there.
Lisa Yes. Alfie's asleep now.
Mel Great.
Lisa Mel! Look! A police car!
Mel OK, OK.
Police officer Good evening. Turn off the engine, please. Thank you. Can I see your driver's license? Thank you.
Mel What's the problem, officer?
Police officer One of your back lights isn't on.
Mel Oh. I'm very sorry, officer. We're on our way to the Highland Hotel. We're very close to it now. And we have a baby.
Police officer Ah, what a beautiful baby! What's his name?
Lisa Alfie.
Police officer Oh, sorry! OK...go to your hotel. But please drive slowly. And fix your light. There's a garage near the hotel.
Mel Yes – thank you, officer.
Police officer Goodbye. Goodbye, Alfie!
Mel Good job, Alfie...

3.13

Part 1
Host Hello, everybody, and welcome to today's *What's My Job?* On team A, we have Nadine, Tyler, and James, and on the B team, Alice, George, and Charlie.
Team A, you start. Today's mystery guest is Mike. You each say who Mike is and what he does, but only one story is true. Team B, you need to decide who Mike really is. Remember, you have one minute to ask Team A questions, and then 30 seconds to ask Mike questions. Are we ready?
Teams A and B Yes! Ready.
Host So, let's welcome Mike. Team A. Nadine, please introduce him.
Nadine Mike's my hair stylist. We like to chat a lot.
Host And, Tyler, please introduce Mike...
Tyler Mike's my dentist. He's a very good dentist.
Host And finally, James, please introduce Mike...
James Mike's the chef at my local restaurant. I often have lunch or dinner there.
Host OK, Team B. You have one minute to ask Team A questions.

3.14

Part 2
Host OK Team B. You have one minute to ask Team A questions.
George Hmm... let's start with Nadine. Mike's your hair stylist, right?
Nadine Yes, we're very good friends.
George What's the name of his salon?
Nadine Uh, it's called... uh...Good Hair Day.
Charlie Is Mike married?
Nadine Uh, yes, he is.
Alice Does he have children?
Nadine Uh, yes, uh, no, he doesn't. I don't think he has children.
Alice OK, so now, Tyler. You say Mike's your
Tyler It's, uh, downtown, near the shopping mall.
Charlie Are you and Mike friends?
Tyler Well, no, not really friends. It's difficult to be friends with your dentist – it's impossible to have a conversation!
George Is he expensive?
Tyler What do you think? He's a dentist!
George OK, James now. You say Mike's a chef in a restaurant. What's the name of the restaurant?
James The Red Lion. It's a great restaurant.
Charlie What food does Mike cook?
James Uh, great French food! French onion soup, steak frites, things like that. And he makes good crepes.
Alice What's his specialty?
James Uh, spaghetti carbonara.
Host OK, team. Your time's up.

3.15

Part 3
Host OK, Team B, now you have 30 seconds to ask Mike questions. But remember, Mike can only answer *Yes* or *No*.
Alice Hello, Mike. Do you wear a uniform or special clothes?
Mike Yes, I do. Not a uniform, but special clothes.
George Do you have special qualifications?
Mike Yes, I do.
Charlie Do you work on a team?
Mike No. But sometimes other people help me.
Host Remember, Mike, you can only answer *Yes* or *No*.
Mike Oh, yes. Sorry.
Alice Do you work inside?
Mike Yes, I do.
George Do you work on the weekend?
Mike No, I don't.
Charlie Do you like your job?
Mike Yes, I love it. But people don't always like me!
Host Thank you, Mike. So, Team B, is Mike a hair stylist, a dentist, or a chef? You have one minute.

3.16

Part 4
Alice I think he's Nadine's hair stylist. He works inside, other people help him...
George But he doesn't work on weekends. Hair stylists work on Saturdays...
Alice Not all hair stylists.
Charlie He isn't a chef, I'm sure. Restaurants are full on weekends. And James says he cooks French food, but his specialty is spaghetti carbonara. That's Italian! I think he's a hair stylist, too.
George But Nadine says they are friends, and then she says, "I don't think he has children." She doesn't know. I think that's strange. I think he's Tyler's dentist. He has special qualifications, and remember, "People don't always like me." Nobody likes dentists.
Alice We need to agree.
Host Your time's up, Team B. So what's Mike's job?

Alice We think he's a hair stylist.
Host Mike, what do you do?
Mike I'm Tyler's dentist.
Host Yes, Mike is Tyler's dentist. He says nobody likes dentists, but we like you, Mike! Thank you very much, everyone!

3.17

Becca He's beautiful. Is he a fox terrier? Sorry, he or she?
Dave She. Yes, she's a fox terrier. Her name's Dolly. And your dog?
Becca He's a Labrador.
Dave What's his name?
Becca Barry. Barry, come here!
Dave Dolly. Here. Stop it.
Becca I think Barry likes her.
Dave Yes! Sorry, I'm Dave. What's your name?
Becca Becca. Hi.
Dave Nice to meet you, Becca! How old is Barry?
Becca Uh... He's, uh, two. And Dolly?
Dave Uh... The same. Hey, Dolly! Come back!

3.20

Becca Hi, Dave.
Dave Hi, Becca. Hi, Barry! So nice to see you both again!
Becca What a cute restaurant. I really like it. And look at all the dogs.
Dave I know, right! It has good food, too...for people and for dogs!
Becca Mmm. Sit, Barry. Good boy. Uh, where's Dolly?
Dave She isn't here. Uh, Becca, I need to tell you something. Dolly isn't my dog. She's my friend's dog. I sometimes help and take her for a walk.
Becca You don't have a dog?
Dave No. Uh...I don't like dogs very much. And my apartment's so small. I'm so sorry. I know you love dogs.
Becca Phew! Don't worry! Barry isn't my dog either! He's my sister's dog. I like dogs, but... in fact...I have two cats. How do you feel about cats?
Dave I love cats – in fact, I prefer cats to dogs! Let's sit down and order lunch.
Becca Great! So, what's good here?
Dave The spaghetti carbonara is fantastic – and so is the homemade chocolate ice cream!
Becca Yum! All for me this time!

4.8

Interviewer What time do you get up in the morning?
Darius I usually get up at about seven. That way I have time to exercise or go for a run, or even play squash before breakfast.
Interviewer What do you have for breakfast?
Darius Cereal and milk, and toast with honey or jam.
Interviewer Do you have classes every day?
Darius I have lectures in the morning every day except Friday. Lectures are classes for everybody who studies politics. Some of those are online. Then I also have tutorials on Thursday afternoon and Friday morning. Tutorials are small face-to-face classes.
Interviewer And what do you do when you don't have lectures or tutorials? Is that free time?
Darius No, I study! I have exams soon. I work in my room or I go to the university library.
Interviewer Where do you have lunch?
Darius I usually have lunch at the university at about one o'clock, but sometimes I just have a sandwich in a café in town.
Interviewer Do you go out in the evening during the week?
Darius Well, music is my main hobby. I'm in the university choir and I sing every evening from 6 to 7. I also play percussion in the university orchestra. After choir, I sometimes go out with friends, or we watch a movie, especially on weekends. But I often need to study in the evenings, too.
Interviewer Where do you have dinner?
Darius Sometimes I go to a restaurant with my friends, but usually I eat at the university. The food is actually pretty good. A lot of my friends cook, but I'm terrible at cooking.
Interviewer What time do you go to bed?
Darius At about eleven. I'm usually so tired I go to sleep right away. It's my last year, so all I really do these days is study, eat, and sleep.
Interviewer Do your parents come and visit you?
Darius My mother comes about once or twice a term. But I prefer to go home and see her there because I'm very messy, so when she comes to visit, I need to spend the whole day cleaning my room!

5.2

Amy 12:30 – In a long line outside the Conference Center.
Security guard Can I see your ID, please?
Amy Here's my passport.
Security guard Thanks. "Amy Jones." And I need to check your bag, please. OK, come in. Next, please!
Amy 12:45 – In the waiting area with 350 other singers!
Organizer 1 OK, Amy, sit here and wait until we call your name.
Amy Thanks.
Organizer 1 Are you here for the audition, too?
Friend No, I'm not. I'm Amy's friend. Can I wait with her?
Organizer 1 Yeah, sure.
Friend Thanks.
Amy Let's sit here. I'm so nervous...
Organizer 1 Matteo Ricci, Jada Jackson, Tony Cash, come with me, please. This way.
Amy Good luck!
Amy 4:00 – Three hours later! My turn at last!
Organizer 2 Amy Jones, Naomi Williams, Dan Elliot? Can you come with me, please? It's your turn now.
Amy Oh my goodness! It's my turn.
Friend Good luck, Amy! You can do it!
Amy Excuse me. Can my friend come with me?
Organizer 2 No, she can't. She can wait there. And you can't take your bag into the audition. Leave it with your friend.
Amy OK.
Amy 4:15 – In the audition, with two judges. Really nervous!
Judge Amy...Jones? What's your song?
Amy *One Day.*
Judge We can't hear you. Is the microphone on?
Amy Sorry. Sorry. Can you hear me now?
Judge Yes, that's fine.
Amy My song's *One Day.*
Judge Can you start, please?
Amy Oh no! I can't remember the first line.
Judge Take your time.
Amy I'm OK now!

5.9

Neighbor Oh, hello, Isabel. Come in! We're having a party. It's my birthday!
Isabel Oh! Uh, happy birthday!
Neighbor Thanks. Would you like a drink?
Isabel Actually, I want to talk to you about the noise.
Neighbor Sorry?
Isabel The NOISE. It's very noisy.
Neighbor Yes. We're having a great time! Do you want a soda? Or a glass of iced tea?
Isabel Oh, well, yes, OK. A soda, please.
Neighbor Here you are. Come and meet my friends. Hey, everyone, say hello to Isabel. She lives next door!
All Hello, Isabel.
Isabel Hello.
Neighbor I love this song! Come and dance, Isabel...!
Isabel I really can't dance.
Neighbor Come on...
Isabel Oh, OK.

5.11

A Good afternoon. How can I help you?
B Hello. I have a reservation for two nights.
A Your name?
B Carter.
A Carter. Here we are. Can you sign here, please? Here's your key card. You're in room 212, on the second floor.

5.12

1 **A** Can I help you?
B Yes, I'd like a latte, please.
A Regular or large?
B Large, please.
A For here or to go?
B For here.
A That's $3.40, please.
B Here you are. $3.40.

2 **A** Where are my car keys? I can't find them anywhere.
B I don't know. In your jacket pocket?
A No, they aren't there.
B How about on the hall table?
A No.
B Are you sure you don't have them?
A Absolutely sure.
B Look in the living room.

3 **A** Oh no, it's 20 minutes late.
B Is there a waiting room somewhere? It's really cold here on the platform.
A No, I don't think so.
B What time is it now?
A 6:15. We can take the 6:20, but it's a slow train.
B No, let's wait, then.

4 OK, come on, everyone, out here. Stand together under the tree. OK! Are you ready? Carole, I can't see you. Can you stand next to Jim? OK, ready? Say cheese!

5 **A** ...So, Mr. Bartlett. Do you have any questions you'd like to ask?
B Uh, yes. On the website it says the hours are from 10 to 6. What about the weekends?
A The hours are 10 to 6 on the weekends too, but you get paid overtime on Sundays. Saturday counts as a normal day. But if you work on a Saturday, you have a weekday free. The contract clearly says five days a week, with possibilities of overtime.
B Oh, right.

6.5

Part 3

Walid walks for five days through the mountains. The sun shines, and at night it's very cold. Then, one evening, he finds the palace. The prince welcomes him and gives him food and drink, and a comfortable bed. But Walid can't sleep. He's thinking about the 1,000 gold coins.

The next morning, he says to the prince, "I want to say thank you to you. Please have this silver ring. It's my mother's."

The prince is very happy. "This is a beautiful ring," he says. "Thank you. Let me give you something in return."

He gives Walid a box. "Don't open this until you get home," he says. "Be careful with it. It's very, very valuable."

Walid runs through the mountains, and after three days he arrives home.

"Where's my silver ring?" shouts his mother.

"Don't worry about your ring!" says Walid. "Look at this!"

Hassan and their mother watch as he opens the box. Inside he finds the glass bottle.

6.14

1 **A** Hi, Kim. Listen, do you want to come to the theater with me this Saturday?
B Saturday? I can't – it's my brother's 21st birthday! We're having a big party at my parents' house.
A Oh, that sounds great! Have a wonderful time – and say "happy birthday" from me!

2 **A** Are you in the office next week?
B No, I'm on vacation.
A Where are you going?
B Australia!
A Lucky you! When do you get back?
B On the 30th.
A Wow! That's a long vacation.
B Yeah, three weeks! I can't wait.

3 **A** You drink a lot of coffee!
B Yes, this is my fifth this morning.
A It's not good for you, you know.
B I know, but I can't wake up without it.

4 **A** Where's the restaurant?
B It's not far. It's on the corner of Park Avenue and 53rd.
A Great. See you there at 7:30.

5 **A** Good morning. I'm here to see Maria Diaz. My name's Brian Sanders.
B Just a moment, sir, I'll call her... Hi, Maria. There's a Mr. Sanders here to see you... OK, sir. Could you sign in here? Great. You can go right up. She's on the sixth floor. The elevators are over there.
A Thank you.

7.8

So, this happened some years ago. I was 19, and that summer I ended a relationship with my boyfriend. I wanted to travel as far away as possible, but I needed to get a job! I was lucky to find temporary work as a receptionist in California, so I booked my flights with a travel agent. I was really excited.

A few weeks later, just five days before my flight, I checked all my travel documents. Suddenly, I noticed a mistake. My name on the flight booking was Leanna, L-E-A-N-N-A, not Leanne, L-E-A-N-N-E. Just one small typo, but a very big mistake, because of course, the name on my ID was Leanne, and I was sure that was a problem. I immediately called the travel agent and asked them to change the name on the ticket. They weren't stressed at all, and suggested a solution. "Don't worry. We can cancel your ticket and then book you a new one for the same flight." It was expensive, but I decided to do it.

When I arrived at the check-in desk, I showed my ID to the assistant, but my name wasn't on the flight! I started to panic. I called the travel agent, and they discovered that it was their mistake. They talked to the woman at the check-in. I waited...and I waited... Finally, she handed me my boarding pass. I was on the flight! She even arranged transportation for me to get through security quickly, and to my gate.

I was the last person to board the plane, but when I was in my seat, I finally started to relax. At last, I was on the biggest adventure of my life! And the trip ended well – to my great surprise, when I arrived, my suitcase arrived with me! An absolute miracle!

7.13

Friend What was your best ever New Year's Eve? One you always remember?
Denisa Oh, definitely 2014, when I was in Rio.
Friend Who were you with?
Denisa I was with my boyfriend Marcelo, who's Brazilian.
Friend Why was it so special?
Denisa Well, Brazil has special traditions for New Year's Eve, and they were all new for me. For example, it's a Brazilian tradition to wear white clothes for New Year's Eve because white is a symbol of peace, so I wore a beautiful white dress that Marcelo's mother bought me. I have a photo somewhere on my phone. Yes, here, look!
Friend How pretty. So what did you do?
Denisa Uh, let me think. Well, first we had a typical New Year's Eve dinner with Marcelo's family. And then, I guess it was about ten, we got a bus to Copacabana.
Friend What was the atmosphere like there?
Denisa Oh, it was amazing! The streets were already full of people. We went to a show at a place near the beach. It was great, and we danced the samba.
Friend Wow. Were you there at midnight?
Denisa No, no. When we saw it was almost midnight, we went to the beach, and the typical countdown started, you know – ten, nine, eight...Happy New Year! Everywhere we heard the sound of people celebrating, and we watched the wonderful fireworks.
Friend It sounds great. What did people do when the fireworks finished?
Denisa Most people went to other parties, or they went home.
Friend And what about you?
Denisa We decided to go to a different beach, a beach called Praia do Arpoador, and we took our first swim of the new year. It was magical.

8.8

Barbara Now, let's go upstairs. Follow me. Be careful. The ceiling is very low here.
Leo It's a very old house.
Barbara Yes, the house is 300 years old. My family lived here for nearly 80 years. There are six bedrooms. This was my father's bedroom.
Kim Is there heat in the house?
Barbara Yes, there is. Why do you ask? Are you cold?
Kim Yes, it's very cold in here.
Leo That's because we're from California.
Barbara Let's go and see the other bedrooms.
Leo Yes, of course. ... Well, what do you think, Kim? I love it! Don't you?
Kim I'm not sure. There's something about the house I don't like.
Leo Kim, it's perfect for the kids. Think of the yard. And it's a real authentic country house. What do you say?
Kim I suppose so. If you're sure.
Leo I am sure! Miss...uh, Barbara. We want it. We want to rent the house.
Barbara Excellent.
Leo When can we move in?
Barbara As soon as you like.

8.10

Leo Hello.
Server Good evening, sir, madam. What can I get you?
Kim How about a coffee? I'm still cold.
Server Yes, madam. And you, sir?
Leo You know, I'm cold, too. I'll also have a coffee, thanks.
Server Here you are!
Leo Well, here's to our new house!
Kim Yes!
Server You're new around here, aren't you?
Leo Yes, that's right.
Kim We just rented the big house on Darwin Road.
Server Which house? The Travers family's house?
Leo Yes.
Server Oh.
Leo Is something wrong?
Server Who showed you the house?
Kim Barbara. The old lady who lived there before.
Server Ahh. Barbara. Old Mr. Travers's daughter. Some people thought that she was the one who did it.
Kim The one who did what? What happened?
Server Didn't she tell you?
Leo Tell us what?
Server About the murder.
Leo and Kim Murder?!
Server Yes, Mr. Travers was murdered in that house in 1965...in his bed.
Kim Oh, how horrible!
Server The man who killed Mr. Travers was Barbara's lover. The family never lived there again. They tried to sell the house, but nobody wanted to buy it. Not after a murder. That's why that house is always rented. Barbara never married, of course.
Leo Kim?
Kim Yes?
Leo Are you thinking what I'm thinking?
Kim Yes – I don't want to live in a house where somebody was murdered. Come on. Let's go.
Server Hey, hey, your coffee! You didn't drink your coffee...Ah, well.

8.14

1 We stayed at the Hollywood Roosevelt for two nights. It's a really nice place – a very elegant, very "LA" hotel. The service, atmosphere, and room were excellent, and we really enjoyed our stay. But we had a really strange experience. On the first night, we woke up at 3:30 in the morning. There was a strange noise outside our door, like someone softly playing a trumpet. To tell you the truth, we were a little bit frightened. Why would someone play the trumpet in the middle of the night? Then we thought that

it was probably another guest in the hall, and maybe they were listening to music on their cell phone or something, and we went back to sleep. But on the second night, the same exact thing happened. So, we just thought, strange, maybe it's because it's an old hotel and the walls are thin. But when we got home, we told the story to a friend, and he told us that the Hollywood Roosevelt is haunted. We looked on the internet, and we read that people say that room 928 has a ghost! And our room was 926, the next room! We sent an email to the Hollywood Roosevelt and told them about it, and they sent us some really interesting information about the ghost stories. We'd really like to stay in this fantastic hotel again, but maybe not in room 926!

2 I stayed at the Hollywood Roosevelt in May of last year with my husband. It's a beautiful hotel, with a great location. It's right on Hollywood Boulevard. We were in a room on the eighth floor. We knew that people said there were ghosts, and we knew about room 928, but we weren't worried at all. We had a nice meal at a nearby restaurant and then we went to bed. But in the middle of the night – about 3:00 in the morning – we suddenly woke up and we could hear loud noises from the room above us. They were really loud noises – like people were dropping their heavy suitcases on the floor. Anyway, after two or three minutes, the noises stopped and we went back to sleep. There weren't any more strange noises, and we slept for the rest of the night. The next morning, we went to reception and said, "We slept very poorly last night – the people in the room above us made so much noise." The man at reception asked for our room number and said, "Let me check." He looked on the computer and he said, "The room above you is empty." So I said, "Are you sure?" And he said, "Yes. The room above yours is room 928. There wasn't anybody in that room last night." We checked out of the hotel the same morning. Never again!

9.3

1 This is for my foodie friends. In case you thought lettuce was only for salads, here I'm cooking it in some butter with an onion. Then I add some mushrooms, chicken, fresh tomatoes, and some other things – not sure yet. Lettuce is also great in soups, or you can grill it and serve it with blue cheese.

2 We didn't feel like cooking last night, and besides, we didn't have any food in the house, so we decided to order some take-out salads from our wonderful local pizzeria. They were all very good, but my favorite was a chicken salad, with carrots, tomatoes, peppers, lettuce, and some pieces of fried bread.

3 Brunch, Sunday afternoon, at a restaurant in the East Village, called Timna. We had lots of different sharing plates. I loved everything, especially this dish called *shakshuka*, which is North African, and it's basically eggs in a tomato sauce, but the mixture of herbs and spices makes it taste great. And the bread we had to dip in the sauce was wonderful, too. Go there. Soon.

4 OK guys, this is it! Our Thanksgiving dinner – which we had at 6:30 last night. All the usual things: turkey with cranberry sauce, mashed potatoes, sweet potatoes, lots of vegetables, and more...and more... We thought about going to a restaurant this year, maybe having seafood, but then we decided, no, we like homemade and traditional, so we stayed at home and cooked together. I now need to spend a few hours on the sofa before I even think of going to bed. So how was yours?

9.11

Host Question 1. How many US episodes were there of the TV quiz show *Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?* Is it a) 33, b) 339, or c) 3,398?

Assistant The answer is...3,398. There were 3,398 US episodes of the TV quiz show *Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?*

Host Question 2. How many places in the US have a quiz night? Is it about a) 100, b) 1,000, or c) 10,000?

Assistant The answer is... 10,000. About 10,000 places have a quiz night in the US.

Host Question 3. What is the most money that somebody won on a TV quiz show in the US? Is it a) $2,520,700, b) $12,520,700, or c) $22,520,700?

Assistant The answer is...$2,520,700. The most money that somebody won on a TV quiz show in the US is $2,520,700.

9.13

Host Good evening. Welcome to *Quiz Night*. Our first contestant is Eddie from Washington, DC. Hi, Eddie. Are you nervous?

Eddie No, not really. I think I'm, uh, ready.

Host Well, let's hope so. The rules are the same as always. I'm going to read you some sentences, and you have ten seconds to say if the sentence is true or false. If you get the first answer right, you win $100. Then for each correct answer, you double your money, so if you get the second answer right, you win $200, and for the third correct answer, you win $400. For eight correct answers, you win $12,800. But if you get an answer wrong, you lose all the money. Remember, you can also call a friend, so if you're not sure about one of the answers, you can call your friend to help you. Is that OK, Eddie?

Eddie Yeah, OK.

9.14

Host OK, Eddie, first question for $100. A wolf can make a louder noise than a lion. True or false?

Eddie A wolf can make a louder noise than a lion. Uh, false, I'd say.

Host Correct. Wolves make a sound of approximately 90 decibels when they howl, whereas a lion's roar is about 114 decibels. Now, for $200: Stonehenge, the stone circle in southwest England, is older than the Pyramids of Giza in Egypt. True or false?

Eddie Uh, I think it's true.

Host Correct! It's true. The construction of Stonehenge began about 5,000 years ago, but the construction of the pyramids actually began about 450 years later. Next, for $400, the island of Cuba is bigger than the island of Iceland.

Eddie I think it's true. Cuba is much bigger than people think. So yes, it's true.

Host Correct, though it's not by much. Cuba is 42,803 square miles and Iceland is 39,768 square miles. Next, for $800: Ireland is wetter than Brazil. True or false?

Eddie Ireland is wetter than Brazil. Uh, false. I know it rains a lot in Ireland, but Brazil has rainforests, so I'm sure it rains more there.

Host Correct! The average rainfall in Brazil is 69 inches a year, and in Ireland it's only 44. Well, I say *only*, but it's still a lot! Good job, Eddie, that's four correct answers so far. Next, for $1,600: a baby elephant is heavier than an adult panda. True or false?

Eddie Uh, true. No, uh, false. Uh, I'm not sure.

Host Do you want to call a friend?

Eddie No, I think it's true. I know baby pandas are tiny, and maybe even full-grown ones aren't as heavy as we might think. I'm saying it's true.

Host Correct! A newborn baby elephant can weigh as much as 264 pounds, but an adult panda never weighs more than 250 pounds. OK, for $3,200, life in New York is more expensive than life in Paris.

Eddie Uh, true. I'm pretty sure New York is more expensive.

Host Correct! New York is usually in the top five on the list of expensive cities to live in, along with Hong Kong and Singapore. Paris is still expensive, of course, but it's a lot cheaper than New York right now. OK, Eddie, now question seven, for $6,400 – the mountain K2 is more difficult to climb than Mount Kilimanjaro. True or false?

Eddie Uh, I think that's true. I know K2 is incredibly dangerous.

Host Good job, Eddie. Twenty-five percent of the people who climb K2 die, usually on the way down, but fewer than 1% of the people who climb Kilimanjaro die. And finally, the last question. Be very careful, Eddie. If you get it right, you win $12,800, but if you get it wrong, you get nothing. Are you ready?

Eddie Yes, ready.

Host OK, for $12,800: white chocolate is better for you than milk chocolate.

Eddie Uh...uh...

Host I need your answer, Eddie.

Eddie I think it's true, but I'm not sure. I want to call a friend.

Host OK, Eddie. So, who do you want to call?

Eddie Uh, my dad, Brian.

Host OK, then. Hello, is this Brian?

Mia No, it's Mia.

Host Uh, I'm calling from *Quiz Night*. Is Brian there?

Mia Dad's not here. I'm Eddie's sister. I can help.

Host OK, Mia, Eddie needs some help. You have 30 seconds, Eddie. Here she is.

Eddie OK...Hi, Mia, listen...

Mia Hi, Eddie.

Eddie It's the last question in the quiz. "White chocolate is better for you than milk chocolate." I think it's true.

Mia Uh, OK, I'm sure there's more sugar in white chocolate. I think it's false.

Eddie Um, I don't think so. I think white chocolate is healthier.

Mia I'm right on this one, Eddie.

Eddie Um, OK, uh, really difficult, I can't decide.

Host Time's up, I'm afraid. OK, Eddie. So, true or false?

Eddie Uh, oh, I don't know, I don't think she's right. I'm going to say true.

Host Final answer?

Eddie Final answer. True.

Host I'm sorry, Eddie, it's false. In 100 grams of white chocolate, there are 59 grams of sugar; in milk chocolate, it's 52 grams. Eddie, you had $6,400, but now you go home with...nothing.

10.9

Journalist

Vienna left Italy in April 2022, and when I spoke to her again, she was in Kazakhstan. By December 2024, she hoped to reach Mongolia, where the true story of Marco Polo began. We asked her if she had any plans for more traveling, and she said, "In the future, I'd like to travel around the world. But nothing is certain."

10.11

You're thinking of taking a vacation or traveling somewhere nice – but there are so many different ways of traveling, and thousands of places to go. Where do you start? Why not follow these three simple steps to find the right vacation for you.

Step 1. Think about what you want to do on your vacation.

The first thing people usually try to decide is where they want to go, but it's probably better to start by thinking about what you want to do.

Do you want to relax? Then think about how you relax. For example, do you like reading, or doing yoga, or do you like doing something more active?

Do you want to visit an exciting new city, or see some scenery and animals that are different from where you live? Seeing something completely new is a great way to forget about your normal life.

Do you want to go on an adventure? Perhaps you're dreaming about climbing Mount Fuji or living in Kenya with the Maasai people. You could use your vacation to make one of those dreams come true.

Do you want to learn something new? Not everybody wants to sit in a classroom learning a new language or be in a kitchen learning to cook when they're on vacation, but some people love it. And nowadays you can take courses in many countries and experience a different culture at the same time.

So now, Step 2. Think about the people you're going to go with.

Are they family or friends? Do they have children? What do they want to do? People have different needs and interests, and if you're all going to enjoy the vacation, you need to make sure you all want the same things. But if what you really want to do is to meet new people, maybe it would be better to travel alone.

And finally, Step 3. Think about good vacations you had in the past.

Why were they good? Maybe it was the people you were with. Maybe it was something you learned, or an experience you had. What can you repeat from those vacations?

Of course, there are always other things you need to consider, like how much money you can spend, and how much time you can be away. But, first, follow these three steps, and then you're ready to start thinking about where you want to go.

10.14

Part 2

Mrs. Myers turned over the first card. "The seven of diamonds. That means money. You're going to be rich! And the jack of hearts! That's a good card. It means you're going to meet a young man."

"Ah," said Mrs. McCleary. "And what next?"

"The ten of spades," said Mrs. Myers, as she turned over the third card. "That means you're going to travel. But then," she exclaimed, "we have the king of clubs! Clubs always mean problems. Somebody's going to try to stop you. An old man..."

"Probably my father!" Mrs. McCleary exclaimed.

"But let's look at the last card," said Mrs. Myers. "Ah! The queen of hearts! You're going to fall in love with the young man. Dear Miss Jones, in one year's time, you're going to marry a very rich young man, a businessman – he travels a lot. An old man is going to try to stop your marriage, but he's not going to succeed. You're going to move far away from here, probably abroad. That will be one pound, please."

"Thank you so much," said Mrs. McCleary. She took a pound from her purse and gave it to Mrs. Myers.

"Thank you," said Mrs. Myers. "Goodbye, my dear Miss Jones...Next, please!"

When Mrs. McCleary got home, she told her husband everything. "I don't like it," Inspector McCleary said. "What should we do about her? I know! I'll report her."

And that's what Inspector McCleary did.

10.16

Part 4

About a year later, Judge Kelly met Inspector McCleary. "Nice weather we're having," said the judge. "By the way, how's Mrs. McCleary?"

Inspector McCleary looked sad. "Well, sir," he said, "Mrs. McCleary...the thing is...she left me."

"No! Really?" said the judge. "I thought she was a wonderful young woman."

"That was just the problem," said McCleary sadly. "A young man fell in love with her. He was a millionaire businessman from Melbourne. They left for Australia last week."

11.8

Jackson, 17

I What kind of phone do you have?
J An iPhone 14.
I How old is it?
J I'm not sure how old it is. I got it in August, but it was my mom's old phone.
I How often do you change phones?
J Probably every eighteen months to two years.
I What do you use your phone for the most?
J Texting friends and social media.
I How often do you make actual phone calls?
J Almost never.
I What apps do you use a lot?
J I play a lot of sudoku. I have a sudoku app.
I Do you have any unusual apps on your phone?
J Not really. I think all my apps are pretty normal.

Sophie, 40

I What kind of phone do you have?
S It's a Samsung phone.
I How old is it?
S About a year old, I think.
I How often do you change phones?
S I hate changing phones, so not often. Unfortunately, my last phone only lasted three years because the battery stopped working.
I What do you use your phone for the most?
S I checked this on my phone, and it said mainly Google. I research places I'm going to go to, I check my email, I plan trips using Google Maps, I look for reviews for things I'm thinking of buying, I look up meanings of words, I use Google Translate. All on Google.
I How often do you make actual phone calls?
S Once in a blue moon.
I What apps do you use a lot?
S I also checked this, and it said a game called Tile Match! I was really surprised!
I Do you have any unusual apps on your phone?
S I use an app called FlightTracker to pass the time while I'm waiting for a flight or waiting to meet someone. You can follow the path of a plane when it's coming toward the airport. I also have an app for jigsaw puzzles. It's really relaxing to do jigsaw puzzles on your phone. Who knew!

Rose, 65

I What kind of phone do you have?
R I think it's an iPhone 13. An iPhone, anyway.
I How old is it?
R I got it about two years ago.
I How often do you change phones?
R Every three or four years, usually because the battery isn't working very well.
I What do you use your phone for the most?
R Texting people, checking the news and weather, sometimes Google Maps for directions, calling taxis, taking photos, listening to the radio. Oh, and I sometimes play solitaire.
I How often do you make actual phone calls?
R Very rarely. Only to family or friends when I get bored of writing really long messages.
I What apps do you use a lot?
R WhatsApp, Uber, and other taxi apps I have, the camera, BBC News, BBC Sounds (that's the radio app). And banking apps.
I Do you have any unusual apps on your phone?
R I have an app for identifying birds by recording their songs and another to identify flowers by taking a photo. I sometimes use them when I go for a walk in the country.

12.6

A Yes, I have. I drive a lot for my job, several hours a day, and I like listening to books – it's much better than listening to the radio. I probably listen to a couple of books every week.
B Yes, I've seen *The Lord of the Rings* movies at least four times. They're really great movies, I never get tired of them, I always notice something new.
C Yes, I've definitely fallen asleep watching a movie on TV, but never in the movie theater.
D Yes, I have. I watched the complete fourth season of *Stranger Things* in one evening!
E No, I haven't. It usually takes me a long time to finish a book, so I never read them again.
F Yes, I loved *Encanto*, you know, the Disney movie, so I downloaded the soundtrack. It's got some great songs by a lot of different singers.

1A simple present verb *be* ⊞, subject pronouns

⊞ = affirmative form — 1.3

full form	contraction
I am a student.	**I'm a** student.
You are my partner.	**You're** my partner.
He is Dan.	**He's** Dan.
She is Jasmine.	**She's** Jasmine.
It is a salsa class.	**It's** a salsa class.
We are students.	**We're** students.
You are partners.	**You're** partners.
They are teachers.	**They're** teachers.

- In contractions, ' = a missing letter, e.g., *'m = am.*
- We use contractions in conversation and in informal writing, e.g., an email to a friend.
- We always use a subject pronoun (*you*, *he*, etc.) with a verb.
  ***It**'s a school.* **NOT** ~~*Is a school.*~~
  ***They**'re teachers.* **NOT** ~~*Are teachers.*~~
- We always use capital *I*. With other pronouns we only use a capital letter when it's the first word in a sentence.
  *He's Ed and **I**'m Jasmine.* **NOT** ~~*i'm Jasmine.*~~
- *you* = singular and plural.
- We use *he* for a man, *she* for a woman, and *it* for a thing.
- We use *they* for people and things.

1B simple present verb *be* ⊟ and ⊡

I'**m not** American. — 1.19
She **isn't** from London.
They **aren't** Spanish.
"**Are** you Turkish?" "Yes, I **am**."
"**Is** she Russian?" "No, she **isn't**."
"**Are** we in class 2?' "No, we **aren't**."

⊟ = negative form

full form	contraction	
I **am not**	I'**m not**	Canadian.
You **are not**	You **aren't**	Moroccan.
He / She / It **is not**	He / She / It **isn't**	American.
We **are not**	We **aren't**	
You **are not**	You **aren't**	
They **are not**	They **aren't**	

- We put *not* after the verb *be* to make negatives ⊟.
  *I'm **not** Canadian.*
- We can also contract *are not* and *is not* like this:
  *You**'re not** Canadian. She**'s not** Spanish.*

⊡ = question form | ☑ = affirmative short answer | ☒ = negative short answer

⊡ = question form		☑ = affirmative short answer		☒ = negative short answer	
Am I	Brazilian?	Yes,	I **am**.	No,	I'**m not**.
Are you	Turkish?		you **are**.		you **aren't**.
Is he / she / it	Thai?		he / she / it **is**.		he / she / it **isn't**.
Are we			we **are**.		we **aren't**.
Are you			you **are**.		you **aren't**.
Are they			they **are**.		they **aren't**.

- In questions we put *am*, *are*, *is* before *I*, *you*, *he*, etc.
  ***Are you** Brazilian?* **NOT** ~~*You are Brazilian?*~~
  *Where **are you** from?* **NOT** ~~*Where you are from?*~~
- We don't use contractions in affirmative short answers.
  *"Are you Turkish?" "Yes, **I am**." **NOT** "~~Yes, I'm.~~"*

1C possessive adjectives

I'm Peruvian.	**My** family is from Cusco.	1.33
You're in Class 1.	This is **your** classroom.	
He's the director.	**His** name is Michael.	
She's your teacher.	**Her** name is Tina.	
It's a language school.	**Its** name is English House.	
We're an international school.	**Our** students are from South America and Asia.	
They're French students.	**Their** names are Luc and Marie.	

- We use possessive adjectives for people and things.
  ***My family** is from Peru. **My car** is Japanese.*
- *his* = of a man, *her* = of a woman, *its* = of a thing.
- *their* = of people or things.
- Possessive adjectives don't change with plural nouns.
  ***our** students* **NOT** ~~*ours students*~~

it's or its?

Be careful with *it's* and *its*.

it's = it is — ***It's** a school.* / ***It's** American.*

its = possessive — ***Its** name is English House.* / ***Its** flag is red and yellow.*

1A

a Complete with *am*, *is*, or *are*.

I am Lucas.

1 We _____ from Manaus.
2 He _____ early.
3 They _____ teachers.
4 Today _____ Wednesday.
5 I _____ sorry.
6 It _____ a hotel.
7 You _____ in room 402.
8 She _____ a student.
9 My name _____ Carla.
10 I _____ in a taxi.

b Write the sentences with contractions.

He is late. He's late.

1 It is Friday. _____
2 They are at school. _____
3 I am well. _____
4 You are in my class. _____

c Write the sentences with a subject pronoun (*I*, *They*, etc.) and a contraction.

Mike and Hannah are students. They're students.

1 **Tom is** in room 5. _____ in room 5.
2 **Saray and I are** friends. _____ friends.
3 **Julia is** a teacher. _____ a teacher.
4 **The school is** in Oakland. _____ in Oakland.
5 **Nico and Fernanda are** in my class. _____ in my class.

p.9

1B

a Write negative sentences.

She's Australian. She isn't Australian.

1 I'm Irish. _____
2 They're Argentinian. _____
3 It's in South America. _____
4 You're Vietnamese. _____

b Make questions and short answers.

/ you American? Are you American? ✓ Yes, I am.

1 / I in room 10? _____ ✓ _____
2 / it Thai? _____ ✗ _____
3 / they students? _____ ✗ _____
4 / he from Nigeria? _____ ✓ _____
5 / you Jada Bell? _____ ✗ _____

c Complete the conversation. Use contractions, e.g., *'m*, *'s*, if possible.

A Hi. I'm Mark.
B Hello, Mark. My name [1]_____ Maria.
A [2]_____ you Spanish, Maria?
B No. I [3]_____ not. I [4]_____ from Mexico.
A [5]_____ you from Mexico City?
B No. I [6]_____ from Tijuana.
A [7]_____ Tijuana near Mexico City?
B No, it [8]_____. It [9]_____ in the North.
A [10]_____ you in class 1?
B No. I [11]_____ in class 2.

p.11

1C

a Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective.

My name's Gloria. I'm from Brazil.

1 The students are from Egypt. _____ names are Fatima and Ali.
2 She's in my class. _____ name is Rebecca.
3 We're in class 2. _____ teacher is Matt.
4 New York City is famous for _____ yellow taxis.
5 How do you spell _____ last name?
6 This is my teacher. _____ name is Oliver.
7 I'm from Bristol. _____ address is 28 North Street.
8 Sit down and open _____ books, please.
9 Laura is in my class. _____ desk is near the window.
10 We're from Dallas. _____ last name is Diaz.

b Circle the correct word.

Sam and Chris are friends. *They* / *Their* are in class 2.

1 She's a new student. *She* / *Her* name's Ipek.
2 Is *they* / *their* teacher Canadian?
3 My name's Soraya. I'm in *you* / *your* class.
4 Is *she* / *her* Chinese?
5 Peter is a teacher. *He* / *His* is from the US.
6 What's *he* / *his* name?
7 Where are *you* / *your* friends from?
8 We're French. *We* / *Our* names are Marc and Jacques.
9 I'm Karen. *I* / *My* last name is White.
10 *She* / *Her* is from Mexico City.

p.13

2A singular and plural nouns

a / an, plurals

singular nouns	plural nouns
It's **a** book.	They're **books**.
It's **a** watch.	They're **watches**.
It's **a** dictionary.	They're **dictionaries**.
It's **an** umbrella.	They're **umbrellas**.
It's **an** ID card.	They're **ID cards**.

2.2

- We use *a / an* with singular nouns.
- We use *an* with a noun beginning with a vowel (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*) sound.
- We use *a* with nouns beginning with *u* or *eu* when their sound is = /yu/, e.g., *a university*, *a euro*.
- We don't use *a / an* with plural nouns.
  They're books. **NOT** ~~*They're a books.*~~

the

*Look at **the** board.*
*Answer **the** questions.*

- We use *the* when we know which board, questions, etc.
  Look at the board. **NOT** ~~*Look at a board.*~~
- We use *the* with singular and plural nouns (*the board*, *the questions*).

Regular plurals

singular	plural	spelling
a book a key	book**s** key**s**	add *-s*
a watch a box	watch**es** box**es**	add *-es* after *ch*, *sh*, *s*, *x*
a country a dictionary	countr**ies** dictionar**ies**	consonant + *y* = ~~*y*~~ *-ies*

- We add *-s* (or *-es* or *-ies*) to make plural nouns.
  *It's a pen. They're pen**s**.*
- With two-word nouns, we add *-s* (or *-es* or *-ies*) to the second noun.
  *credit card, credit card**s*** **NOT** ~~*credits cards*~~

Irregular plurals

singular	plural
a man /mæn/	men /mɛn/
a woman /'wʊmən/	women /'wɪmən/
a child /tʃaɪld/	children /'tʃɪldrən/
a person /'pərsn/	people /'pipl/

2B adjectives

2.7

1 The **White** House is in Washington, DC.
  It's a **beautiful** picture.
  It's an **old** book.
2 They're **blue** jeans.
  We're **new** students.
3 She's **strong**.
  We aren't **rich**.
  Is your car **new**?
4 It's a **very big** city.
  We're **really tired**.

1 Adjectives go before a noun.
  It's a beautiful picture. **NOT** ~~*It's a picture beautiful.*~~
- If an adjective begins with a vowel in an adjective + noun phrase, we use *an*. **NOT** ~~*It's a old house.*~~

2 Adjectives don't change before a plural noun. *They're blue jeans.*
  NOT ~~*They're blues jeans.*~~

3 We also use adjectives after the verb *be*. The word order is:
  ➕ or ➖: subject, *be*, adjective, e.g., *My car's new. The computer isn't cheap.*
  ❓: *be*, subject, adjective, e.g., *Is your car new? Is the computer cheap?*

4 We often use *very* and *really* before adjectives.
  a *He's very* (or *really*) *tall.*
  b *He's tall.*
  c *He isn't very tall.*



2C imperatives, *let's*

2.14

1 **Open** the door. **Turn** right.
  Don't worry. **Don't stop**.
  Be quiet, please. Please **sit down**.
2 **Let's go** home. **Let's not** stop.

Can you...?

Use *Can you* + verb (base form) as a polite alternative to an imperative.

Open the window. → *Can you open the window, please?*

1 We use imperatives to tell somebody to do (or not do) something.
- ➕ imperatives = verb (base form).
  ➖ imperatives = *don't* + verb (base form).
- We add *please* to be polite.
  Open the door, please.
- We often use *be* + adjective in imperatives, e.g., *Be quiet.*, *Be careful.*, etc.
- We don't use a pronoun with imperatives.
  Be quiet. **NOT** ~~*You be quiet.*~~

2 We use *Let's* + verb (base form) to make suggestions.
  We use *Let's not* + verb (base form) to make negative suggestions.

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

2A

a Complete with *a* or *an*. Write the plural.

	singular		plural
	a	photo	photos
1	_____	window	_____
2	_____	key	_____
3	_____	ID card	_____
4	_____	country	_____
5	_____	watch	_____
6	_____	exercise	_____
7	_____	person	_____
8	_____	email	_____
9	_____	box	_____
10	_____	woman	_____

b Write sentences with *It's* or *They're* (and *a* or *an* if necessary).

	pen	It's a pen.
	buses	They're buses.
1	children	_____
2	change purse	_____
3	men	_____
4	umbrella	_____
5	sunglasses	_____
6	scissors	_____
7	charger	_____
8	dictionaries	_____
9	coin	_____
10	egg	_____

p.17

2B

a Circle the correct sentence.

He's a rich man. / He's a man rich.

1 It's a very big house. / It's a house very big.
2 Is Louis French? / Is French Louis?
3 It's a watch expensive. / It's an expensive watch.
4 Is it an easy exercise? / Is it an exercise easy?
5 Is Vietnamese your girlfriend? / Is your girlfriend Vietnamese?
6 These questions are very difficult. / These questions are very difficults.
7 Are they tickets cheaps? / Are they cheap tickets?
8 My new glasses are very good. / My news glasses are very goods.

b Put the words in the correct order.

is Chinese he ? Is he Chinese?

1 a day very It's hot
2 your Australian Is teacher ?
3 car fast isn't That very
4 a idea bad It's
5 Are students you good ?
6 easy is English very
7 strong My is brother really
8 train slow is This a

p.18

2C

a Complete with a verb from the list. Use a ➕ or a ➖ imperative.

be (x2) go have ~~open~~ read speak take watch ~~worry~~

A It's hot. **B** Open the window.
A I'm very sorry. **B** Don't worry. It's OK.

1 **A** I'm bored. **B** _____ a book.
2 **A** *Me puedes dar una copia, por favor?*
B This is an English class. Please _____ Spanish.
3 **A** I'm tired.
B It's late. _____ to bed.
4 **A** Is this show good?
B No, it isn't. _____ it.
5 **A** I'm hungry.
B _____ a sandwich.
6 **A** It's a dangerous street.
B Yes. _____ careful.
7 **A** It's raining.
B _____ an umbrella.
8 **A** It's dark. I'm frightened.
B _____ frightened. I'm here with you.

b Complete with *Let's* or *Let's not* and a verb from the list.

do go (x2) ~~look for~~ stop take turn off watch

I'm hungry. Let's look for a restaurant.

1 Come on, it's late. _____ home.
2 It's 11:00 p.m. _____ the TV and go to bed.
3 This exercise is difficult. _____ it together.
4 _____ a taxi. They're very expensive. The bus is fine.
5 There's a café _____ and have a coffee.
6 It's very cold. _____ to the movies. _____ a movie at home.

p.21

3A simple present ⊞ and ⊟

I **speak** English. 3.5
They **live** in an apartment.
My mother **cooks** great food.
I **don't drink** tea.
We **don't have** a garden.
He **doesn't play** the guitar.

⊞	⊟
I **work**.	I **don't work**.
You **work**.	You **don't work**.
He / She / It **works**.	He / She / It **doesn't work**.
We **work**.	We **don't work**.
They **work**.	They **don't work**.

- We use the simple present for things that are generally true or are habits.
- **Contractions:** *don't = do not*, *doesn't = does not*.
- To make negatives, we use *don't / doesn't* + verb (base form).
  *He doesn't **work**.* **NOT** ~~*He doesn't works.*~~

spelling rules for *he / she / it*	
I work / play / live.	He work**s** / play**s** / live**s**.
I watch / finish / go / do.	She watch**es** / finish**es** / go**es** / do**es**.
I study.	She studi**es**.

- The spelling rules for the *he / she / it* forms are the same as for regular plurals (see **Grammar Bank 2A** p.134).

Be careful with some *he / she / it* forms

I have	*he has* /hæz/ **NOT** ~~*he haves*~~
I go	*he goes* /goʊz/
I do	*he does* /dʌz/

3B simple present ?

"**Do** you live in New York?" "No, we **don't**." 3.9
"**Does** she work long hours?" "Yes, she **does**."

?	✓		✗	
Do I work?	Yes,	I **do**.	No,	I **don't**.
Do you work?		you **do**.		you **don't**.
Does he / she / it work?		he / she / it **does**.		he / she / it **doesn't**.
Do we work?		we **do**.		we **don't**.
Do you work?		you **do**.		you **don't**.
Do they work?		they **do**.		they **don't**.

- We use *do* (or *does* with *he*, *she*, *it*) + base form to make questions.
- The word order for simple present questions is auxiliary (*do*, *does*), subject (*I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, etc.), base form (*work*, *live*, etc.).

do* and *does

do = /du/, *does* = /dʌz/

do and *does* can be:

1 the auxiliary verb to make simple present questions.
__Do__ you speak English? __Does__ she live here?

2 a normal verb.
I __do__ my homework in the evening.
He __does__ yoga every day.

3C word order in questions

Questions with *be*

Question word / phrase	*be*	3.22
	Is	she from Peru?
	Are	your friends here?
What	's	your dog's name?
Where	's	your office?
How many students	are	in the class?
How	are	you?
How old	is	she?

- Remember the word order in questions with *be*. We put *be* before the subject.

Questions with other verbs

Question word / phrase	Auxiliary	Subject	Base form 3.23
	Do	you	live near here?
	Does	your mother	know?
What	do	you	do?
Where	does	he	live?
How many children	do	they	have?
What kind of music	does	she	like?
How	do	you	spell your last name?

- The word order for simple present questions with *do* and *does* is auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Do you live here?* **OR** question word, auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Where do you live?*
- We often use question phrases beginning with *What*, e.g., *What color...?*, *What time...?*, etc.

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

3A

a Change the sentences.

My mom drinks tea. I *drink tea*.

1 I go to the movies. She _____.
2 We live in a house. He _____.
3 She has two children. They _____.
4 My dad doesn't like cold weather. I _____.
5 The stores close at 9:00. The supermarket _____.
6 We don't study French. My sister _____.
7 My husband does housework. I _____.
8 I want a guitar. My son _____.
9 I don't work on Saturdays. My friend _____.
10 The show finishes at 5:00. Our classes _____.

b Complete the sentences with a ⊞ or a ⊟ verb.

eat have listen play read
speak ~~study~~ wear work

⊞ They *study* economics.
1 ⊟ Pedro _____ in an office.
2 ⊞ Eva _____ books in English.
3 ⊞ You _____ Arabic very well.
4 ⊟ I _____ games on my phone.
5 ⊞ Paolo _____ glasses.
6 ⊞ We _____ to music in the car.
7 ⊟ They _____ fast food.
8 ⊞ Julia _____ three children.

p.24

3B

a Complete the questions with *do* or *does*.

Do you work with a computer?
1 _____ you need a charger?
2 _____ you speak a foreign language?
3 _____ she have a dog?
4 _____ he work or study?
5 _____ school children in your country wear uniforms?
6 _____ Jamie study Chinese?
7 _____ your husband cook?
8 _____ it rain a lot in your country?
9 _____ people in your country listen to the radio a lot?
10 _____ Angela like her job?

b Make questions using a pronoun and the **bold** verb.

A She **works** on night. **B** *Does she work* on the weekend?
A I don't **play** the guitar. **B** *Do you play the* piano?
1 **A** He **likes** sports. **B** _____ tennis?
2 **A** She **speaks** foreign languages. **B** _____ Czech?
3 **A** I don't **eat** fast food. **B** _____ sushi?
4 **A** They **cook** Italian food. **B** _____ lasagna?
5 **A** Ana doesn't **live** in an apartment. **B** _____ in a house?
6 **A** I **want** a new phone. **B** _____ an iPhone?
7 **A** My dad **drives** a Ferrari. **B** _____ fast?
8 **A** Sarah **drinks** a lot of coffee. **B** _____ it with milk?
9 **A** We **have** two children. **B** _____ boys or girls?
10 **A** I don't **listen** to the radio. **B** _____ to music on your phone?

p.26

3C

a Put the words in the correct order.

English you study where do ?
Where do you study English?
1 languages how many do you speak ?
2 interesting is job your ?
3 color is his what car ?
4 brother your where work does ?
5 you with work computers do ?
6 like of what do kind you websites ?
7 do what does weekend he on the ?
8 stressed you your job are in ?
9 your where does sister live ?
10 do how English you say that in ?

b Complete the questions in the conversation.

A Who *do you live* with?
B I live with my parents.
A [1]What _____ your father _____?
B He's retired. My mother's a doctor.
A Where [2]_____?
B In Bristol. She works in a hospital there.
A [3]_____ your mother _____ her job?
B Yes, she loves it. She doesn't want to retire!
A [4]What _____ your father _____ during the day?
B He works in the garden, and he cooks in the evening.
A [5]_____ a good cook?
B Yes, he is. He makes very good curries.
A [6]_____ he also _____ housework?
B Yes, he does. I help, too.
A What [7]_____?
B I make breakfast and I clean the bathrooms.

p.29

4 Grammar Bank

4A possessive ’s, *Whose...?*

1 He’s Rihanna**’s** brother. 4.2
It’s James**’s** laptop.
2 It’s my parent**s’** car.
3 “**Whose** bag is this?” “It’s Maria’s.”
4 The end of the movie is fantastic.
I live near the city park.

1 We use a person + ’s to talk about family and possessions.
*He’s Rihanna**’s** brother.* **NOT** ~~*He’s the brother of Rihanna.*~~

2 With regular plural nouns we put the ’ after the *s*.
*It’s my parent**s’** car.* **NOT** ~~*It’s my parent’s car.*~~

- With irregular plural nouns, e.g., *children*, *men*, we use ’*s*, e.g., the *children’s room*, *men’s clothes*.

3 We use *Whose...?* to ask about possessions.
We can ask *Whose bag is this?* **OR** *Whose is this bag?*
We can answer *It’s Maria’s bag.* **OR** *It’s Maria’s.*

4 We don’t usually use a thing + ’*s*, e.g., *the end of the class* **NOT** ~~*the class’s end*~~, *the city park* **NOT** ~~*the city’s park*~~.

’s

Be careful with ’s. It can be two things:
Maria’s mother – ’s = of Maria *Maria’s Spanish* – ’s = is

Whose / Who’s

Who’s = Who is, e.g., ***“Who’s** that girl?” “She’s my sister.”*
Whose = of who, e.g., ***“Whose** bag is this ?” “It’s Jack’s.”*
Whose and *Who’s* are pronounced the same /huz/.

4B prepositions: time, place, and movement

Time

in	on	at 4.10
the morning	Monday (morning)	three o’clock
the afternoon	January 1	noon / midnight
the evening	the weekend	lunchtime
the summer		night
December		
2018		

- We use *in* for parts of the day, seasons, months, and years.
- We use *on* for days, dates, and *the weekend*.
- We use *at* for times of the day and *night*.

Place and movement

1 He has lunch **at** work. 4.11
He works **in** an office.
2 He goes **to** work by bus.

1 We use *at* and *in* for place.
- We use *at* + *work*, *home*, *school*, *the university*.
- We use *in* + other places, e.g., *a house*, *an office*, *a room*, etc.
- We can use *in* or *at* with some public places, e.g., *a restaurant*, *the movie theater*, etc.
*On Saturdays he usually has lunch **in** / **at** a restaurant.*

2 We use *to* for movement or direction.
*She goes **to** the gym.* **NOT** ~~*She goes at the gym.*~~
We don’t use *to* before *home*.
go home **NOT** ~~*go to home*~~

4C position of adverbs, expressions of frequency

1 I **always** watch TV in the evening. 4.17
Do you **usually** sleep for eight hours?
She **sometimes** plays sports.
He **often** has lunch at work.
She doesn’t **often** go to bed late.
2 They’re **hardly ever** late.
He isn’t **often** stressed.
Are you **usually** in this classroom?
3 I go to Italian classes **twice a week**.
She doesn’t work **every day**.

1 We use adverbs and expressions of frequency to say how often you do something.
“How often do you cook?” “I cook every evening.”
- Adverbs of frequency go before the main verb.
- In negative sentences the adverb of frequency goes between *don’t / doesn’t* and the verb.

2 Adverbs of frequency go after *be* in [+] and [–] sentences. In [?] with *be* the adverb of frequency goes after the subject.
- We use a [+] verb with *hardly ever* and *never*.
*He’s **never** stressed.* **NOT** ~~*He isn’t never stressed.*~~

3 Expressions of frequency usually go at the end of a sentence or verb phrase.

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

4A

a Look at the pictures. Answer the questions with a short sentence.





Whose laptop is this? It's Amal's laptop.

1 Whose magazines are these? _____
2 Whose watch is this? _____
3 Whose bike is this? _____
4 Whose glasses are these? _____
5 Whose bag is this? _____

b Circle the correct form.

Monica Cruz is *Penelope's sister* / *sister's Penelope*.

1 It's *my mother's birthday* / *my birthday's mother*.
2 That's *her grandparent's house* / *her grandparents' house*.
3 I'm tired when I go home at *the end of the day* / *the day's end*.
4 Those are *friends' my cousin* / *my cousin's friends*.
5 *The door of the classroom* / *The classroom's door* is open.
6 Those are *the students' desks* / *the desk's students*.

c Complete with *Whose* or *Who's*.

Whose charger is this?
Who's the man with dark hair?

1 _____ book is this?
2 _____ phone is that?
3 _____ your favorite singer?
4 _____ Ethan's girlfriend?
5 _____ umbrella is this?
6 _____ their English teacher?

p.32

4B

a Complete with *at*, *in*, or *on*.

on Saturday

1 _____ the evening
2 _____ September 22nd
3 _____ the summer
4 _____ 7:30
5 _____ night
6 _____ Wednesday afternoon
7 _____ the weekend
8 _____ January
9 _____ 2020

b Complete with *at*, *in*, or *to*.

They go to school by bus.

1 Sorry, Hassan isn't here. He's _____ work.
2 It's a beautiful day. Let's go _____ the beach.
3 Maya's boyfriend works _____ a factory.
4 My niece studies math _____ New York University.
5 I go _____ the gym on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
6 I work _____ an office.
7 We live _____ a modern apartment.
8 It's Monday. The children are _____ school.
9 My aunt is a doctor. She works _____ a hospital.
10 Jack isn't _____ home. He's with a friend.

p.35

4C

a Put the adverb of frequency in the correct place in the sentence.

They drive – they don't have a car. **never**
They never drive – they don't have a car.

1 I walk to work. **always**
2 Do you wear glasses? **usually**
3 I'm bored. **hardly ever**
4 She does housework. **sometimes**
5 We go to the movies. **hardly ever**
6 Why are you late? **always**
7 My partner is stressed. **never**
8 Does it rain in December? **often**

b Put the words in the correct order.

always she at six up gets She always gets up at six.

1 for late never I am class
2 eat ever fast hardly we food
3 what work you usually time do finish ?
4 parents pizza dinner often my have don't for
5 always brother lunchtime is my hungry at
6 don't homework always our we do
7 you the weekend usually friends do see on ?
8 hardly teacher angry is our ever

p.36

5A *can / can't*

1 **I can** sing, but **I can't** dance. 5.3
2 **I can** come on Tuesday, but **I can't** come on Wednesday.
3 **You can** park here. **You can't** park there.
4 **Can you** help me? **Can I** open the window?

- *can* + base form has different meanings:

1 *I can* (*sing*) = I know how to.
I can't (*dance*) = I don't know how to.
2 *I can* (*come*) = It's possible for me.
I can't (*come*) = It's not possible for me.
3 *You can* (*park here*) = It's OK. / It's permitted.
You can't (*park here*) = It's not OK. / It's not permitted.
4 *Can you* (*help me*)? = Please do it.
Can I (*open the window*)? = Is it OK if I do it?

+			−		
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**can**	swim. come. help.	I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**can't**	swim. come. help.

?			+			−		
Can	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	swim? come? help?	Yes,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**can.**	No,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**can't.**

- *can* and *can't* are the same for all persons (*I*, *you*, *he*, etc.).
NOT ~~*He cans.*~~
- **Contraction:** *can't* = *cannot*.
- We don't use *to* after *can*.
***I can swim.* NOT** ~~*I can to swim.*~~

5B present continuous

They're having a party next door. 5.10
Oh no! **The baby's crying.**
It's raining.
A What **are you doing**?
B **I'm waiting** for my brother.

+	−	
I'**m** You'**re** He / She / It'**s** We'**re** They'**re**	I'm **not** You **aren't** He / She / It **isn't** We **aren't** They **aren't**	**having** a party.

?			☑			✗	
Am I **Are** you **Is** he / she / it **Are** we **Are** they	**having** a party?	Yes,	I **am.** you **are.** he / she / it **is.** we **are.** they **are.**	No,	I'**m not.** you **aren't.** he / she / it **isn't.** we **aren't.** they **aren't.**

- We use the present continuous for things that are happening now.
- *At the moment* can mean *around now*.
I'm reading *a good book* ***at the moment***. (= not exactly now)
- We also use the present continuous with longer periods of time, e.g., *today*, *this week*, *this month*. The present continuous emphasizes that the action is temporary, not a habit.
I'm working *at home* ***this week*** *because my daughter isn't very well.*

base form	verb + *-ing*	spelling
cook, read study, try	cook**ing**, read**ing** study**ing**, try**ing**	+ *-ing*
dance, live	danc**ing**, liv**ing**	*e -ing*
shop, swim	shop**ping**, swim**ming**	one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + *-ing*

5C simple present or present continuous?

simple present	present continuous 5.15
It always **snows** here in the winter.	Look! It'**s snowing**.
What **do you** usually **do** at work?	What **are you doing** now?
My sister **works** in a bank.	Today she'**s working** at home.

What do you do? or What are you doing?
A *What* ***do you do****? (= What's your job?)*
B *I'm a teacher.*
A *What* ***are you doing?*** *(= now, at the moment)*
B *I'm waiting for a friend.*

- We use the **simple present** to say what we usually do, or things that are normally true.
- We often use the **simple present** with adverbs and expressions of frequency, e.g., *always*, *often*, *once a week*, etc.
- We use the **present continuous** to say what is happening now or around now.
- We often use the **present continuous** with *at the moment*, *today*, *this week*.

5A

a Complete the sentences with *can* or *can't* and the verbs.

I'm sorry. I can't remember your name. (remember)

1 My wife _____ French, but not Spanish. (speak)

2 _____ you _____ me? This box is very heavy. (help)

3 I _____ you tonight. I have a lot of homework. (see)

4 _____ I _____ the window? It's cold in here. (close)

5 _____ you _____ your email address, please? (repeat)

6 It says "No parking." We _____ here. (park)

7 Andy doesn't want to go to the beach. He _____. (swim)

8 _____ I _____ your charger? Mine is not in my bag. (use)

b Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of *can* or *can't*.

I know how to draw. I can draw.

1 It's possible for her to meet me after work.
She _____.

2 Please open the door.
_____ you _____?

3 My boyfriend doesn't know how to drive.
My boyfriend _____.

4 Is it OK if I use your scissors?
_____ I _____?

5 It's not permitted to take photos here.
You _____.

p.41

5B

a Write a question and an answer.



What's she doing? She's crying.

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

b Put the verbs in parentheses in the present continuous.

A Hello, Tina. Where are you?

B I'm in Seattle. I'm visiting (visit) my parents. I [1] _____ (stay) with them for a week. [2] What _____ you _____ (do)?

A I [3] _____ (look for) a job. At the moment, I [4] _____ (look) at job ads online.

B Good luck! [5] _____ you still _____ (live) with your parents?

A Yes. But I'm not at home very often. I'm usually at my girlfriend's house.

B [6]What _____ she _____ (do) now? [7] _____ she still _____ (study) drama?

A No, she [8] _____ (work) in a café, but she [9] _____ (not enjoy) it much. She [10] _____ (look for) a job as an actor.

B Well, maybe we can all get together next week.

A Good idea. How about Friday?

p.43

5C

a Circle the correct form.

A What *do you cook* / *are you cooking*? I'm really hungry.
B Spaghetti. We can eat in ten minutes.

1 **A** Hello. Is Martin at home?
B No, he isn't. *He plays* / *He's playing* soccer with his friends.

2 **A** *Do your parents live* / *Are your parents living* near here?
B Yes. They *have* / *are having* an apartment in the same building as me.

3 **A** How often *do you go* / *are you going* to the hair stylist?
B About once a month, when my hair *needs* / *is needing* a cut.

4 **A** Don't make so much noise! Your father *sleeps* / *is sleeping*!
B Is he OK? He *doesn't usually sleep* / *isn't usually sleeping* in the afternoon.

b Put the verbs in the simple present or continuous.

Look. It's raining. (rain)

1 **A** Hi, Sarah! What _____ you _____ here? (do)
B I _____ for a friend. (wait)

2 **A** Let's have lunch. _____ you _____ hamburgers? (like)
B No, sorry. I'm a vegetarian. I _____ meat. (not eat)

3 **A** Listen! The neighbors _____ a party again. (have)
B They _____ a party every weekend! (have)

4 **A** What _____ your husband _____? (do)
B He's a teacher. He _____ at the local school. (work)

p.44

6A object pronouns

subject pronoun	object pronoun	6.2
I	**me**	Can you help **me**?
you	**you**	I love **you**.
he	**him**	She doesn't love **him**.
she	**her**	He calls **her** every day.
it	**it**	I don't like **it**.
we	**us**	Wait for **us**!
they	**them**	Please help **them**.

- Pronouns take the place of nouns.
- We use **subject** pronouns when the noun is the subject of a verb (i.e., the person who does the action).
  ***Kai** is a dentist. **He** lives in Houston.*
- We use **object** pronouns when the noun is the object of a verb (i.e., the person who receives the action).
  *Ava knows **Kai**. She sees **him** every week.*
- Object pronouns go after the verb.
  I love you. **NOT** ~~*I you love.*~~

Object pronouns after prepositions

We also use object pronouns after prepositions (*with*, *to*, *from*, etc.).

*I'm in love with **her**.*
NOT ~~*I'm in love with she.*~~

*Give this money to **him**.*
NOT ~~*Give this money to he.*~~

6B *like* + verb + *-ing*

			6.15
😀	I **love**	**shopping**.	
🙂	I **like**	**going** to the movies.	
😐	I **don't mind**	**getting** up early.	
🙁	I **don't like**	**doing** housework.	
😠	I **hate**	**driving** at night.	

- We can use verb + *-ing* after *like*, *love*, *hate*, and *prefer*.
- We always use verb + *-ing* after *enjoy* and *don't mind*.
  *I enjoy watch**ing** soccer on TV, but I prefer be**ing** there.*

base form	verb + *-ing*	spelling
cook, read study, try	cook**ing**, read**ing** study**ing**, try**ing**	+ *-ing*
dance, live	danc**ing**, liv**ing**	~~*e*~~ *-ing*
shop, swim	shop**ping**, swim**ming**	one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + *-ing*

6C *be* or *do*?

be

	6.19
1	Hi. I**'m** Jim.
	She **isn't** very friendly.
	Are you Thai?
2	I can't talk. I**'m** driving.
	They **aren't** working today.
	Is it raining?

1 We use *be* as a main verb.

2 We also use *be* to form the present continuous. *Be* here is an auxiliary verb.

- Remember to put *be* before the subject to make questions.
  *He's Argentinian. **Is he** Argentinian?*

do / does

	6.20
1	I'm **doing** my homework.
	Do you always **do** your homework?
2	**Do** you speak English?
	Where **do** they live?
	They **don't** have children.
	Does your sister have a car?
	Where **does** your father work?
	Alan **doesn't** like jazz.

1 We use *do* as a main verb.

2 We also use *do* / *does* to make questions and *don't* / *doesn't* to make negatives in the simple present. *Do* here is an auxiliary verb.

- Remember the word order for simple present questions: auxiliary, subject, base form **OR** question word, auxiliary, subject, base form (see **Grammar Bank 3C** p.136).

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

6A

a Rewrite the sentences. Change the highlighted words to object pronouns.

I call my mother once a week.
I call her once a week.

1 I can't find my wallet.
_____

2 She speaks to her father in Chinese.
_____

3 He meets his friends after work.
_____

4 Can you help my friend and me?
_____

5 Ryan is angry with his girlfriend.
_____

6 My son doesn't like cats.
_____

b Complete the sentences with subject pronouns (*I*, *he*, etc.) or object pronouns (*me*, *him*, etc.).

Alex is American. *He* lives in Las Vegas, with his parents. *He* argues with *them* a lot.

1 My mother has a big house in the country. _____ likes _____ a lot. We often visit _____ on Sundays – she invites _____ for lunch.

2 I am lucky to have great neighbors. _____ often help _____ with my children. They pick _____ up from school when _____ work late.

3 Mark loves Ruth and she loves _____, but _____ live in different towns. He often sends _____ flowers, and _____ always puts _____ next to her window.

4 My brother has two big dogs. _____ takes _____ for a walk twice a day. I don't like _____ very much because _____ bark at _____.

5 We often take my grandfather some magazines, but _____ never reads _____. He watches TV all day and never turns _____ off.

p.48

6B

a Write the *-ing* form of the verbs in the chart.

~~come~~ drive eat forget have paint put run sleep stop study write

1 **verb + *-ing***	work	work**ing**	
2 **verb ending in e**	live	liv**ing**	*coming*
3 **double consonant**	shop	shopp**ing**	

b Write sentences about Matt with *love*, *like*, *not mind*, *not like*, or *hate*, and a verb.

He loves playing tennis.

1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____
6 _____
7 _____
8 _____
9 _____

😀	tennis, to the movies
🙂	the dog for a walk, music
😐	housework, in an office
🙁	soccer on TV, novels
😠	lunch alone, a tie



p.51

6C

a Put the phrases in the correct column.

~~doing your homework~~ have a car hungry know those people like classical music listening to me live downtown stressed tired speak Russian waiting for a friend

Are you...?	Do you...?
doing your homework	

b Complete the conversations with the correct form of *be* or *do*. Use contractions where possible.

A *Do* you speak German?
B Yes, but I *don't* practice it very often.

1 **A** Where _____ Gemma going?
B She _____ going to the gym.

2 **A** _____ you play tennis?
B Yes, but I _____ play very well.

3 **A** _____ Noah like shopping? **B** He _____ mind it.

4 **A** Why _____ you crying? **B** Because I _____ sad.

5 **A** _____ your partner cook?
B Yes. He _____ making dinner right now.

6 **A** _____ you busy? **B** Yes. We _____ doing our homework.

7 **A** How old _____ your father?
B He's 69, but he _____ want to retire.

8 **A** _____ you watching TV?
B No. I _____ playing a video game.

p.52

7A simple past of *be*: *was / were*

Vincent van Gogh **was** an artist. 7.1
Was he Dutch or French?
She **wasn't** in class yesterday.
The Beatles **were** famous in the 1960s.
Where **were** you last night? You **weren't** at home.

- We use *was / were* to talk about the past.
- We often use *was / were* with past time expressions, e.g., *yesterday*, *last night*, *in 2014*, etc.
- We use *was / were* with *born*.
  ***I was born** in Canada.*

+		−	
I / He / She / It	**was** there.	I / He / She / It	**wasn't** there.
You / We / They	**were** there.	You / We / They	**weren't** there.

?			✓	✗
Was	I / he / she / it	famous?	Yes, I **was**.	No, I **wasn't**.
Were	you / we / they		Yes, you **were**.	No, you **weren't**.

7B simple past: regular verbs

1 I **booked** the flights yesterday. 7.6
We **arrived** at the airport at 10:00 this morning.
2 When I was young, I **watched** TV every night.
I **worked** as a waiter every weekend when I was in college.

- We use the simple past for:
  1 finished actions that happened once in the past.
  2 finished actions that happened more than once in the past.

+		−	
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**worked** yesterday.	I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**didn't work** yesterday.

?			✓			✗		
Did	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**work** yesterday?	Yes,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**did.**	No,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**didn't.**

- **Contraction:** *didn't = did not.*
- Regular verbs in the past + end in *-ed*, e.g., *worked*, *lived*, *played*.
- The simple past is the same for all persons. (*I*, *you*, *she*, etc.)
- We use *did / didn't* + base form for simple past ? and −. *Did* is the past of *do*.

base form	past	spelling
watch play	watch**ed** play**ed**	add *-ed*
arrive	arriv**ed**	add *-d*
study	stud**ied**	consonant + *y*: ~~*y*~~ *-ied*
stop	stop**ped**	one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + *-ed*

7C simple past: irregular verbs

I **went** to California in December. I **didn't go** to New York. 7.11
Did you **go** to a party? Who **did** you **go** with?

base form	past +	past −
buy	**bought**	**didn't buy**
come	**came**	**didn't come**
feel	**felt**	**didn't feel**
find	**found**	**didn't find**
get	**got**	**didn't get**
go	**went**	**didn't go**
have	**had**	**didn't have**
know	**knew**	**didn't know**
put on	**put on**	**didn't put on**
say	**said**	**didn't say**
take	**took**	**didn't take**
think	**thought**	**didn't think**
wear	**wore**	**didn't wear**

- Some verbs are irregular in the past + and change their form, e.g., *go* → *went*, *have* → *had*.
- We only use the irregular past form in + sentences.
  *I **bought** a bag last night.*
- We use the base form after *did / didn't*.
  ***Did** you **go** out last night?* **NOT** ~~*Did you went...?*~~
- Remember word order in questions: auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Did you go shopping yesterday?* **OR** question word, auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Where did you go?*
  Look at the list of irregular verbs on p.173.

can / could

The simple past of *can* is *could*. We add *not* to make negatives and reverse the subject and verb to make questions.

+ *We could see the whole city from the plane.*
− *I couldn't see him.* **NOT** ~~*I didn't can see him.*~~
? *Could you wear jeans when you were at school?*

7A

a Rewrite the sentences in the simple past.

	simple present	**yesterday**
	My father's at work.	My father was at work.
1	She's at home today.	_____ at home.
2	Where are you now?	Where _____?
3	I'm in Tokyo.	_____ in Tokyo.
4	Is it hot today?	_____ hot?
5	It isn't open now.	_____ open.
6	They aren't in the office.	_____ in the office.
7	We're in Lima now.	_____ in Lima.
8	They're tired.	_____ tired.
9	We aren't late.	_____ late.
10	I'm not at school.	_____ at school.

b Complete the conversation with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*.

A Were you and Charlie at the concert last night?
B Yes, we [1]_____.
A [2]_____ it good?
B No, it [3]_____. The singer [4]_____ terrible.
A [5]_____ the tickets expensive?
B Yes, they [6]_____.

C Where [7]_____ your mother born?
D She [8]_____ born in Argentina in 1955.
C [9]_____ her parents Argentinian?
D No, they [10]_____. Her father [11]_____ German and her mother [12]_____ from Italy.

p.56

7B

a Rewrite the sentences in the simple past.

	simple present	**simple past**
	We watch TV.	We watched TV yesterday evening.
1	I study English.	_____ at school.
2	Do you listen to the news?	_____ yesterday?
3	He doesn't cook.	_____ last night.
4	Does she play sports?	_____ in college?
5	They work late.	_____ last week.
6	She travels a lot.	_____ in 2018.
7	Jack works in Boston.	_____ five years ago.
8	I call my parents every day.	_____ yesterday.
9	We don't live in France.	_____ ten years ago.
10	Anna asks a lot of questions.	_____ at the meeting.

b Complete the sentences with a verb in the simple past.

book not call cry dance
~~finish~~ not listen play

We finished work late yesterday.

1 I _____ my mother on her birthday.
2 The movie was very sad. _____ you _____?
3 My brother _____ tennis last night.
4 I _____ to the news this morning.
5 _____ Keiko _____ with Max at the party?
6 We _____ our hotel rooms last month.

p.58

7C

a Correct the information using the word in parentheses.

She put on a coat. (jacket)
She didn't put on a coat. She put on a jacket.

1 They went by car. (train)
_____
2 I came home early. (late)
_____
3 We saw a movie. (play)
_____
4 He said hello. (goodbye)
_____
5 You had a sandwich. (salad)
_____
6 She knew his last name. (first name)
_____

b Complete the text with the verbs in parentheses in the simple past. All the verbs are irregular.

Last New Year's Eve, I went (go) to San Francisco with some friends. We [1]_____ (have) dinner at a Chinese restaurant, and at 10:00 p.m. we [2]_____ (take) a taxi to Union Square. We [3]_____ (be) there for an hour, and then we [4]_____ (go) to the beach. We [5]_____ (can) see the fireworks very well, and we [6]_____ (have) a great time. We [7]_____ (get) home at 4:00 a.m. We [8]_____ (feel) tired, but we [9]_____ (be) very happy!

c Complete the questions in the simple past.

A Did you go out last night? **B** No, I stayed at home.

1 **A** What _____ yesterday?
B I wore jeans.
2 **A** Where _____ her keys?
B She found them on the floor.
3 **A** What time _____?
B We got home late.

p.60

8A simple past: regular and irregular

1 ***was / were* and *could*** 8.5

[+] Gordon **was** Jeremy's business partner.
They **were** at his country house.
They **could** hear a strange noise.

[–] She **wasn't** at home last night.
You **weren't** very nice to her.
I **couldn't** sleep.

[?] **Were** you sick yesterday? When **was** he born?
Could you see anybody in the library?

2 **regular verbs**

[+] I really **liked** the present. She **wanted** to be a doctor.

[–] She **didn't enjoy** the concert. They **didn't arrive** until very late.

[?] **Did** you **watch** the game last night? When **did** you **finish** the book?

3 **irregular verbs**

[+] I **went** to Paris last summer. She **slept** on the sofa.

[–] He **didn't come** home last night. They **didn't hear** the music.

[?] **Did** you **speak** to your sister yesterday? Where **did** you **have** lunch?

1 The past of *be* is *was / were*, and the past of *can* is *could*. We add *not* to make negatives and put the verb before the subject to make questions.

2 Regular verbs add *-ed* or *-d* in the simple past [+], e.g., *want–wanted*, *like–liked*.

3 Irregular verbs change their form in the simple past [+], e.g., *go–went*, *see–saw*.

- Regular and irregular verbs (except *can*) use:
  - *didn't* + base form to make negatives, e.g., *I didn't like it. She didn't see him.*
  - *did* + subject + base form to make questions, e.g., *Did you want to come? Where did she go?*

8B *there is / there are*, *some / any* + plural nouns

singular	plural 8.11
[+] **There's** a garage.	**There are** some pictures on the wall.
[–] **There isn't** a swimming pool.	**There aren't** any plants in the room.
[?] **Is there** a bathroom downstairs?	**Are there** any neighbors with children?
[✓] Yes, **there is**.	Yes, **there are**.
[✗] No, **there isn't**.	No, **there aren't**.

there is / there are

- We use *there is / there are* to say that something exists or doesn't exist, e.g., *There's a bathroom upstairs. There isn't a bathroom downstairs.*
- We use *there is* + a singular noun and *there are* + plural nouns.
- *There is* is often contracted to *There's*. *There are* is not usually contracted.
- When we talk about a list of things, we use *there is* if the first word in the list is singular or *there are* if the first word in the list is plural.
  In my bedroom, ***there's a*** *bed, two chairs, and a desk.*
  In the living room, ***there are*** *two armchairs and a sofa.*

a / an*, *some*, and *any

- We often use *there is / isn't* with *a / an*, and *there are / aren't* with *some* and *any*.
- We use *some* and *any* with plural nouns. *Some* = not an exact number, e.g., *There are some eggs in the refrigerator.*
- We use *some* in [+] sentences and *any* in [–] and [?].

There is / There are* or *It is / They are?

Be careful. *There is* and *It is* are different.

There's *a key on the table.* ***It's*** *the key to the kitchen.*

There *are three bedrooms in the apartment.*
They're *all very small.*

8C *there was / there were*

singular	plural 8.16
[+] **There was** a big mirror.	**There were** four lamps.
[–] **There wasn't** a TV.	**There weren't** any ghosts.
[?] **Was there** a bathroom?	**Were there** any windows?
[✓] Yes, **there was**.	Yes, **there were**.
[✗] No, **there wasn't**.	No, **there weren't**.

- *there was / there were* is the past of *there is / there are*. We use *there was / there were* to say that something existed or didn't exist, e.g., *There were two computers in the office, but there wasn't a printer.*

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

8A

a Complete the conversation using the simple past of the verbs in parentheses.

A Where were (be) you last night at 8:00?

B I [1]_____ (be) at home, Inspector. With my wife. We [2]_____ (be) at home all evening.

A [3] What _____ you _____ (do)?

B We [4]_____ (watch) TV and then we [5]_____ (have) a light dinner. We [6]_____ (not be) hungry. After that, we [7]_____ (go) to bed.

A [8] What time _____ you _____ (go) to bed?

B About ten o'clock.

A [9]_____ you _____ (hear) a noise during the night?

B No, I [10]_____ (not hear) anything.

b Complete the sentences with the simple past of a verb from the list.

arrive not can hear read see
sit sleep ~~speak~~ not want

They spoke quietly for a few minutes.

1 I _____ very badly last night.
2 She _____ a strange noise.
3 We _____ find our keys.
4 I _____ three books last week.
5 They _____ at the airport at 11:30.
6 He _____ a strange animal in the yard.
7 We _____ together in the last class.
8 You _____ to come.

p.65

8B

a Complete with [+] or [?] of *There's* or *There are*.

There's a dishwasher in the kitchen.
Are there any people in the room?

1 _____ any books on the shelf?
2 _____ a half bathroom downstairs?
3 _____ some stairs over there.
4 _____ a rug on the floor.
5 _____ some pictures on the wall.
6 _____ a shower in the bathroom?
7 _____ some chairs in the yard.
8 _____ a lamp in the bedroom?
9 _____ a motorcycle in the garage.
10 _____ any glasses in the cupboard?

b Write [+] or [–] sentences or [?] with *there is / are + a / an, some,* or *any*.

[+] trees / the yard
There are some trees in the yard.

1 [+] table / the kitchen.
2 [?] fireplace / the living room?
3 [–] plants / my apartment.
4 [?] people / the yard?
5 [+] pictures / my bedroom.
6 [–] TV / the kitchen.
7 [+] computer / the study.
8 [–] cupboards / the dining room.
9 [?] bathtub / the bathroom?
10 [–] light / the garage.

p.67

8C

a Complete with the correct form of *there was* or *there were*.

A How many guests were there in the hotel?

B [1]_____ four including me. [2]_____ a Colombian tourist and [3]_____ two businessmen.

A [4]_____ a restaurant?

B No, [5]_____, but [6]_____ a coffee shop.

A [7]_____ a TV in your room?

B Yes, [8]_____, but [9]_____ any chairs.

A How many beds [10]_____?

B One. A double bed.

b Complete the sentences with *there was / were / wasn't / weren't + a, some,* or *any*.

There were some ghosts in the haunted hotel I stayed in.

1 _____ spider in my apartment, so I took it outside.
2 We couldn't watch the news because _____ TV in our room.
3 I couldn't sleep on the plane because _____ noisy children behind me.
4 They couldn't play tennis because _____ tennis balls.
5 She didn't have a coffee because _____ cups.
6 He took a lot of photos because _____ beautiful view of the town.
7 They couldn't park near the restaurant because _____ parking lot.

p.69

9A countable / uncountable nouns, *a / an*, *some / any*

Countable



an apple



three apples

Uncountable



rice



meat

- English nouns can be **countable** and **uncountable**.
  countable = things you can count, e.g., *apples*. Countable nouns can be singular (***an*** *apple*) or plural (*apple***s**).
  uncountable = things you can't count, e.g., *rice*, *meat* **NOT** ~~*two rices, three meats.*~~
  Uncountable nouns are usually singular.
- Some nouns can be countable or uncountable, e.g., *ice cream*.



an ice cream (countable)



some ice cream (uncountable)

a / an*, *some / any

	countable	uncountable 9.2
⊞ We need	**an** apple. **some** apples.	**some** butter.
⊟ We don't need	**a** tomato. **any** tomato**es**.	**any** rice.
? Do we need	**an** orange? **any** orange**s**?	**any** sugar?

- We use *a / an* with singular countable nouns. *a / an* = one.
- We use *some* in ⊞ with plural countable nouns and with uncountable nouns.
- We use *any* in ⊟ and ? with plural countable nouns and with uncountable nouns.

***some* in ?**

We use *some* in ? to ask for and offer things.
*Can I have **some** sugar, please? Would you like **some** coffee?*

9B quantifiers

uncountable (singular)	**short answers**	**full answers** 9.7
How much sugar do you eat?	**A lot.** **A little.** **Not much.** **None.**	I eat **a lot** of sugar. I eat **a little** sugar. I don't eat **much** sugar. I don't eat **any** sugar.
countable (plural)		
How many cookies do you eat?	**A lot.** **A few.** **Not many.** **None.**	I eat **a lot** of cookies. I eat **a few** cookies. I don't eat **many** cookies. I don't eat **any** cookies.

a lot of* and *lots of

A lot of and *lots of* mean the same thing,
e.g., *He eats a lot of cheese / lots of cheese.*

- We use *How much...?* with uncountable nouns and *How many...?* with plural countable nouns.
- We use:
  a lot (*of*) with countable and uncountable nouns for a **big quantity**.
  a little / not...much with uncountable nouns for a **small quantity**.
  a few / not...many with countable plural nouns for a **small quantity**.
  not...any (*none* in short answers) for **zero quantity**.

a lot of* and *much / many

- In ⊞ sentences, we usually use *a lot of*.
- In ⊟ sentences and ?, we usually use *much* and *many*.
  *I don't drink **much** water. Do you drink **much** coffee?*
- It is also possible to use *a lot of* in ⊟ and ?.
  *I don't eat **a lot of** vegetables. Do you drink **a lot of** coffee?*

9C comparative adjectives

Stonehenge is **older than** the Pyramids. 9.15
Brazil is **wetter than** Ireland.
New York is **more expensive than** Paris.
My new job is **better than** my old one.
The traffic is always **worse** in the evening.

- We use comparative adjectives + *than* to compare two things, people, etc.

adjective	**comparative**	**spelling**
old nice	old**er** nic**er**	one-syllable adjectives: + *-er* (or *-r* if the adjective ends in *e*)
big hot	big**ger** hot**ter**	adjectives ending one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + *-er*
dry healthy	dr**ier** health**ier**	one- or two-syllable adjectives ending consonant + *y*: ~~*y*~~ *-ier*
tired	**more** tired	one-syllable adjectives ending *-ed*: *more* + adjective
famous expensive	**more** famous **more** expensive	two- or more syllable adjectives: *more* + adjective
good bad far	**better** **worse** **farther**/**further**	irregular

9A

a Write *a*, *an*, or *some* + a food or drink word.



some bread

1 _____ 5 _____

2 _____ 6 _____

3 _____ 7 _____

4 _____ 8 _____

b Complete the conversation with *a*, *an*, *some*, or *any*.

A What can we cook for your brother and his girlfriend?
B Let's make a pizza.
A Good idea. Are there [1] _____ tomatoes?
B Yes. And there are [2] _____ mushrooms, too.
A Great!
B Oh no! There isn't [3] _____ cheese!
A Oh. Wait a minute. I bought [4] _____ steak yesterday. Are there [5] _____ potatoes?
B Yes, there are.
A Good. So we can have steak and fries. Do we have [6] _____ fruit?
B I think we have [7] _____ oranges. Yes, and there's [8] _____ apple and [9] _____ bananas, too.
A OK. You can make [10] _____ fruit salad for dessert.
B OK. Let's start cooking.

p.73

9B

a Complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*.

How much sugar do you put in your tea?

1 _____ butter do you use for this cake?
2 _____ cans of soda did she buy?
3 _____ oil do I need?
4 _____ chocolates were in that box?
5 _____ rice do you want?
6 _____ coffee does he drink?
7 _____ bottles of water did you bring?
8 _____ cans of tuna do we have?
9 _____ orange juice is there in that carton?
10 _____ cookies did you eat?

b Circle the correct word or phrase.

I don't put *much* / *many* salt on my food.

1 We don't eat *a lot of* / *a lot* cookies.
2 **A** How much chocolate do you eat? **B** *A little.* / *A few.*
3 My husband doesn't drink *much* / *many* coffee.
4 **A** How much fruit did you buy?
B *A lot.* / *A lot of.*
5 We eat *a lot of* / *much* fish. We love it!
6 **A** Do your children drink any milk?
B No, *not much* / *not many.*
7 Kim ate her hamburger, but she didn't eat *much* / *many* fries.
8 **A** How many vegetables do you eat?
B *Any.* / *None.* I don't like them.
9 I have a cup of tea and *a few* / *a little* cereal for breakfast.
10 **A** Do you eat *much* / *many* meat?
B No, I don't eat *no* / *any* meat. I'm a vegetarian.

p.74

9C

a Write the comparative form of the adjectives.

big — bigger

1 high _____
2 dirty _____
3 important _____
4 late _____
5 low _____
6 bored _____
7 wet _____
8 modern _____
9 comfortable _____
10 happy _____

b Complete with a comparative adjective + *than*.

My sister is younger than me. She's only 18. (young)

1 The farmer's market is _____ the supermarket for vegetables. (cheap)
2 Italian is _____ for Spanish people _____ it is for English people. (easy)
3 I always feel _____ in the afternoon _____ in the morning. (tired)
4 This restaurant is _____ when it first opened. (busy)
5 Come in the summer. The weather is _____ in the spring. (good)
6 I love science. I find it _____ history. (interesting)
7 Cusco is _____ from the ocean _____ Lima. (far)
8 I'm _____ my brother. He's very tall. (short)
9 The economic situation is _____ it was last year. (bad)
10 Skiing is _____ I thought it was. (difficult)

p.77

10A superlative adjectives

It's **the oldest** bridge in the world. 10.3
It's **the most popular** shopping mall in the US.
She's **the best** student in the class.
Monday is **the worst** day of the week.

- We use *the* + superlative adjective to say which is *the* (*biggest*, etc.) in a group.
- After superlatives, we use *in* (**NOT** *of*) + places, e.g., *the longest road* ***in*** *the world*, *the tallest building* ***in*** *New York*.

adjective	comparative	superlative	spelling
cold high	cold**er** high**er**	**the** cold**est** **the** high**est**	one-syllable adjectives: + *-est*
big hot	big**ger** hot**ter**	**the** big**gest** **the** hot**test**	adjectives ending one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + *-est*
dry sunny	dr**ier** sun**nier**	**the** dr**iest** **the** sun**niest**	one- or two-syllable adjectives ending consonant + *y*: + *-iest*
bored stressed	**more** bored **more** stressed	**the most** bored **the most** stressed	one-syllable adjectives ending *-ed*: *the most* + adjective
dangerous	**more** dangerous	**the most** dangerous	two- or more syllable adjectives: *the most* + adjective
good bad	**better** **worse**	**the best** **the worst**	irregular
far	**farther**/**further**	**the farthest**/ **furthest**	

10B *be going to* (plans), future time expressions

I**'m going to take** a vacation next month. 10.8
I**'m not going to study** English.
Are you **going to fly** to Paris?

- We use *be going to* + verb (base form) to talk about future plans.
- We often use future time expressions with *going to*, e.g., *tomorrow*, *next week*, *next month*, *next year*, etc.

+

full form	contraction		
I **am** You **are** He / She / It **is** We **are** They **are**	I**'m** You**'re** He / She / It **isn't** We**'re** They**'re**	**going to**	**take** a vacation next summer. **study** English tonight.

–

full form	contraction		
I **am not** You **are not** He / She / It **is not** We **are not** They **are not**	I**'m not** You **aren't** He / She / It **isn't** We **aren't** They **aren't**	**going to**	**take** a vacation next summer. **study** English tonight.

?

			☑		☒	
Am I **Are** you **Is** he / she / it **Are** we **Are** they	**going to**	**take** a vacation next summer? **study** English tonight?	Yes,	I **am**. you **are**. he / she / it **is**. we **are**. they **are**.	No,	I**'m not**. you **aren't**. he / she / it **isn't**. we **aren't**. they **aren't**.

10C *be going to* (predictions)

- We can use *be going to* + verb (base form) to make predictions (= to say what you think or can see is going to happen in the future).

I think it**'s going to rain**. 10.18
You**'re going to be** rich.
I'm sure they**'re going to win**.







10A

a Write the opposite.

the smallest — *the biggest*

1 the coldest — _____
2 the most expensive — _____
3 the best — _____
4 the most difficult — _____
5 the driest — _____
6 the shortest — _____
7 the nearest — _____
8 the cleanest — _____

b Complete the sentences with a superlative adjective.

The tigers are *the most dangerous* animals in the zoo. (dangerous)

1 Their house is _____ house on the street. (big)
2 For me, Saturday is _____ day of the week. (good)
3 My bedroom is _____ room in our house. (small)
4 Sit here – it's _____ chair in the room. (comfortable)
5 My neighbors upstairs are _____ people in the world. (noisy)
6 My boss is _____ person I know. (stressed)
7 Sophie is _____ student in our English class. (young)
8 _____ building in my town is the museum. (beautiful)

p.80

10B

a Complete the sentences with the correct form of *be going to* and the verb in parentheses.

She doesn't have a car. She's *going to go* by train. (go)

1 We need a vacation. We _____ a hotel near the beach. (book)
2 Tomorrow is Saturday. I _____ in bed until 10:00! (stay)
3 My sister _____ medicine. She wants to be a doctor. (study)
4 Laura and David _____ married soon. (get)
5 Kamal is very busy at work this week. He _____ late tonight. (work)
6 My son _____ to college – he wants to get a job. (not go)
7 We _____ any museums because the children think they're boring. (not visit)

b Complete the sentences with *be going to* + a verb.

not buy | call | not come | get | have | ~~sleep~~ | watch

I'm at a friend's house. *I'm going to sleep* on her sofa.

1 I need to talk to my mom. I _____ her tonight.
2 What _____ we _____ for dinner this evening?
3 My friend isn't feeling very well, so she _____ to the concert with us.
4 There's a lot of snow! How _____ you _____ to work?
5 They love their old car. They _____ a new one.
6 The big game is on TV tonight. _____ you _____ it?

p.82

10C

a Write predictions for the pictures.

be | get | have | make | ~~play~~ | send



She's going to play tennis.

1 _____ dinner.
2 _____ a nice day.
3 _____ the bus.
4 _____ an omelet.
5 _____ an email.

b Complete the predictions with *be going to* and a verb.

be | buy | not finish | forget | have (x2) | not like | not pass | sleep | ~~snow~~ | win

It's very cold. Do you think it *'s going to snow*?

1 You're driving very fast! We _____ an accident!
2 She isn't a very good student. She _____ the exam.
3 Their new album is great! A lot of people _____ it.
4 I have a lot of homework. I _____ it tonight.
5 They're playing very well. I think they _____ the game.
6 Look at the time. We _____ late.
7 Oh no, it's a horror movie. I'm sure I _____ it.
8 He didn't write down her address. He _____ it.
9 The baby's very tired. She _____ well tonight.
10 Seoul is a wonderful city. You _____ a great time there.

p.85

11A adverbs (manner and modifiers)

Adverbs of manner

1 You can travel **safely** on public transportation. 11.1
Her children always speak **politely**. She eats very **quickly**.
2 I work **hard**. We speak English **well**.

- We use adverbs of manner to say <u>how</u> people do things.
- Adverbs usually go after the verb or verb phrase.
I speak English ***well***. **NOT** ~~*I speak well English.*~~

1 We usually form adverbs by adding *-ly* to adjectives.

2 Some adverbs are irregular. They can be the same as the adjective, e.g., *fast*, *hard*, or a different word, e.g., *well*.

adjective	adverb	spelling
slow	slow**ly**	
quick	quick**ly**	+ *-ly*
bad	bad**ly**	
careful	careful**ly**	
healthy	health**ily**	
easy	eas**ily**	consonant + *y*: ~~*y*~~ + *-ily*
possible	possib**ly**	*le* → *-ly*
good	**well**	
fast	**fast**	irregular
hard	**hard**	

- Remember the difference between adjectives and adverbs.
I'm a ***careful*** *driver.* (*careful* is an adjective. It describes the noun, *driver*.)
I drive ***carefully***. (*carefully* is an adverb. It describes the verb, *drive*.)

Modifiers

very, *really*, etc.

It isn't **very** expensive. 11.2
She drives **incredibly** fast.
They speak **really** slowly.

- We use the adverbs *very*, *really*, etc., to modify adjectives or other adverbs.
- They always go <u>before</u> the adjective or adverb.

Words ending in *-ly*

Be careful. Some words that end in *-ly* aren't adverbs, e.g., *friendly* (= adjective).
He's a ***friendly*** *person.*

11B verb + infinitive

1 I **want to travel** for six months. 11.4
She **decided to go** to Australia.
You **need to practice** every day.
When did you **learn to play** the guitar?
2 **Would** you **like to go** to Africa?
I **wouldn't like to be** famous.

would like* and *like

I'd like to dance. = I want to dance.
I like dancing. = I enjoy it; I like it in general.

1 Many verbs are often followed by another verb in the infinitive. These include *want*, *need*, *learn*, *promise*, *decide*, *plan*, *choose*, *try*, *remember*, *forget*, and *hope*.

2 *I would like to* = *I want to* (now or in the future). *would like* is also followed by the infinitive.

- **Contractions:** *'d = would. wouldn't = would not.*
- We can also use *Would you like...?* to offer, e.g., *Would you like a drink?*
- *would like* is the same for all persons.

11C definite article

1 ***the*** 11.9
Can you close **the window**, please?
Can you check their address on **the internet**?
It's **the best** restaurant I know.
2 **no article**
Doctors usually earn more than **nurses**.
She's **my mother's cousin**.
That's **Tom's chair**!
What time did you **have breakfast**?
Alex goes **to school by bus**.
Karen's studying physics **in college**.

***a* / *an* or *the*?**

We often use *a* the first time we mention a person or thing. The next time, we use *the* because it is now clear what we are talking about, e.g., *Let's have* ***a*** *pizza.* ***The*** *pizzas are very good here.*

1 We use *the*:
- when it is clear what we are talking about, e.g., *Close* ***the window***. = the window that is open.
- when there is only one of something, e.g., *the internet*, *the sun*, etc.
- before superlative adjectives, e.g., *the biggest*, *the best*, etc.

2 We don't usually use *the*:
- when we talk about people or things in general.
Doctors *earn more than* ***nurses***. (general)
BUT ***The doctors*** *in this hospital usually work long hours.* (specific)
- before possessive *'s*.
She's my mother's cousin. **NOT** ~~*She's the my mother's cousin.*~~
- with:
meals: *have breakfast*, *lunch*, *dinner*, etc.
by + transportation: *go by car*, *travel by train*, etc.
general places: *work*, *school*, *college*, *bed*, *home*.

11A

a Adjective or adverb? Circle the correct form.

People drive very *dangerous* / *dangerously*.

1 He opened the package *careful* / *carefully*.
2 My neighbor's children aren't very *polite* / *politely*.
3 My niece dances *beautiful* / *beautifully*.
4 A lot of fast food is very *unhealthy* / *unhealthily*.
5 They're tired, so they're walking *slow* / *slowly*.
6 I bought a *real* / *really* cheap bag at the sale.
7 My friend sings very *good* / *well*.
8 My sister speaks Spanish *perfect* / *perfectly*.
9 We wear *casual* / *casually* clothes to work.
10 The view is *incredible* / *incredibly* beautiful.

b Complete with adverbs from these adjectives.

bad	careful	easy	fast	good	hard	healthy	~~perfect~~	quiet

The trains in Sweden run perfectly even when it snows.

1 Can you talk _____, please? I'm trying to sleep.
2 Don't drive _____ when it's raining.
3 I don't like being in the ocean because I can't swim very _____.
4 She sat down _____ because the chair only had three legs.
5 We're working _____ because we need to finish the job.
6 Professional athletes usually eat very _____.
7 We played _____ in the semifinal and we lost 5–1.
8 She was the best student in the class and she passed the exam _____.

p.88

11B

a Complete the sentences with the infinitive form of these verbs.

be	buy	call	~~climb~~	drive	get married
go	have	leave	see	stay	

Xavi loves Africa. He wants to climb Mount Kilimanjaro.

1 I learned _____ a car when I was 17.
2 Our refrigerator is broken. We need _____ a new one.
3 I wouldn't like _____ famous. I'm happy with my life.
4 He promised _____ his girlfriend after his job interview.
5 The weather was terrible. We decided _____ at home.
6 The boss would like _____ you in her office.
7 Ben and Rosa are planning _____ next year. They're looking for a venue.
8 I hope _____ time to see the sights in Bogotá.
9 Would you like _____ on a safari?
10 I'm really enjoying the party. I don't want _____.

b Circle the correct form.

I hate *fly* / *flying* so I usually travel by train.

1 Would you like *to have* / *have* dinner tonight?
2 My grandmother learned *to speak* / *speaking* Spanish when she was 60!
3 I'd like *to travel* / *traveling* around Asia.
4 I like *relax* / *relaxing* on the weekend.
5 Do you want *to play* / *playing* soccer?
6 He's hoping *to get* / *getting* the results of his test next week.
7 I hate *go* / *going* to the dentist.
8 I love *read* / *reading* detective stories.
9 It's cold. You need *to wear* / *wearing* a coat.
10 My partner doesn't mind *to cook* / *cooking*.

p.91

11C

a Circle the correct word or phrase.

How often do you use *internet* / *the internet*?

1 My brother is *in college* / *in the college* studying math.
2 I usually go to work *by train* / *by the train*.
3 We're going to visit my aunt *on weekend* / *on the weekend*.
4 Let's stay *at home* / *at the home* tonight.
5 I love reading *novels* / *the novels*.
6 Yolanda is *youngest* / *the youngest* student in our class.
7 I love clear nights when you can see *moon* / *the moon*.
8 That's *the man* / *a man* I told you about yesterday.
9 Can you open *a door* / *the door* for me, please?
10 He had *breakfast* / *the breakfast* late this morning.

b Complete with *the* or –.

It's the longest river in the world.

1 What time do you finish _____ work?
2 I don't like _____ people who talk loudly at the movies.
3 _____ children behaved very badly yesterday.
4 Lorena doesn't like _____ dogs.
5 Where do you usually have _____ lunch during the week?
6 _____ sun came out, so we went for a walk.
7 Can you pass _____ salt, please?
8 My brother chose _____ most expensive ice cream.
9 Last year, we went on vacation by _____ car.
10 Is James in _____ office today?
He sometimes works from home.

p.93

12A present perfect

1 **A** **Have you seen** the new Ryan Gosling movie? 12.2
B Yes, **I have**.
She hasn't read any books in English.
2 **Have you ever read** a French novel?
I've never worked in an office.
3 **Have you finished** the exercise?
Your parents have arrived. They're in the living room.

1 We use the present perfect when we talk or ask about events in the past, but when we don't say or ask when.
2 We often use the present perfect with *ever* (= at any time in your life) and *never* (= at no time in your life).
3 We also use the present perfect to talk about recent events, e.g., *I've finished my homework.*

[+]

full form of *have*	contraction	past participle of main verb
I **have** You **have** He / She / It **has** We **have** They **have**	I**'ve** You**'ve** He / She / It**'s** We**'ve** They**'ve**	**seen** that movie.

[–]

full form of *have*	contraction	past participle of main verb
I / You / We / They **have not** He / She / It **has not**	**haven't** **hasn't**	**seen** that movie.

[?]

		[✓]	[✗]
Have I / you / we / they **Has** he / she / it	**seen** that movie?	Yes, I / you / we / they **have**. Yes, he / she / it **has**.	No, I / you / we / they **haven't**. No, he / she / it **hasn't**.

- To make the present perfect we use *have* / *has* + the past participle of the verb.
- *'s* = *has* in present perfect.

base form	simple past	past participle
like want	liked wanted	liked wanted

- Past participles of regular verbs are the same as the simple past.

base form	simple past	past participle
read /rid/ see	read /rɛd/ saw	read /rɛd/ seen

- Past participles of irregular verbs are sometimes the same as the simple past, e.g., *read* /rɛd/, but sometimes different, e.g., *seen*.
Look at the list of irregular past participles on p.173.

12B present perfect or simple past?

A **Have you been** to that new Mexican restaurant? 12.7
B Yes, **I have**.
A When **did you go** there?
B **I went** last weekend.
A Who **did you go** with?
B **I went** with some people from work.

- We often use the **present perfect** to ask / tell somebody about a past action for the first time. We don't ask / say when the action happened.
Have you been *to that new Italian restaurant?*
- Then we use the **simple past** to ask / talk about the details.
"When ***did you go*** *there?" "I* ***went*** *last weekend."*
- We use the simple past **NOT** the present perfect with *when* and past time expressions, e.g., *yesterday*, *last week*.
When did *you* ***see*** *the movie?* **NOT** ~~*When have you seen the movie?*~~
I ***saw*** *it* ***last week****.* **NOT** ~~*I've seen it last week.*~~

been or *gone*?

A Have you ever **been** to Japan? 12.8
B Yes, I've **been** to Tokyo three times.
A My sister has **gone** to Japan to study Japanese.

- The words *been* and *gone* have different meanings: *been* is the past participle of *be*, and *gone* is the past participle of *go*.
- In the present perfect, we use *been to* (**NOT** ~~*gone to*~~ **OR** ~~*been in*~~) to say that somebody has visited a place.
I've ***been to*** *Tokyo three times.*
Have you ***been to*** *the new Nigerian restaurant on Pine Street?*
- We use *gone to* when somebody goes to a place and is still there.
My parents have ***gone to*** *Costa Rica for their vacation. They're having a great time.*
- Compare:
Nick has ***been to*** *Istanbul.* = He visited Istanbul and came back at some time in the past.
Nick has ***gone to*** *Istanbul.* = He went to Istanbul, and he is in Istanbul now.

12A

a Write the sentences with contractions.

I have seen the movie. I've seen the movie.

1 She has not read the book. _____

2 You have not finished your ice cream! _____

3 We have heard the news. _____

4 He has arrived at the airport. _____

5 They have not asked for the check. _____

6 We have not seen him before. _____

7 It has stopped raining. _____

b Write + and − sentences and ? in the present perfect. Use contractions where possible.

+ I / see a famous actor. I've seen a famous actor.

1 + I / change my email address _____

2 − my boyfriend / work abroad _____

3 ? you / decide what to do _____

4 − they / pass the exam _____

5 ? he / accept the invitation _____

6 + she / study three languages _____

7 − the train / arrive _____

8 ? the children / clean their room _____

9 − my girlfriend / text me _____

10 + my father / help me a lot _____

c Write a sentence in the present perfect for each picture. Use the verbs in the list.

ask ~~clean~~ not finish paint pass see



He's cleaned the floor.

1 _____ a good movie.

2 _____ his driver's test.

3 _____ her book.

4 _____ the wall.

5 _____ a difficult question.

p.96

12B

a Circle the correct form.

Have you ever seen / *Did you ever see* a Korean movie?

1 I *haven't finished* / *didn't finish* this book. I'm on page 210.

2 My partner *has given* / *gave* me a ring for my last birthday.

3 They *have bought* / *bought* a new house last month.

4 *Have you ever danced* / *Did you ever dance* the tango?

5 My friends *have gone* / *went* to a party last weekend.

b Circle the correct verb, *been* or *gone*.

Let's go to the Peking Duck. I've never *been* / *gone* there.

1 The manager isn't here. She's *been* / *gone* out for lunch.

2 I've never *been* / *gone* to the US.

3 My neighbors aren't at home. They've *been* / *gone* on vacation.

4 Have you ever *been* / *gone* to China?

5 We have a lot of food. I've *been* / *gone* to the supermarket.

c Put the verbs in parentheses in the present perfect or simple past.

A Have you ever been to Thailand? (be)

B No, but I went to Vietnam last year. (go)

A [1]_____ you ever _____ any countries in South America? (visit)

B Yes, I have. I [2]_____ to Brazil a few years ago. (go)

A [3]Who _____ you _____ with? (go)

B My partner. It was a work trip and his company [4]_____ for everything. (pay)

A How wonderful! [5]_____ you there for long? (be)

B No, we [6]_____ only there for five days. (be)

A [7]Where _____ you _____? (stay)

B We [8]_____ a suite in a five-star hotel. It was beautiful! (have)

A [9]_____ the company _____ you on any other trips recently? (invite)

B No. My partner [10]_____ working there a year later, so that was our only trip. (stop)

p.98

Days and numbers

Vocabulary Bank

1 Days of the week

a Complete the days of the week with the letters.

W Fr S Th T ~~M~~ S

Monday /'mʌndeɪ/
___iday /'fraɪdeɪ/
___uesday /'tuzdeɪ/
___aturday /'sætərdeɪ/
___ednesday /'wɛnzdeɪ/
___unday /'sʌndeɪ/
___ursday /'θərzdeɪ/

b 1.8 Listen and check.

c 1.9 Listen and repeat the **bold** phrases.

the weekend (= Saturday and Sunday)
a weekday (= Monday–Friday)
What day is it today? **It's Friday.**
Have a good weekend. **You too.**
See you later. See you tomorrow. See you on Monday.

ACTIVATION Cover the days of the week. Say them in order.

Capital letters

Days of the week begin with a capital letter.
Tuesday **NOT** ~~*tuesday*~~

2 Numbers 0–20

a Match the words and numbers.

twelve twenty eleven ~~three~~
eighteen five fifteen seven

0	zero /'zɪroʊ/		11	_____	/ɪ'lɛvn/
1	one /wʌn/		12	_____	/twɛlv/
2	two /tu/		13	thirteen	/ˌθər'tin/
3	three /θri/		14	fourteen	/ˌfɔr'tin/
4	four /fɔr/		15	_____	/ˌfɪf'tin/
5	_____ /faɪv/		16	sixteen	/ˌsɪks'tin/
6	six /sɪks/		17	seventeen	/ˌsɛvn'tin/
7	_____ /'sɛvn/		18	_____	/ˌeɪ'tin/
8	eight /eɪt/		19	nineteen	/ˌnaɪn'tin/
9	nine /naɪn/		20	_____	/'twɛnti/
10	ten /tɛn/				

b 1.10 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Say the numbers.

Phone numbers

794-1938 = seven nine four, one nine three eight
44 = four four **OR** double four
0 = zero **OR** oh /oʊ/

p.9

3 Numbers 21–100

a Write the numbers.

21 twenty-one /ˌtwɛnti 'wʌn/
_____ thirty /'θərti/
_____ thirty-five /ˌθərti 'faɪv/
_____ forty /'fɔrti/
_____ forty-three /ˌfɔrti 'θri/
_____ fifty /'fɪfti/
_____ fifty-nine /ˌfɪfti 'naɪn/
_____ sixty /'sɪksti/
_____ sixty-seven /ˌsɪksti 'sɛvn/
_____ seventy /'sɛvnti/
_____ seventy-two /ˌsɛvənti 'tu/
_____ eighty /'eɪti/
_____ eighty-eight /ˌeɪti 'eɪt/
_____ ninety /'naɪnti/
_____ ninety-four /ˌnaɪnti 'fɔr/
_____ a / one hundred /ə 'hʌndrəd/ /wʌn 'hʌndrəd/



b 1.21 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Write ten numbers from 21–100. Dictate them to a partner.

p.11

4 High numbers

a Write the numbers or words.

105 a / one hundred and five
_____ two hundred
350 three hundred and _____
875 eight hundred _____ seventy-five
1,000 a / one thousand /'θaʊz(ə)nd/
_____ one thousand five hundred
2,012 two thousand and _____
5,420 five thousand four _____ and twenty
_____ twenty-five thousand
100,000 a / one hundred _____
1,000,000 a / one million /'mɪlyən/
2,300,000 two million _____ hundred thousand

b 9.12 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Say the numbers.

p.76



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

Countries

1 Continents



north /nɔrθ/

west /wɛst/ east /ist/

south /saʊθ/

a Match the words and continents 1–7.

Continent	Adjective
Africa /'æfrɪkə/	African /'æfrɪkən/
Antarctica /ænt'ɑrktɪkə/	Antarctic /ænt'ɑrktɪk/
Asia /'eɪʒə/	Asian /'eɪʒn/
Australasia /ˌɔstrə'leɪʒə/	Australasian /ˌɔstrə'leɪʒn/
Europe /'yʊrəp/	European /yʊrə'piən/
North America /nɔrθ ə'mɛrɪkə/	North American /nɔrθ ə'mɛrɪkən/
South America /saʊθ ə'mɛrɪkə/	South American /saʊθ ə'mɛrɪkən/

b 1.14 Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the map. Can you remember the continents and their adjectives?

Capital letters

Use CAPITAL letters for continents, countries, nationalities, and languages, e.g., *Spanish* **NOT** ~~*spanish*~~.

2 Countries and nationalities

a 1.15 Match the countries and flags. Then listen and check.



Country /'kʌntri/	Nationality adjective
England /'ɪŋglənd/	English /'ɪŋglɪʃ/
Ireland /'aɪərlənd/	Irish /'aɪrɪʃ/
Spain /speɪn/	Spanish /'spænɪʃ/
Türkiye /'turkiyə/	Turkish /'tərkɪʃ/



Germany /'dʒərməni/	German /'dʒərmən/
Mexico /'mɛksɪkoʊ/	Mexican /'mɛksɪkən/
Morocco /mə'rɑkoʊ/	Moroccan /mə'rɑkən/
the United States /yu'naɪtɪd steɪts/ (or the US)	American /ə'mɛrɪkən/



Argentina /ˌɑrdʒən'tinə/	Argentinian /ˌɑrdʒən'tɪniən/
Australia /ɔ'streɪlyə/	Australian /ɔ'streɪlyən/
Brazil /brə'zɪl/	Brazilian /brə'zɪlyən/
Canada /'kænədə/	Canadian /kə'neɪdiən/
Egypt /'idʒɪpt/	Egyptian /ɪ'dʒɪpʃn/
India /'ɪndiə/	Indian /'ɪndiən/
Italy /'ɪtəli/	Italian /ɪ'tælyən/
Nigeria /naɪ'dʒɪriə/	Nigerian /naɪ'dʒɪriən/
Peru /pə'ru/	Peruvian /pə'ruviən/
Russia /'rʌʃə/	Russian /'rʌʃn/



China /'tʃaɪnə/	Chinese /ˌtʃaɪ'niz/
Japan /dʒə'pæn/	Japanese /dʒæpə'niz/
Vietnam /viɛt'nɑm/	Vietnamese /viɛtnə'miz/



the Czech Republic /ˌtʃɛk rɪ'pʌblɪk/	Czech /tʃɛk/
France /fræns/	French /frɛntʃ/
Thailand /'taɪlænd/	Thai /taɪ/

b Cover the words and look at the flags. Can you remember the countries and nationalities?

ACTIVATION Choose six countries. Say the continent.

Canada is in North America.

p.10

Classroom language

Vocabulary Bank

a Match the phrases and pictures 1–13.

The teacher says

- [ ] Open your books, please.
- [ ] Go to page 84.
- [ ] Do exercise a.
- [ ] Read the text.
- [1] Look at the board.
- [ ] Close the door.
- [ ] Work in pairs (or groups).
- [ ] Answer the questions.
- [ ] Listen and repeat.
- [ ] Stand up.
- [ ] Sit down.
- [ ] Turn off your phone.
- [ ] Please stop talking!

b 1.26 Listen and check.

c Match the phrases and pictures 14–22.

You say

- [ ] Sorry, can you repeat that, please?
- [14] Sorry I'm late.
- [ ] I don't understand.
- [ ] Can I have a copy, please?
- [ ] How do you spell it?
- [ ] I don't know.
- [ ] How do you say *gato* in English?
- [ ] Can you help me, please?
- [ ] What page is it?

d 1.27 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Try to use the **You say** language in your next English lesson.

p.12



Things

a Match the words and photos.

- a bag /bæg/
- a calendar /ˈkæləndər/
- a change purse /tʃeɪndʒ pərs/
- a charger /ˈtʃɑrdʒər/
- a coin /kɔɪn/
- a credit card /ˈkrɛdət kɑrd/ (or debit card)
- a dictionary /ˈdɪkʃəˌnɛri/
- earphones /ˈɪrˌfoʊnz/ (or earbuds)
- a file / a binder /faɪl/ /ˈbaɪndər/
- glasses /ˈglæsəz/
- headphones /ˈhɛdfoʊnz/
- an ID card /aɪˈdi kɑrd/
- a key /ki/
- a lamp /læmp/
- a laptop /ˈlæptɑp/
- a magazine /ˈmægəˌzin/
- a mask /mæsk/
- a newspaper /ˈnuzˌpeɪpər/
- a notebook /ˈnoʊtbʊk/
- a pen /pɛn/
- a pencil /ˈpɛnsl/
- a (cell) phone /foʊn/
- a photo /ˈfoʊtoʊ/
- a piece of paper /pis əv ˈpeɪpər/
- a planner /ˈplænər/
- scissors /ˈsɪzərz/
- sunglasses /ˈsʌnˌglæsəz/
- a tablet /ˈtæblət/
- a ticket /ˈtɪkət/
- a tissue /ˈtɪʃu/
- an umbrella /ʌmˈbrɛlə/
- a wallet /ˈwɑlət/
- a watch /wɑtʃ/











































b 2.1 Listen and check.

Plural nouns

Some words for things are always plural, e.g., *glasses*, *headphones*, *scissors*. Don't use *a* / *an* with plural nouns.
NOT ~~*a glasses*~~, ~~*a headphones*~~.

ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the photos. In pairs, ask and answer.

What is it? — *It's a watch.*

What are they? — *They're glasses.*

p.16

Adjectives

Vocabulary Bank

a Match the words and pictures.

beautiful /'byutəfl/	ugly /'ʌgli/
big /bɪg/	small /smɔl/
cheap /tʃip/	expensive /ɪk'spɛnsɪv/
clean /klin/	dirty /'dərti/
easy /'izi/	difficult /'dɪfɪˌkʌlt/
fast /fæst/	slow /sloʊ/
full /fʊl/	empty /'ɛmpti/
good /gʊd/	bad /bæd/
high /haɪ/	low /loʊ/
hot /hɑt/	cold /koʊld/
light /laɪt/	dark /dɑrk/
long /lɔŋ/	short /ʃɔrt/
old /oʊld/	new /nu/
old /oʊld/	young /yʌŋ/
rich /rɪtʃ/	poor /pɔr/
right /raɪt/	left /lɛft/
right /raɪt/	wrong /rɔŋ/
safe /seɪf/	dangerous /'deɪndʒərəs/
the same /seɪm/	different /'dɪf(ə)rənt/
strong /strɔŋ/	weak /wik/
tall /tɔl/	short /ʃɔrt/

b 2.6 Listen and check.

c Test your partner. **A**, say an adjective and **B**, say the opposite.

Modifiers: *very / really*

We often use modifiers before adjectives.
*A Ferrari is **very** / **really fast**.*

ACTIVATION Look at the things in the list. Say two adjectives for each one. Use modifiers.

a Ferrari Mount Kilimanjaro a blue whale
the *Mona Lisa* the Pyramids Africa
your town or city

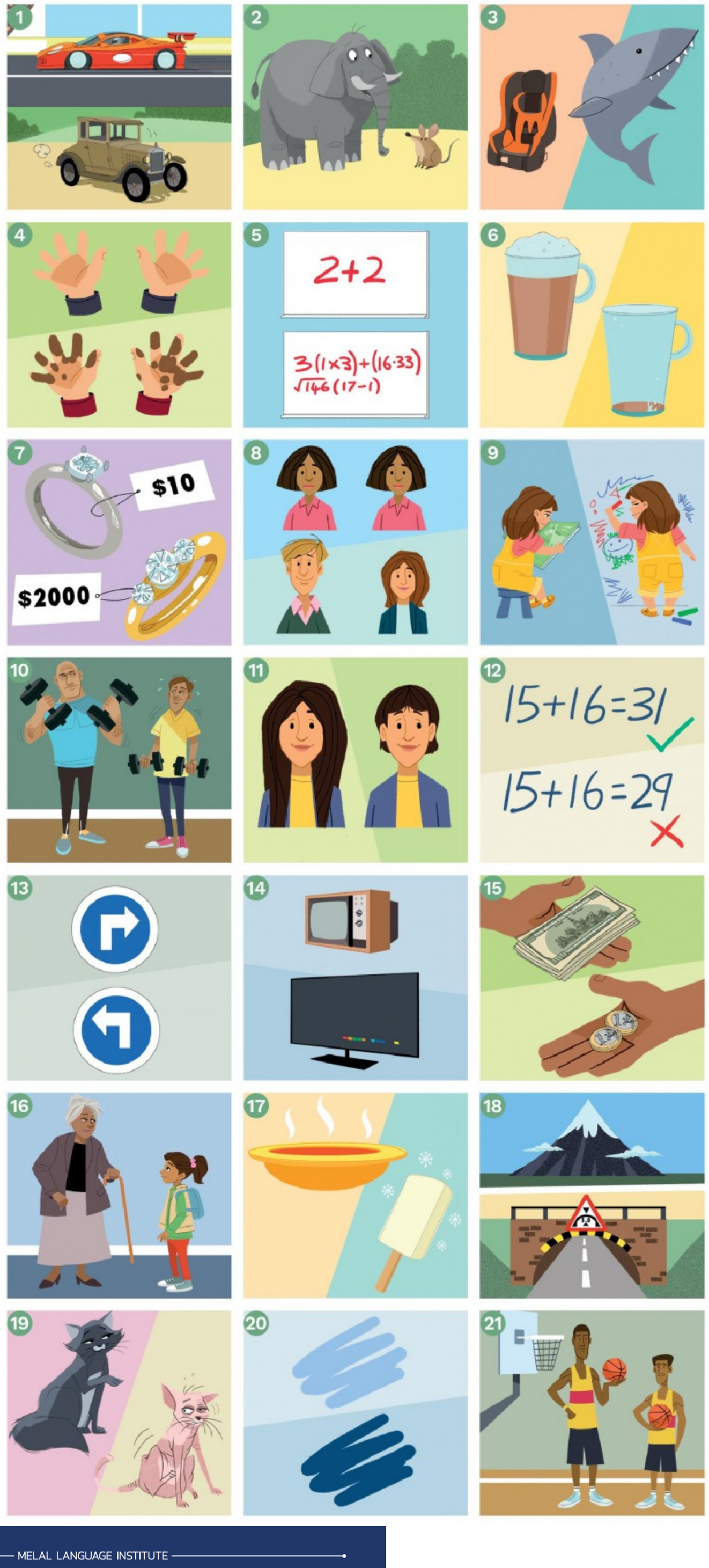
a Ferrari – It's really fast and very expensive.

Opinion adjectives

good: *nice* /naɪs/, *great* /greɪt/, *fantastic* /fæn'tæstɪk/

bad: *awful* /'ɔfl/, *terrible* /'tɛrəb(ə)l/

p.18



Verb phrases

a Match the verbs and photos.

- cook /kʊk/
- do /du/
- drink /drɪŋk/
- drive /draɪv/
- eat /it/
- go /goʊ/
- have /hæv/
- like /laɪk/
- listen /'lɪsn/
- live /lɪv/
- need /nid/
- play /pleɪ/
- read /rid/
- say /seɪ/
- speak /spik/
- study /'stʌdi/
- take /teɪk/
- want /wɑnt/
- watch /wɑtʃ/
- wear /wɛr/
- work /wərk/

b 3.2 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the verbs and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

p.24



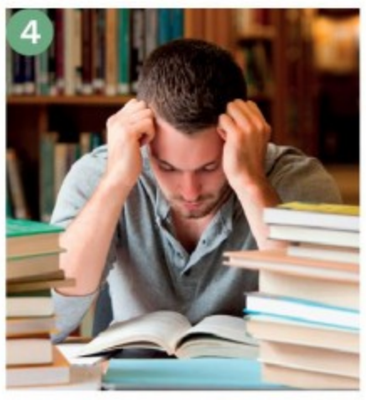
a coffee



in an office



a garden



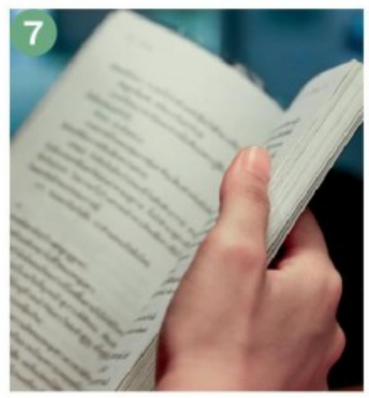
history



German



in an apartment



a book



animals



to the movies



TV



to music



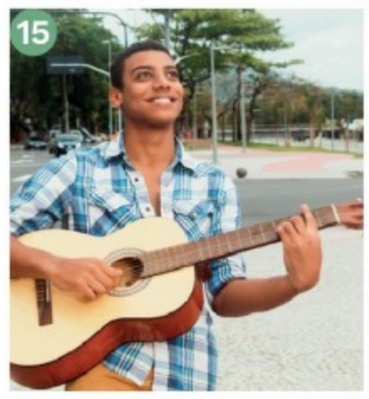
tennis



an umbrella



housework



the guitar



sorry



water



vegetables



dinner



yoga



glasses



a new passport



a car



homework

Jobs

Vocabulary Bank

a Match the words and photos.

- an accountant /ə'kaʊntnt/
- an actor /'æktər/
- an administrator /əd'mɪnəstreɪtər/
- an architect /'ɑrkətɛkt/
- a chef /ʃɛf/ (or cook)
- a cleaner /'klinər/
- a construction worker /kən'strʌkʃn 'wərkər/
- a dentist /'dɛntɪst/
- a doctor /'dɑktər/
- an engineer /ɛndʒə'nɪr/
- a factory worker /'fæktəri 'wərkər/
- a flight attendant /'flaɪt ə'tɛndənt/
- a guide /gaɪd/
- a hair stylist /hɛr 'staɪlɪst/
- a journalist /'dʒərnəlɪst/
- a lawyer /'lɔyər/
- a (bank) manager /'mænɪdʒər/
- a model /'mɑdl/
- a musician /myu'zɪʃn/
- a nurse /nərs/
- a pilot /'paɪlət/
- a police officer /pə'lis 'ɑfəsər/
- a receptionist /rɪ'sɛpʃənɪst/
- a salesperson /'seɪlzpərsn/
- a server /'sərvər/
- a soccer player /'sɑkər 'pleɪər/
- a soldier /'soʊldʒər/
- a taxi driver /'tæksi 'draɪvər/
- a teacher /'titʃər/
- a vet /vɛt/



a / an + jobs

We use *a / an* + job words.
She's a model. **NOT** ~~*She's model.*~~

b **3.10** Listen and check.

c **3.11** Listen and repeat the sentences. What do *you* do?

ACTIVATION Cover the jobs and look at the photos. In pairs, say what the people do.

She's a vet. *He's an engineer.*

p.26

What do you do?

I'm **a** musician.
I'm **an** engineer.

I work **for** an IT company.
I work **in** a store.
I work **in** digital marketing.
I work part time / full time.
I work from home.

I'm **a** student.
I'm **in** college.
I'm **at** school.

I'm unemployed.
I'm retired.

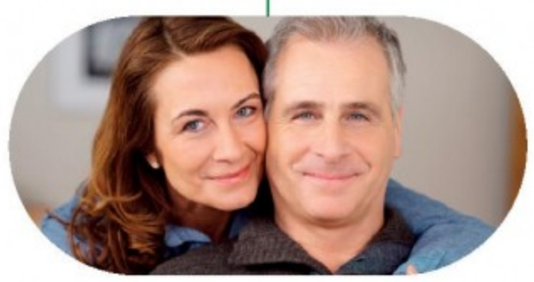
The family

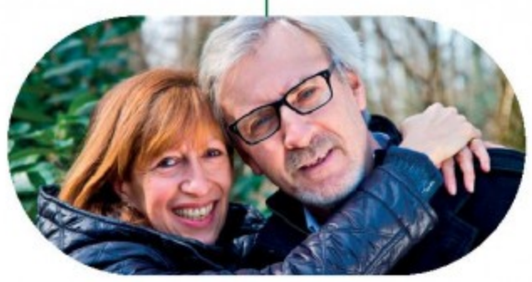
a Look at the two family trees. Number the people in relation to Richard.

1 father /ˈfɑðər/ (dad /dæd/ *informal*)
2 mother /ˈmʌðər/ (mom /mɑm/ *informal*)
3 brother /ˈbrʌðər/
4 sister /ˈsɪstər/
5 daughter /ˈdɔtər/
6 son /sʌn/
7 grandfather /ˈgrænfɑðər/
8 grandmother /ˈgrænmʌðər/
9 aunt /ænt/
10 uncle /ˈʌŋkl/
11 nephew /ˈnɛfyu/
12 niece /nis/
13 cousin /ˈkʌzn/
14 wife /waɪf/



John = Jennifer





Carol = Gary

Sue = Nick









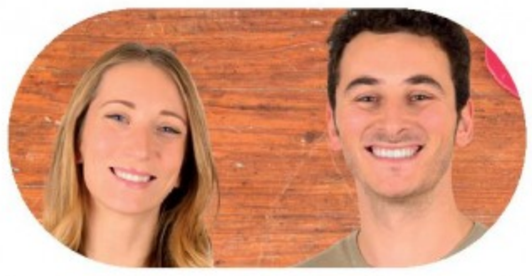


Richard Kate Steven Hugh Sarah

b Complete 1–5 with *children*, *couple*, *grandparents*, *parents*, or *parents-in-law*.

1 my father and my mother
= my _____ /ˈpɛrənts/
2 my wife's mother and father
= my _____ /ˈpɛrənts ɪn lɔ/
3 my grandfather and my grandmother
= my _____ /ˈgrænpɛrənts/
4 my son and my daughter
= my _____ /ˈtʃɪldrən/
(my kids /kɪdz/ *informal*)
5 a husband and wife
= a (married) _____ /ˈkʌpl/





Richard = Emma

Kate = Christopher









Chloe Jake Ruby Oliver

c 4.3 Listen and check your answers to **a** and **b**.

More family words

my wife's mother = my *mother-in-law*;
my husband's sister = my *sister-in-law*, etc.
my mother's new husband = my *stepfather*
my father's new wife = my *stepmother*
the person I am in a relationship with
= my *partner*

ACTIVATION Cover the words. In pairs, ask and answer.

Who's Jennifer? — *She's Richard's grandmother.*

Who are Sue and Nick? — *They're Richard's aunt and uncle.*

p.33

Daily routine

Vocabulary Bank

a Match the verb phrases and pictures.

Stressed Sally

- take a shower
- have a coffee
- do the housework
- start work at 8:30
- finish work at 6:30
- get dressed
- wake up at 7:00
- have lunch at work
- go shopping
- go to bed
- have pizza for dinner
- get home late
- go to work by bus
- put on make-up
- check emails
- get to work

Relaxed Robbie

- go to Italian classes
- get up at 8:00
- have breakfast
- shave
- go home early
- walk to work
- relax
- take the dog for a walk
- sleep for eight hours
- make dinner
- take a bath
- see friends

b **4.5** Listen and check.

have

1 For family and possessions, e.g., *I have three children. He has a big house.*

2 For activities, e.g., *I have lunch at 1:30. She has breakfast in the morning.*

3 For food and drink, e.g., *have a coffee, have a sandwich.*

ACTIVATION Cover the verb phrases. Describe Sally's day. Then describe Robbie's day.

p.34

Stressed Sally

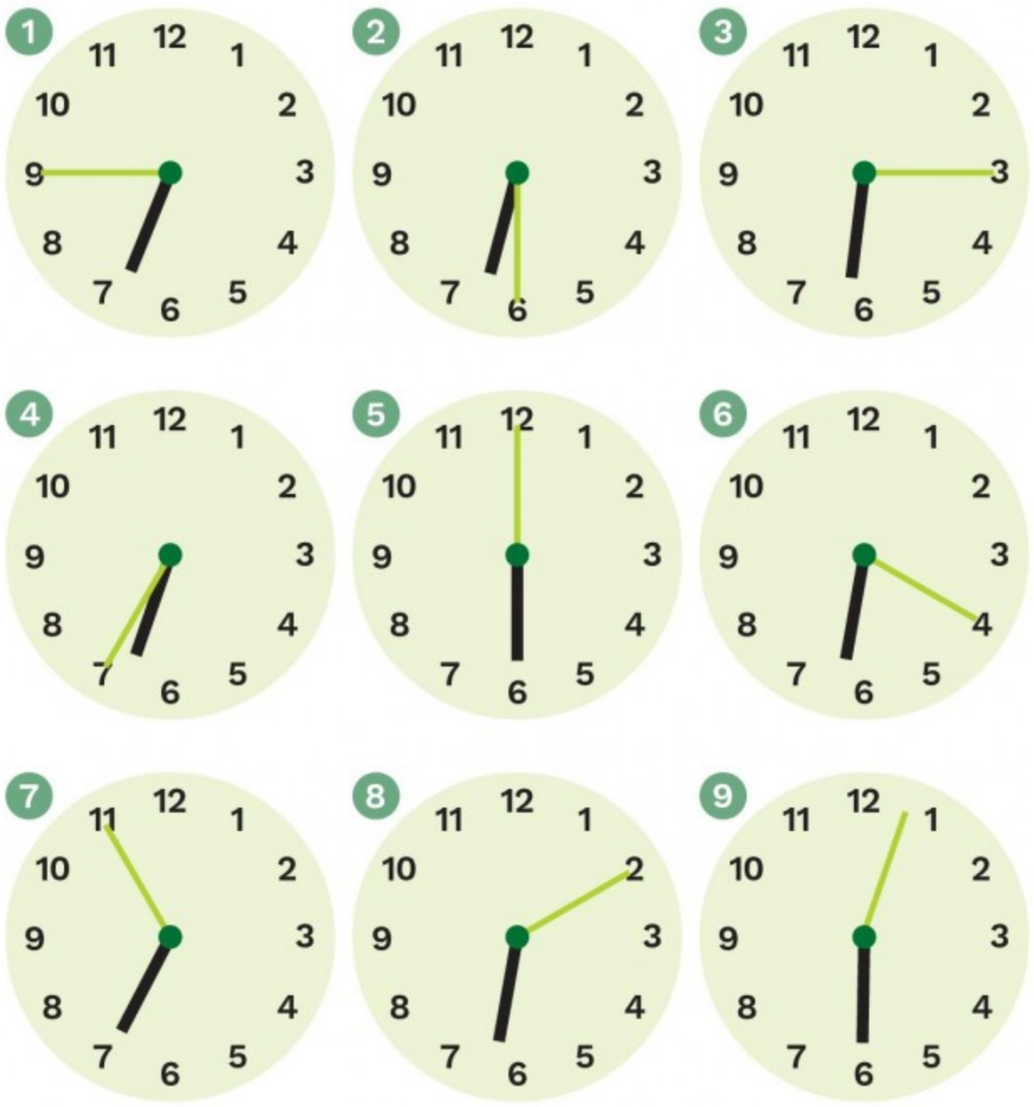


Relaxed Robbie



Time

1 Telling the time



a Match the clocks and phrases.

- ▬ It's six fifteen. / It's (a) quarter after six.
- ▬ It's six o'clock.
- I It's six forty-five. / It's (a) quarter to seven.
- ▬ It's six ten. / It's ten after six.
- ▬ It's six fifty-five. / It's five to seven.
- ▬ It's six thirty-five. / It's twenty-five to seven.
- ▬ It's six-thirty. / It's half past six.
- ▬ It's three minutes after six.
- ▬ It's six twenty. It's twenty after six.

b 3.26 Listen and check.

Time

You can ask for the time in two ways:
What time is it? **OR** *What's the time?*

For times that are not multiples of five, we use *minutes*, e.g., 6:03 = *It's three minutes after six.*

When you can't be exact, use *about*:
"*What time do you get up?*"
"*At **about** 7:00.*"

ACTIVATION Cover the phrases and look at the clocks. Ask and answer with a partner.

What time is it? / What's the time? — *It's...*

p.30

2 Expressions of frequency

a Complete the expressions.

How often do you see your friends?

1	every /ˈɛvri/ day	M, T, W, Th, F, S, S
2	every w_____	week 1, week 2, week 3, etc.
3	every m_____	January, February, March, etc.
4	every y_____	e.g., 2023, 2024, 2025, etc.
5	once /wʌns/ a _____	e.g., only on Mondays
6	twice /twaɪs/ a _____	e.g., on Mondays and Wednesdays
7	three times a _____	e.g., on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays
8	four times a _____	e.g., in January, April, July, and October

b 4.14 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the left-hand column. Test yourself.

3 Adverbs of frequency

a What do the highlighted words mean? Match sentences 1–6 to a–f.

1 b I always /ˈɔlweɪz/ get up at 7:00 during the week.
2 ▬ I often /ˈɔfn/ go to the movies after work.
3 ▬ I usually /ˈyuʒuəli/ finish work at 6:00.
4 ▬ I sometimes /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/ meet a friend for lunch.
5 ▬ I hardly ever /ˈhɑrdli ˈɛvər/ go to the theater.
6 ▬ I never /ˈnɛvər/ have coffee.

a About seven or eight times a month.
b ~~I start work at 8:00 every day.~~
c But on Fridays we stop at 3:00.
d I don't like it.
e Only once or twice a year.
f About once or twice a month.

normally

Normally /ˈnɔrməli/ is the same as *usually*.
I normally get up early. = I usually get up early.

b 4.15 Listen and check.

c 4.16 Listen and repeat the highlighted adverbs of frequency.

ACTIVATION Cover sentences 1–6 and look at a–f. Can you remember the sentences?

p.36

More verb phrases

Vocabulary Bank

a Match the verbs and photos.

- buy /baɪ/
- call /kɔl/
- dance /dæns/
- draw /drɔ/
- find /faɪnd/
- forget /fərˈgɛt/
- give /gɪv/
- hear /hɪr/
- help /hɛlp/
- leave /liv/
- look for /lʊk fɔr/
- meet /mit/
- paint /peɪnt/
- remember /rɪˈmɛmbər/
- run /rʌn/
- see /si/
- send /sɛnd/
- sing /sɪŋ/
- swim /swɪm/
- take /teɪk/
- talk /tɔk/
- tell /tɛl/
- try /traɪ/
- use /yuz/
- wait for /weɪt fɔr/

b **5.1** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the verbs and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

p.40


1 the tango

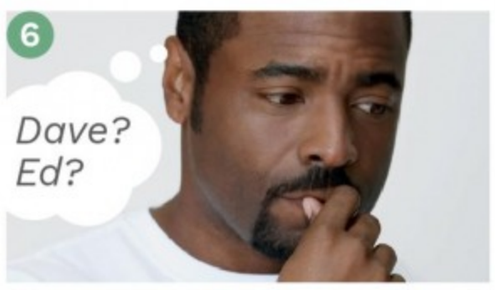

2 a parking space


3 your bag on a train


4 a bus



5 somebody's name



6 somebody's name


7 a movie


8 somebody


9 a taxi


10 to a friend

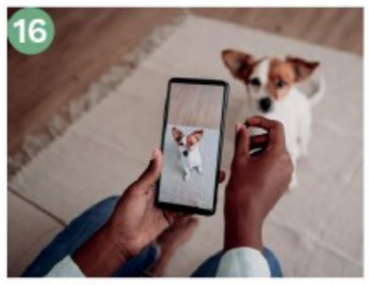

11 a picture


12 a song


13 a pizza


14 somebody a secret


15 a picture


16 a photo

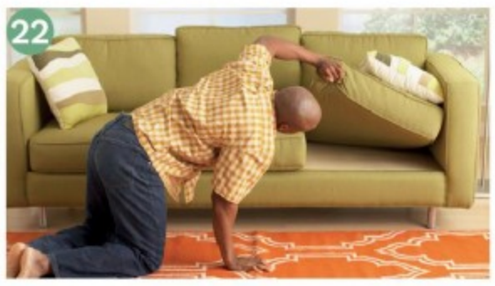

17 a race


18 a friend


19 a noise


20 to open a door


21 somebody flowers


22 your keys


23 an app


24 a message


25 in the ocean

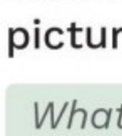
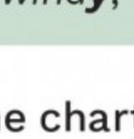
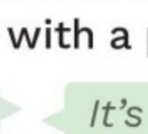
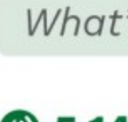
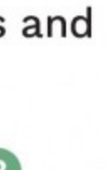
The weather and dates

1 The weather and seasons

a Complete the chart with words from the list.

cloudy /'klaʊdi/ cold /koʊld/ foggy /'fɔgi/
hot /hɑt/ raining /'reɪnɪŋ/ snowing /'snoʊɪŋ/
~~sunny~~ /'sʌni/ windy /'wɪndi/

What's the weather like?

	It's [1] *sunny*.		It's [5] _____.
	It's [2] _____.		It's [6] _____.
	It's [3] _____.		It's [7] _____.
	It's [4] _____.		It's [8] _____.

b **5.13** Listen and check.

Other adjectives for weather

warm /wɔrm/ = not very hot (opposite = *cool*)
wet = raining (opposite = *dry*)

Nouns and adjectives

Nouns: *sun*, *cloud*, *wind*, *fog*
Adjectives: *sun**ny***, *cloud**y***, *wind**y***, *fog**gy***

c Cover the sentences in the chart and look at the pictures. Ask and answer with a partner.

What's the weather like? *It's sunny.*

d **5.14** Match the seasons and pictures. Then listen and check.



- spring /sprɪŋ/
- summer /'sʌmər/
- fall /fɔl/
- winter /'wɪntər/

ACTIVATION What's the weather like where you are today? What season is it?

p.44

2 Ordinal numbers and the date

a Complete the numbers and words.

1st	first /fərst/
2nd	second /'sɛkənd/
3rd	third /θərd/
4th	fourth /fɔrθ/
5th	fifth /fɪfθ/
6th	_____ /sɪksθ/
7th	_____ /'sɛvnθ/
_____	eighth /eɪtθ/
_____	ninth /naɪnθ/
10th	_____ /tɛnθ/
11th	_____ /ɪ'lɛvnθ/
_____	twelfth /twɛlfθ/
13th	_____ /ˌθər'tinθ/
14th	_____ /ˌfɔr'tinθ/
_____	twentieth /'twɛntiəθ/
21st	_____ /ˌtwɛnti 'fərst/
_____	twenty-second /ˌtwɛnti 'sɛkənd/
23rd	_____ /ˌtwɛnti 'θərd/
_____	twenty-fourth /ˌtwɛnti 'fɔrθ/
30th	_____ /'θərtiəθ/
_____	thirty-first /ˌθərti 'fərst/

b **6.11** Listen and check.

c Look at how we write and say the date.

Writing and saying the date

We write	We say
March 22nd	*March twenty-second* OR ***the** twenty-second **of** March*
1/12	*January twelfth* OR ***the** twelfth **of** January*

Prepositions with months and dates

Use *in* + years, e.g., *The Los Angeles Olympics are **in** 2028.*
Use *in* + months, e.g., *My birthday's **in** February.*
Use *on* + dates, e.g., *The meeting is **on** Friday, September 5th.*

Saying years

1807	*eighteen oh seven*
1936	*nineteen thirty-six*
2008	*two thousand eight* (for years 2000–2010)
2011	*two thousand eleven OR twenty eleven*
2025	*twenty twenty-five*

ACTIVATION What's the date today? What's the date tomorrow?

p.50

go, have, get

a Match the verb phrases and photos.

go

- by bus (or by car, by plane)
- for a walk
- home (from school)
- out (on Friday night)
- shopping
- to a restaurant
- to bed (late)
- to church (or to mosque, to temple)
- to the beach
- back (to work)
- on vacation

have

- a car (or a bike)
- long hair
- breakfast (or lunch, dinner)
- a drink
- a good time
- a sandwich
- a sister (or a brother)

get

- a newspaper (= buy or obtain)
- a taxi (= take)
- an email (= receive)
- dressed
- home (= arrive)
- to the airport (= arrive)
- up (early, late)

b **7.12** Listen and check.

c Cover the verb phrases and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

ACTIVATION Take turns saying five things you did yesterday and five things you did last week with *went*, *had*, or *got*.

Yesterday, I got up early. I had breakfast in a café. I went shopping...

p.61

go

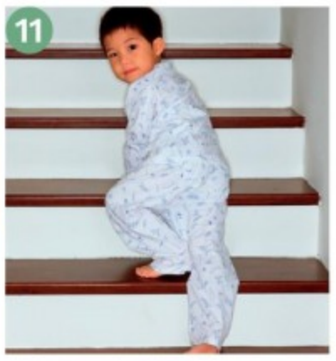












have









get












The house



1 Rooms

a Match the words and pictures 1–10.

- a bathroom /ˈbæθrum/
- a bedroom /ˈbɛdrum/
- a dining room /ˈdaɪnɪŋ rum/
- a garage /gəˈrɑdʒ/
- a half bathroom /hæf ˈbæθrum/
- a hall /hɔl/
- a kitchen /ˈkɪtʃən/
- a living room /ˈlɪvɪŋ rum/
- a study / an office /ˈstʌdi/ /ˈɔfəs/
- a yard /yɑrd/

2 Parts of a room

b Match the words and pictures 11–15.

- a balcony /ˈbælkəni/
- a ceiling /ˈsilɪŋ/
- a floor /flɔr/
- stairs /stɛrz/
- a wall /wɔl/

3 Things in a room

c Match the words and pictures 16–34.

- an armchair /ˈɑrmtʃɛr/
- a bathtub /ˈbæθtʌb/
- a bed /bɛd/
- a cupboard /ˈkʌbərd/
- a dishwasher /ˈdɪʃwɑʃər/
- a fireplace /ˈfaɪərpleɪs/
- a light /laɪt/
- a microwave /ˈmaɪkrəweɪv/
- a mirror /ˈmɪrər/
- a plant /plænt/
- a refrigerator / a fridge /rɪˈfrɪdʒəreɪtər/ /frɪdʒ/
- a rug /rʌg/
- a shelf (shelves) /ʃɛlf/
- a shower /ˈʃaʊər/
- a sink /sɪŋk/
- a sofa / a couch /ˈsoʊfə/ /kaʊtʃ/
- a stove /stoʊv/
- a wardrobe /ˈwɔrdroʊb/
- a washing machine /ˈwɑʃɪŋ məˈʃin/

d 8.6 Listen and check **a–c**.

Heat and central air conditioning

Heat is a system that makes a house warm.
Central air conditioning is a system that makes a house cool.

ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the picture. Say three things you usually find in a bedroom, a bathroom, and a living room.

p.66

Prepositions

Vocabulary Bank

1 Movement

a Look at pictures 1–6 and complete the phrases with the prepositions.

down from / to into
out of through up

1 _____ /ˈɪntu/ (the wardrobe)
2 _____ /frəm/ (the bedroom)
_____ /tu/ (the bathroom)
3 _____ /ʌp/ (the stairs)
4 _____ /daʊn/ (the stairs)
5 _____ /aʊt əv/ (the wardrobe)
6 _____ /θru/ (the window)

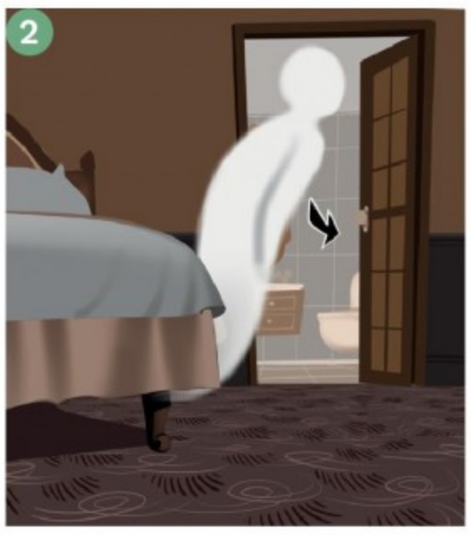
b 8.17 Listen and check.

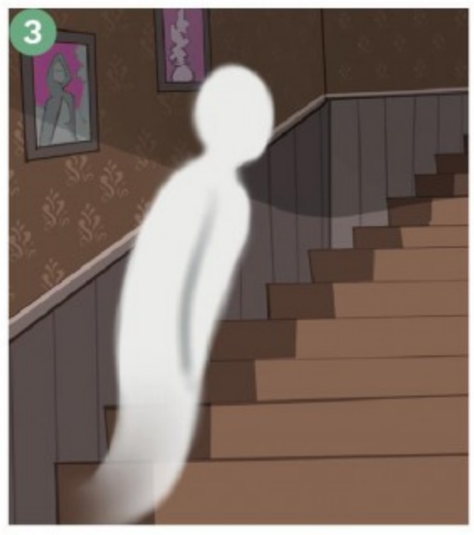
ACTIVATION In pairs, point and ask and answer about the pictures.

Where's the ghost going?

It's going up the stairs.













2 Place

a Match the words and pictures 7–15.

in /ɪn/ (the wardrobe)
in front of /ɪn frʌnt əv/ (the table)
on /ɑn/ (the chair)
under /ˈʌndər/ (the bed)
7 behind /bɪˈhaɪnd/ (the sofa)
between /bɪˈtwin/ (the windows)
across from /əˈkrɔs frəm/ (the man)
next to /nɛkst tu/ (the armchair)
over /ˈoʊvər/ (the mirror)

b 8.18 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION In pairs, point and ask and answer about the pictures.

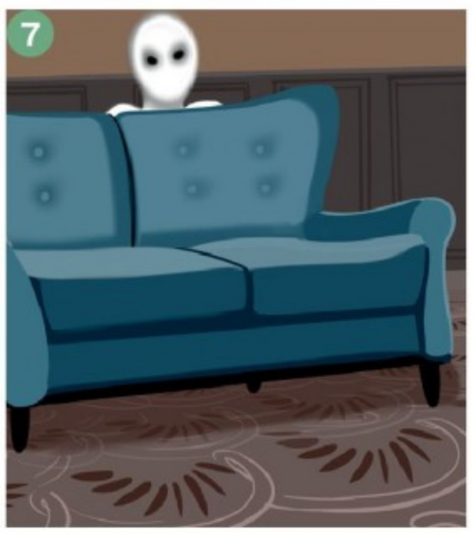
Where's the ghost?

It's under the bed.

above* and *below

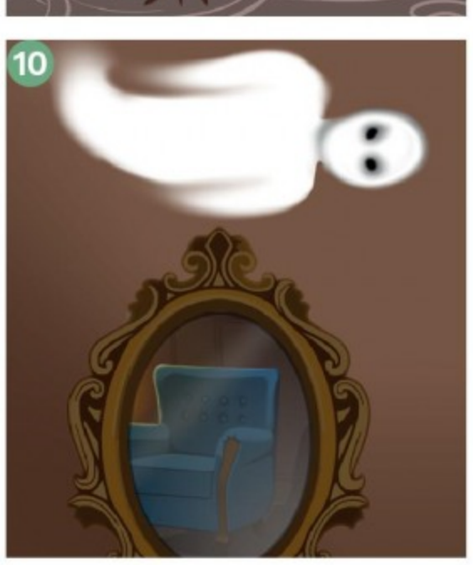
above /əˈbʌv/ is similar to *over*.
below /bɪˈloʊ/ is similar to *under*.

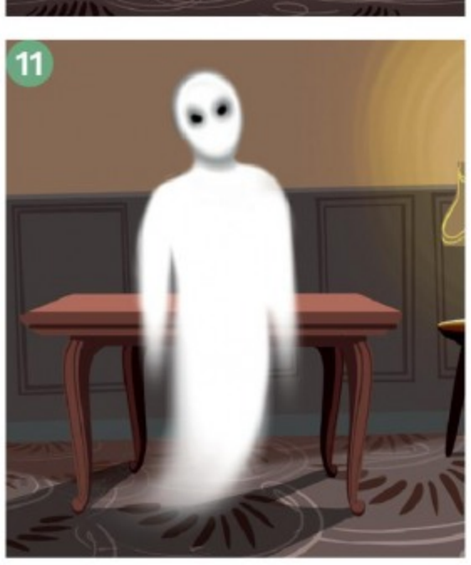
p.69

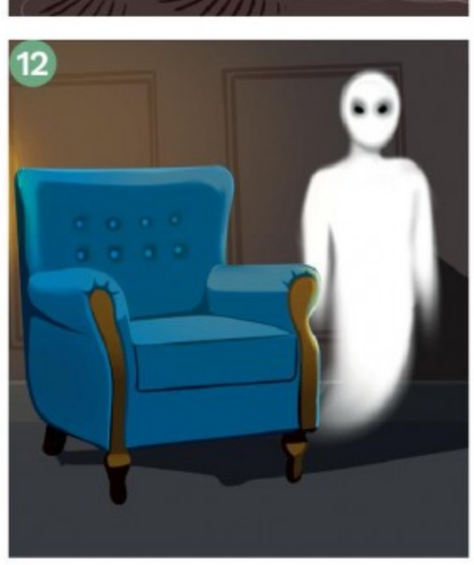


















Food and drink



a Match the words and photos.

Breakfast /ˈbrɛkfəst/

- bread /brɛd/
- butter /ˈbʌtər/
- cereal /ˈsɪriəl/
- cheese /tʃiz/
- coffee /ˈkɑfi/
- eggs /ɛgz/
- jam /dʒæm/
- (orange) juice /dʒus/
- milk /mɪlk/
- sugar /ˈʃʊgər/
- tea /ti/
- toast /toʊst/

Lunch /lʌntʃ/ **or dinner** /ˈdɪnər/

- fish /fɪʃ/ e.g., salmon, tuna
- herbs /ərbz/
- meat /mit/ e.g., chicken, sausages, steak
- (olive) oil /ɔɪl/
- pasta /ˈpɑstə/
- rice /raɪs/
- salad /ˈsæləd/
- seafood /ˈsifud/
- spices /ˈspaɪsɪz/

Vegetables /ˈvɛdʒtəblz/

- carrots /ˈkærəts/
- French fries /frɛntʃ fraɪz/ (or fries)
- lettuce /ˈlɛtəs/
- mushrooms /ˈmʌʃrumz/
- onions /ˈʌnyənz/
- peas /piz/
- peppers /ˈpɛpərz/
- potatoes /pəˈteɪtoʊz/
- tomatoes /təˈmeɪtoʊz/

Fruit /frut/

- apples /ˈæplz/
- bananas /bəˈnænəz/
- oranges /ˈɔrɪndʒɪz/
- a pineapple /ˈpaɪnæpl/
- strawberries /ˈstrɔbɛriz/

Desserts /dɪˈzərts/

- cake /keɪk/
- fruit salad /frut ˈsæləd/
- ice cream /aɪs ˈkrim/

Snacks /snæks/

- candy /ˈkændi/
- chocolate /ˈtʃɔklət/
- cookies /ˈkʊkiz/
- nuts /nʌts/
- potato chips /pəˈteɪtoʊ tʃɪps/
- a sandwich /ˈsæn(d)wɪtʃ/

b 9.1 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

p.72

Places and buildings

Vocabulary Bank

a Match the words and photos.

- a church /tʃərtʃ/
- a department store /dɪ'pɑrtmənt stɔr/
- a hospital /'hɑspɪtl/
- a market /'mɑrkət/
- a park /pɑrk/
- a pharmacy /'fɑrməsi/
- a police station /pə'lis 'steɪʃn/
- a post office /poʊst 'ɔfəs/
- a shopping mall /'ʃɑpɪŋ mɔl/
- a supermarket /'supərˌmɑrkət/
- a town hall /taʊn hɔl/

- an art gallery /ɑrt 'gæləri/
- a castle /'kæsl/
- a museum /myu'ziəm/
- a theater /'θiətər/
- a zoo /zu/

- a bridge /brɪdʒ/
- a river /'rɪvər/
- a road /roʊd/
- a square /skwɛr/
- a street /strit/

- a bus station /bʌs 'steɪʃn/
- a parking lot /'pɑrkɪŋ lɑt/
- a train station /treɪn 'steɪʃn/

Other places of worship (= religious buildings)

a cathedral /kə'θidrəl/
a mosque /mɑsk/
a synagogue /'sɪnəgɑg/
a temple /'tɛmpl/

b 10.1 Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

ACTIVATION Ask and answer about places with a partner.

Is there a _____ near where you live / near this school?

p.80



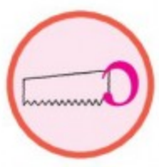
Irregular verbs

Present	Simple past	Past participle
be /bi/	was /wəz/ were /wər/	been /bin/
become /bɪ'kʌm/	became /bɪ'keɪm/	become
begin /bɪ'gɪn/	began /bɪ'gæn/	begun /bɪ'gʌn/
break /breɪk/	broke /broʊk/	broken /'broʊkən/
bring /brɪŋ/	brought /brɔt/	brought
build /bɪld/	built /bɪlt/	built
buy /baɪ/	bought /bɔt/	bought
can /kæn/	could /kʊd/	—
catch /kætʃ/	caught /kɔt/	caught
come /kʌm/	came /keɪm/	come
cost /kɔst/	cost	cost
do /du/	did /dɪd/	done /dʌn/
drink /drɪŋk/	drank /dræŋk/	drunk /drʌŋk/
drive /draɪv/	drove /droʊv/	driven /'drɪvn/
eat /it/	ate /eɪt/	eaten /'itn/
fall /fɔl/	fell /fɛl/	fallen /'fɔlən/
feel /fil/	felt /fɛlt/	felt
find /faɪnd/	found /faʊnd/	found
fly /flaɪ/	flew /flu/	flown /floʊn/
forget /fər'gɛt/	forgot /fər'gɑt/	forgotten /fər'gɑtn/
get /gɛt/	got /gɑt/	gotten /'gɑtn̩/
give /gɪv/	gave /geɪv/	given /'gɪvn/
go /goʊ/	went /wɛnt/	gone /gɑn/
have /hæv/	had /hæd/	had
hear /hɪr/	heard /hərd/	heard
know /noʊ/	knew /nu/	known /noʊn/

Present	Simple past	Past participle
leave /liv/	left /lɛft/	left
lose /luz/	lost /lɔst/	lost
make /meɪk/	made /meɪd/	made
meet /mit/	met /mɛt/	met
pay /peɪ/	paid /peɪd/	paid
put /pʊt/	put	put
read /rid/	read /rɛd/	read /rɛd/
run /rʌn/	ran /ræn/	run
say /seɪ/	said /sɛd/	said
see /si/	saw /sɔ/	seen /sin/
send /sɛnd/	sent /sɛnt/	sent
sing /sɪŋ/	sang /sæŋ/	sung /sʌŋ/
sit /sɪt/	sat /sæt/	sat
sleep /slip/	slept /slɛpt/	slept
speak /spik/	spoke /spoʊk/	spoken /'spoʊkən/
spend /spɛnd/	spent /spɛnt/	spent
stand /stænd/	stood /stʊd/	stood
swim /swɪm/	swam /swæm/	swum /swʌm/
teach /titʃ/	taught /tɔt/	taught
take /teɪk/	took /tʊk/	taken /'teɪkən/
tell /tɛl/	told /toʊld/	told
think /θɪŋk/	thought /θɔt/	thought
understand /ʌndər'stænd/	understood /ʌndər'stʊd/	understood
wake /weɪk/	woke /woʊk/	woken /'woʊkən/
wear /wɛr/	wore /wɔr/	worn /wɔrn/
win /wɪn/	won /wʌn/	won
write /raɪt/	wrote /roʊt/	written /'rɪtn/

Vowel sounds

Sound Bank

	usual spelling	! but also
 **tree**	**ee** meet three **ea** eat speak **e** me we	people police key niece
 **fish**	**i** his this win six big swim	English women busy
 **ear**	**eer** cheer engineer **ere** here we're **ear** dear hear	
 **cat**	**a** thanks dance black Japan have tablet	
 **egg**	**e** yes help ten pet very red	friend weather breakfast any said
 **chair**	**air** airport stairs pair hair **are** square careful	their there wear
 **clock**	**o** hot stop doctor job not box	father watch want
 **saw**	**al** talk small **aw** saw draw	water bought fought
 **horse**	**or** sport door short	board
 **boot**	**oo** school food **u*** June blue **ew** new flew	do fruit juice shoe
 **bull**	**u** full put **oo** good book look cook	could would woman
 **tourist**	Not a very common sound. **eu**ro **Eu**rope pl**u**ral s**ure**	

	usual spelling	! but also
 **up**	**u** bus lunch ugly run lucky cut	come brother son does young
 **computer**	Many different spellings. /ə/ is always unstressed. umbrella America famous second ago	
 **bird**	**er** her verb **ir** first third **ur** nurse turn	learn work world word
 **owl**	**ou** out thousand cloudy count **ow** how down	
 **phone**	**o*** old home close don't **oa** road toast	slow low
 **car**	**ar** charger party start far	
 **train**	**a*** name make **ai** rain paint **ay** play day gray	break steak great eight they
 **boy**	**oi** coin noise toilet **oy** unemployed enjoy	
 **bike**	**i*** nine twice **y** my why **igh** high night	buy

* especially before consonant + e

vowels vowels followed by /r/ diphthongs

Consonant sounds

	usual spelling	! but also
 **parrot**	**p** pilot Peru paper sleep **pp** apple happy	
 **bag**	**b** be builder table number job **bb** hobby	
 **key**	**c** credit card actor **k** kitchen like **ck** black back	architect school
 **girl**	**g** green get argue big **gg** eggs bigger	
 **flower**	**f** Friday fifteen wife **ph** photo alphabet **ff** office coffee	
 **vase**	**v** very eleven live travel river love	of
 **tie**	**t** tea take student sit **tt** letter bottle	liked dressed
 **dog**	**d** dance understand bad read **dd** address middle	played tired
 **snake**	**s** sister stops **ss** stress actress **ce, ci** police nice city	
 **zebra**	**z** zero zoo Brazil **s, se** music please dogs watches	
 **shower**	**sh** shopping shoes Spanish fish **ti (+ vowel)** station information	sugar sure
 **television**	**si (+ on)** decision occasion	usually garage

	usual spelling	! but also
 **thumb**	**th** think thirty theater bathroom fourth tenth	
 **mother**	**th** the these then that other with	
 **chess**	**ch** cheap children church **tch** watch match **t (+ ure)** picture adventure	
 **jazz**	**j** January jacket July enjoy **dge** bridge fridge	German manager
 **leg**	**l, le** like little plane girl **ll** small spelling	
 **right**	**r** rice rich problem try **rr** sorry terrible	write wrong
 **witch**	**w** window wait Wednesday twenty **wh** why when	one once
 **yacht**	**y** yellow yesterday young yes **before u** use university music	
 **monkey**	**m** man Monday money swim **mm** summer swimming	
 **nose**	**n** no never nine ran **nn** dinner thinner	know
 **singer**	**ng** England language song thing long going	think bank
 **house**	**h** happy hungry hotel hall head behind	who whose

voiced unvoiced

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2025

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

e-Book Edition

ISBN: 978 0 19 416293 7

First published in 2025

No copying or file sharing

This digital publication is protected by international copyright laws. No part of this digital publication may be reproduced, modified, adapted, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, used for text and data mining, or used for training artificial intelligence, in any form or by any means, to any other person or company without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not modify, adapt, copy, store, transfer or circulate the contents of this publication under any other branding or as part of any other product. You may not print out material for any commercial purpose or resale

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims all and any responsibility for the content of such websites

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p.34 Adapted from 'How I make it work: Marjan Jahangiri' by Ruby Warrington, 3 July 2011, The Times, © The Times/News Licensing. Additional information provided by Marjan Jahangiri. Reproduced by permission; p.35 In our audio recording, Darius is voiced by an actor; p.39 Adapted from 'A Life in the Day: the superstar DJ David Guetta', interview by Danny Scott, 24 May 2015, The Times. © The Times/News Licensing. Reproduced by permission; p.58 Adapted from 'Embarrassing flight mistake: I flew to the wrong country' by Emma Benns, 9 April 2022, Escape.com. Reproduced by permission of Emma Benns; p.59 audio 3a is a recording of a story by Kirsty Leanne, with an actor used to voice Kirsty Leanne. This is adapted from 'The one where I spelled my name wrong on a flight' by Kirsty Leanne, www.kirstyleanne.com. Reproduced by permission; p.60 Jenny's story is adapted and abridged from 'How To Celebrate New Year's Eve in Reykjavik' by Jennifer Dombrowski, https://luxeadventuretraveler.com/. Reproduced by permission; p.60 Adapted Extract from 'New Year's Eve 2011 – NYE Gig Story'. Reproduced by permission of The Disco Studio. The Disco Studio is a retailer of DJ Equipment and related accessories; p.72 Adapted from ‹Salad and chips? Yes, please› by Hilary Rose, 23 August 2023, The Times. (c) The Times/News Licensing. Reproduced by permission; p.81 Extracts adapted from 'She Learns to Cross Streets in Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam' by Evelyn Hannon, 9 December 2017, JourneyWoman, https://journeywoman.com. Reproduced by permission; p.82 This interview with Vienna Cammarota is fictitious and is based on information reported online and information provided by Vienna. An actor is voicing Vienna in the audio recording. Reproduced with kind permission of Vienna Cammarota; p.83 text about Justin Francis, logo and image reproduced by permission of Responsible Travel. Audio is based on information from 'Planning a trip but don't know where to start' from www.responsibletravel.com, and an actor is voicing Justin Francis. Reproduced by permission; pp.84–85 Adapted extracts from 'The Fortune Teller' translated by Frank Johnson, from the original 'Věštkyně' by Karel Čapek published in Povídky z jedné kapsy, 1929. From https://ashortspell.com. Reproduced by permission; p.90 Adapted from Aartie Dharampuriya's '30 before 30 – The Bucket List Vlog'. Reproduced by permission; p.93 Adapted extracts from 'Remember Life Before the Internet' from Marie Claire, 17 February 2015, www.marieclaire.co.uk. Reproduced by permission; p.96 Book cover from Les Miserables by Victor Hugo is reproduced by permission of Penguin Random House LLC.

Sources: p.32 www.graziadaily.co.uk; p.36 Stats from Common Sense Media; French Agency for Food, Environmental and Occupational Health & Safety (ANSES); Programme for International Student Assessment (PISA), 2018, OECD; The FUEL Study, University of Birmingham 2019; Forkert, E.C.O., Moraes, A.C.F.D., Carvalho, H.B. et al. 'Skipping breakfast is associated with adiposity markers especially when sleep time is adequate in adolescents', Sci Rep.9, 6380 (2019). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598–019–42859–7; p.82 www.guardian.com.

Commissioned photography by: Gareth Boden

Pronunciation chart artwork by: Ellis Nadler

Illustrations by: Paul Boston/Meiklejohn; Peter Bull Art Studio; Hannah Davies/Illustration; Oxford University; Anders Wenngren/Illustrationdivision; Q2A Media.

Video stills: Oxford Digital Media pp.23 (vox pops), 37 (Tai Chi video still), 39 (vox pops), 55 (vox pops), 69, 71 (vox pops), 87 (vox pops), 101 (Macbeth), 103 (vox pops); Digeo Productions Ltd. pp.8, 9, 11 (basketball video still/Shutterstock video/Konstantin Shishkin), 13 (online call video still/Andy Russell/Oxford University Press), 14, 15, 21 (Safe Journey video still), 26 (writing video still/Shutterstock/Arturs Budkevics), 28 (Becca and Dave video stills), 30, 31, 40 (Amy, Naomi, Dan, talent show), 40, 46, 47, 53 (busker video still/Oxford University Press), 56 (Van Gogh Self-portrait video still/Alamy Active Museum/Active Art), 59 (woman video still), 62, 63, 64 (murder mystery characters), 64, 65, 66 (house exterior video still), 69 (ghost video still/Amit Tayal), 73, 74, 79, 85, 89 (Jack Horton Costa Rica/Jack Horton), 90 (Bucket list video still/Getty images/akshmiprasad S), 94, 95, 98 (Joe and friends), 164, 170

We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: 123RF (Viktoriia Kotliarchuk, Steven/Wavebreak Media Ltd); Aartie Dharampuriya; Alamy (© Netflix/Entertainment Pictures, age fotostock, Aleditorial, Alex Segre, Arch White, Bailey-Cooper Photography, Bob Handelman, booksR, brami, Cal Sport Media, Chris Cooper-Smith, Cultura RM, Cultura RM, Dan Hallman, David J. Green, David Jensen, Deborah Lee Rossiter, directphoto.bz, Donald Cooper, Dorling Kindersley ltd, dpa picture alliance, FlixPix, foodfolio, graficart.net, Hemis, Homer Sykes, Ian Dagnall, Image Source, incamerastock, Ingram, Janine Wiedel Photolibrary, Jeff Morgan 15, Justin Kase z12z, Kirsty McLaren, Konstantin Shishkin, Koshiro K, Kumar Sriskandan, L A Heusinkveld, Les. Ladbury, LightField Studios Inc., LightField Studios Inc.,Peter Eastland, marc zakian, mauritius images GmbH, Maximum Film/BBC, Mick Flynn, Motoring Picture Library, Nick Moore, Nick Moore, PA Images, Patrick Batchelder, Patti McConville, Paul Wishart, Peter Titmuss, Pictorial Press Ltd, Pixel-shot, Realimage, reppans travel, Richard Green, Richard Heyes, Robert Stainforth, Roger Bamber, Roger Cracknell 01/classic, Roger Cracknell 01/classic, Rut Kipioro, Sam Toren, Santorines, Sarah Hadley, saravutvanset/RooM the Agency, Shepic, simon evans, Simon L Montgomery Photography, Sipa US, Stephen Chung, Stephen Frost, T.M.O.Pictures, TCD/Prod.DB, United Archives GmbH, urbanbuzz, Vedad Ceric, Westend61 GmbH, Yuri Arcurs, Yuri Kevhiev); Anna Kenyon; BBC News (icon/by permission); Bridgeman Images (© The Estate of Jean-Michel Basquiat/ADAGP, Paris and DACS, London 2023, Sherlock Holmes/Illustration for Arthur Conan Doyle's Sherlock Holmes story 'The Adventure of Silver Blaze', Luisa Ricciarini); Christina Latham-Koenig; Emma Benns; Erlebniswelt muotathal GmbH., Hüttenhotel Husky-Lodge; Eyevine (Alex Lentati, Eirini Vourloumis/The Guardian); Getty Images (© eleonora galli, Aaron Foster, agrobacter, aldomurillo, aldomurillo/E+, Aleksandr Naumenko, Alexandre Schneider, Allsport Co., alvarez, alvaro gonzalez, Anadolu Agency, Andriy Onufriyenko/Moment, Anna Pekunova, AntonioGuillem, Ashley, Ashley, C Flanigan, Caia Image, Cat Gwynn, Chris Ryan/OJO Imagez, Christopher Polk, Comstock Images/Stockbyte, CSA-Printstock, David Crotty, DNY59, Dornveek Markkstyrn, Doug Menuez/Forrester Images/Stockbyte, Edwin Tan, Emma McIntyre, Faina Gurevich, FatCamera, fotograzia, Fox Photos/Stringer, Francesco Riccardo Iacomino, Francois Nel, Frank Gaglione, Fuse/Corbis, Future Publishing, Fyza Hashim/Moment, Gabriel Bouys, George Pimentel, GlobalP, Glyn Kirk/AFP, GomezDavid, Gregg DeGuire/FilmMagic, Haywood Magee/Stringer, HBSS/Corbis, Hiraman, Hiroyuki Ito, I Like That One, Image Source RF/DreamPictures, Jeffrey Mayer, John Phillips, Jon Kopaloff, Jonathan Knowles, Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/DigitalVision, JW LTD/Stone, Karina Mansfield/Moment, Kevin Mazur, Klaus Vedfelt, Klaus Vedfelt/DigitalVision, KMazur, Kvenus, Lighthouse Films, Luis Alvarez, M Swiet Productions/Moment, Malcolm MacGregor/Moment, Marianna Massey, Mariha-kitchen, Maskot, Matthew Ashton, MirageC, MirageC, MirageC, MoMo Productions, Monty Rakusen, Morsa Images, MStudioImages, Nattakorn Maneerat, Nicolas McComber/E+, Nitat Termmee, Noel Vasquez, Orchidpoet/E+, Pascal Le Segretain, Patrick McMullan, Pawel Libera, peeterv/E+, PekicE+, PeopleImages/E+, Peter Cade/Stone, Pool, RapidEye, Richard Drury, Richard Rodriguez, Ron Galella, Sean Gladwell, Seb Daly, smrm1977, Steve Granitz, Tara Moore/Stone, Tetra images, Tetra Images, The Stanley Weston Archive, The Washington Post/Contributor, Thearon W. Henderson, Thomas Winz, UniversalImagesGroup, VALERIE MACON/Contributor, Victor Virgile, Vladimir Vladimirov, Watsamon Tri-yasakda, Westend61, Wokephoto17, Xavier Lorenzo, zak00); Justin Francis; News Licensing; Oxford University Press (Graphi-Ogre, Eyewire, Oxford University Press, Corbis/Photolibrary, Ocean, Image Source, Ann Haritonenko, Di Studio, Image Source, Photographers Choice, BananaStock, Digital Vision, Alamy/Ingram, Shutterstock/AndreyKuzmin, Shutterstock/AndreyKuzmin, Shutterstock/AndreyKuzmin, Shutterstock/Mikadun, Shutterstock/Tanapat Phuengpak, Shutterstock/margouillat photo, Shutterstock/Maxsol, Shutterstock/Elenamiv), Shutterstock/Katsiaryna Kashtalyan, Shutterstock/Nisakorn Neera, Shutterstock/Olga Kovalenko, Shutterstock/Lucy Liu, Shutterstock/Alexander Kalina, Shutterstock/istanbulimagevideo, Shutterstock/Karkas, Shutterstock/Lemberg Vector studio, Shutterstock/NataLT); Sarah Bench; Shutterstock (4kclips, 80 ItzaVU, 99Art, adehoidar, Africa Studio, AJRphoto, Alastair Wallace, Alex Cimbal, Alex Garaev, Alex Gontar, Alexander Demyanenko, Alexander V Evstafyev, ALPA PROD, Amitrane, Andre Klopper, Andrew Angelov, AndreyKuzmin, AndreyPopov, andriano.cz, Andriy Blokhin, AnolyDi, antoniodiaz, arisara, Artem Onoprienko, Asier Romero, avni design, AYO Production, BalancePhoto, Ballygally View Images, BearFotos, Benny Marty, Billion Photos, Bist, Bjoern Wylezich, Black Salmon, BlueSkyImage, BongkarnGraphic, Boris023, Borkin Vadim, Brian A Jackson, Coral Sand and Assoc, cosmicpony, Daboost, Daniel Avram, Daniel M Ernst, Daniel M Ernst, Darryl Brooks, darsi, Davydenko Yuliia, Daxiao Productions, Dennis Van Tine/UPI/Shutterstock, Derek Brumby, diary/Vctoria, dibrova, Diego Cervo, Dmitry Kalinovsky, Dmytro Kolesnikov, Dragon Images, Eirene Fagus, Elena Stepanova, Elnur, Eric Isselee, ESB Professional, ESB Professional, Eugene Onischenko, eurobanks, fizkes, Foodio, Foto-media, Francesco Abrignani, Freedom Studio, freeskyline, furtseff, Garsya, Georgethefourth, Gil C, goodluz, gowithstock, Green Mountain Montenegro, Greens87, grey_and, Ground Picture, HelloMockups, Hung Wee, Hurst Photo, IJ-studio, Imagentle, Imogene, Isolated Pro, insta_photos, Iren_Geo, Ivan Kruk, Jaromir Chalabala, JonnyDrake, Josh Powell, JuanjoAlmeria1, Karelian, karelnoppe, Khirman Vladimir, knastia, knastia, kornn, kpatyhka, Kues, KvasVector, Kzenon, ladyphoto89, Leigh Anne Meeks, leungchopan, Levent Konuk, Lex0077, Lifestyle Travel Photo, Light and Vision, LightField Studios, Lipik Stock Media, littlesam, Loveshop, Luba V Nel, Luca Santilli, Lukas Gojda, lunamarina, mamamia, marco mayer, Marina Datsenko, MarkoBabii, Marti Bug Catcher, Martin M303, Master1305, Matt Crossick/Global/Shutterstock, Melnikov Dmitriy, mentatdgt, Mike Pellinni, Mironov Vladimir, MMphotos, MOMO Stock, Monkey Business Images, monticello, Morzenea, Mostovyi Sergii Igorevich, Muenchbach, N.Vector Design, Nando Machado, Naruwan Brock, NassornSnitwong, Nataly Studio, Naypong Studio, Neirfy, nikolae, Nobelus, noche, Oksana Kuzmina, Oleksandr Lytvynenko, Ollyy, OoddySmile Studio, Oscar M Sanchez, Pagina, Panacea Doll, Panacea Doll, PaulSat, pavla, Pelagija, PeopleImages.com – Yuri A, Peter Hermes Furian, Photo Win1, photolinc, photomaster, Phovoir, Pierre Vinet/New Line Cinema/Kobal/Shutterstock, Pikoso.kz, pikselstock, Pixel-Shot, pixelheadphoto digitalskillet, Postmodern Studio, Pranee Chaiyadam, Pressmaster, Prostock-studio, punsayaporn, Raisa Kanareva, Rasto SK, rawf8, riggleton, RMC42, Roman Samborskyi, Roman Voloshyn, rvlsoft, rvlsoft, Sabelskaya, SaiArLawKa2, SashaMagic, Sean Pavone, Sergii Figurnyi, Sergey Novikov, Shany Muchnik, Shawn Levin, sheff, SiljeAO, Single Music Photos, South12th Photography, Spalnic, SpeedKingz, Spiroview Inc, stockfour, StreetVJ, sunsinger, supercavie, Svitlana Hulko, svmy, T. Lesia, takmat71, Tarzhanova, Tero Vesalainen, Thitisan, Tony Baggett, tovovan, Triff, Tsuguliev, TungCheung, Uglegorets, Vacclav, Vector-Hub, Veronique G, Verushka, vesna cvorovic, Viktor1, vinz89, Vitaly Korovin, vivat, Vyas Abhishek, wavebreakmedia, William.Visuals, xuanhuongho, Yakobchuk Viacheslav, yampi, yurakrasil, Zhuravlev Andrey); UniqHotels.com (Sala Silvermine Hotel); Vienna Cammarota.

Drama videos (Pictures of You) by Creative Listening

Integrated Videos by Digeo

The publisher would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs: Alamy 6A.1(Sheet music, Glenn Harper) 7A.1(The Netherlands in the 19th century, Classic Image),(Self-portrait - Vincent van Gogh (1889), ACTIVE MUSEUM / ACTIVE ART),(Father of Van Gogh, The History Collection),(Anna van Gogh Carbentus, Art Collection 2),(Vincent van Gogh age 18, GL Archive),(Self-Portrait by Vincent van Gogh 1888, FineArt),(Painted self-portrait with straw hat, World History Archive),(Paul Gauguin, The Print Collector),(self-

The manufacturer's authorised representative in the EU , Avenida de Castilla, 2 – 28830 Madrid (www.oup.es/en)

Portrait oil on cardboard, IanDagnall Computing),(Self-portrait with a Bandaged Ear, Peter Barritt),(Hospital asylum Vincent Van Gogh Arles France, Glyn Fletcher),(Hospital asylum Post-Impressionism, PAINTING),(Van Gogh grave, Hemis),(Postcards featuring paintings of Vincent van Gogh, frans lemmens),(The National Gallery, Paul Quayle),(umbrellas with Van Gogh's painting on it, CNMages),(Auction Of Van Goghs Sunflowers Painting 1987, The Photolibrary Wales)7A.4 (Frida Kahlo shown with her painting Me Twice, Everett Collection Historical),(Javier Bardem/Joon-ho Boon, Everett Collection Inc),(Carlos Acosta, David Jensen), (Dua Lipa, Paul Froggatt), (Sir James Dyson, horst friedrichs),(Indira Gandhi, PA Images),(Stephen Hawking, NG Images),(Johann Sebastian Bach at the organ keyboard, Lebrecht Music & Arts) 9C.1(debating chamber at the House of Commons, PA Images)10C.6(King receiving a knight, late 1200s, North Wind Picture Archives),(King Richard the Lionheart talking with the Leader of the Knights of St John, Walker Art Library),(Page, master and valet, 1440–1450, The Print Collector),(Illustration of playing card,World History Archive),(Three men playing cards in an alcove, ART Collection),(Interior with Card Players by Joost van Geel, Gina Rodgers),(Card game at the Longbranch Gunsmoke 1963, Archive PL); Shutterstock Video: 1B.5 (game of wheelchair basketball,KONSTANTIN_SHISHKIN) 2B.2 (water from jug pouring into glass, Alter-ego)3C.1(Man and dog Hampsted Heath Park, Maria Padro Casas),(People walking their dogs in scenic Hampstead Heath, GlobeStock),(Beagle running, e_motion_media),(Papillon running, ILIA NEZNAEV) 5B.2 (Ordering taxi, My Agenct) 5C.1(Cloud gate sculpture at Millennium park, BlackBoxGuild),(aerial chicago beach, STOCKVIDEO2550),(Aerial view of Downtown Chicago, David Takahashi),(temperature rise from thermometer,Pro-Studio24) 5C.4 (Wrigley Field, BlackBoxGuild),(Aerial Downtown Chicago, Felix Mizioznikov),(Buckingham fountain, BlackBoxGuild),(Aerial Sunrise Glow on Soldier Field, Nicholas J Klein),(Millenium Park in downtown Chicago, BlackBoxGuild),(Adler Planetarium,4kclips),(Navy Pier, scenelabpro),(Humboldt Park,noha mizrh) 6A.1 (Newspaper, DONOT6_STUDIO) 6B.4 (A young woman stands in a traffic jam, Slava Dumchev),(reading children's picture book in library, narikin),(man is doing clean-up at home, Petrunine world studio) 8A.3 (Beautiful entrance to Villa Erba, SergeiVideoImage) 10C.6 (American chess prodigy Paul Morphy, Marzolino),(Parent and child playing cards, yamasan0708),(office worker sitting at desk and playing cards, Stokkete),(Old people playing cards, danpun),(Tarot cards on the floor, U360)11A.2 (building a wall, Vincent2004),(Man playing tennis, FetViewRoom) 11B.1(Teacher smiling, AnnaStills),(Tourists walk along rope bridge, BlackBoxGuild) 11A.3 (estuary flowing into the sea, BlackBoxGuild),(couple walking in Costa Rica, Silver Lake Studios),(teaching Latin American dances in San Jose, Dmitry Burlakov),(A street view of a busy day in the local town market, Vertical Films),(People waiting for their bus in San Jose, BlackBoxGuild),(cinematic aerial footage of The Sabana metropolitan park, Gianfranco Vivi),(Tropical beach in sunny day, Cocos.Bounty),(Rainy Season in a Tropical Rain Storm/ people with umbrella, BlackBoxGuild),(People are walking with umbrellas under rain/ San Jose city during a heavy rain day, hakanyalicn),(Arenal Volcano Landscape of Costa Rica, Matthew Williams-Ellis),(aerial view of the City of San Jose Costa Rica, Gianfranco Vivi); Shutterstock Images 2A.2(iPhone connecting with the charger cable, moomsabuy),(mirrored sunglasses on the table,vi mart),(Wireless earphone, AndreyCherkasov),(Credit Card, Theethawat Bootmata)3B.2(Close-up of a young female architect drawing, Arturs Budkevics),(chef preparing salad in kitchen, Jacob Lund),(waiter serving a cup of coffee, gpointstudio),(Hairdresser cutting hair, antoniodiaz),(nurse with a mask putting on gloves, Rawpixel.com),(florist holding card reader machine, Ground Picture),(Veterinarian giving injection to dog, Westend61 on Offset)5A.2(MicrophoneDragance137) 6A.1(Woman reads e book, EshanaPhoto),(Vehicle owners manual lying on a black leather seat, Hanjo Stier)7A.1(Sunflowers field, wjarek)9B.1(Foods doodles hand drawn sketchy vector, balabolka),(Chocolate icon, Panda Vector),(Nutrition Facts information label, magr80),(Drink can vector icons, Mix3r),(comic book style cartoon question mark, lineartestpilot),(Olive oil bottle, Andrii Bezvershenko),(Red chips pack icon, Anatolir),(Wheaten French bread, Yuliia Husar),(Apple flat style icon design, grmarc),(Glass bottle and glass of sparkling mineral water, vectorlab2D),(Sugar spoon, Mironov Konstantin),(eggs variation set, notbadcat),(Blue Bowl, judyjump),(Circle avatars with young people's faces, GoodStudio),(Cartoon sugar assortment, WinWin artlab)9C.1(Evening view of Ama Dablam, Daniel Prudek),(Forest birds watercolor set, anitapol)10A.1(Times Square featured with Broadway Theaters, Andrey Bayda),(View on Harbour Bridge arch, Taras Vyshnya),(Edinburgh Castle, Bertl123),(Daily Life, Erik Pendzich)10C.6(deck of playing cards, Christos Georghiou),(Four kings, Francesco Abrignani),(Joker playing card, Christos Georghiou),(Medieval doodle icon set, JosepPerianes),(four season logo, fivestar_studio),(12 month calendar, Anton Prohorov),(Poker card scattered, Rendix Alextian)11A.3(Latin America map, Vector Artworks): Getty Video 1A.1(Digital marketing at a railroad station,Marcus Lindstrom)1B.1(World Cup football fans,Sky News/Film Image Partner)1B.5(soccer team celebrating goal, Mark Andersen),(children bowing after baseball game, Milmotion)1C.1(African American man having online video call,silverkblack),(woman listens and participates in an online meeting,Lighthouse Films)2B.2(Two people looking at tree, Lead Pipe Productions Pty Ltd),(labrador slides down a hill in the dirt, FatCamera),(Empty double decker bus, Anton Phatianov),(Illustration of a new modern city loft apartment, 2Mmedia),(Canadian Pacific Railway long freight passing, Mumemories),(A man looking for keys, Johnér Motion)3B.2(construction worker, Jacobs Stock Photography Ltd),(News reporter, AnnaStills) 4A.2b (Girl using walking frame, AmosMorgan) 5B.2(Man paying for pizza, South_agency),(Children Participated In An Art Competition, David Talukdar),(2022 Mt. Washington Road Race, Salmini Sportfilm Llc – Footage),(texting on phone, JK1991),(Noriko Sakai Performs, VCG),(unlocking door,AaronAmat),(Victoria station and buses, ITN) 5C.1(Lincoln Conservatory Park and the Chicago Skyline, MADO Productions),(The Sheep Meadow, Christopher Georgia),Chicago street in the rain, Photo and Co),(pedestrians walking on sidewalk during blizzard, Gregory Christopher Lindsey),(A couple walking in the snow in Central Park, Chuck and Sarah Fishbein),(cars covered in snow during blizzard,Gregory Christopher Lindsey),(A Frozen Chicago River in Winter, Aerial_Views),(Chicago aerial view over the lake, franckreporter),(foggy day in Chicago, BlackBoxGuild),(city skyline in winter, Gregory ChristopherLindsey),(Fog Over Downtown Chicago Time Lapse, Aerial_Views),(Autumn in Chicago, Amanda Paterson),(People on the streets in Chicago, Photo and Co),(Path and city skyline, nopow),(Chicago street in the rain, Photo and Co),(People walking on Michigan Avenue, Bridge Smithsonian),(American flag, baddoggy),(View of Navy Pier, Smithsonian),(Mayor Richard J Daley, Peter Davis – Footage),(Chicago Mayor William Hale, Grinberg, Paramount, Pathe Newsreels) 6A.1(Bookshop interior, Sorafilm),(high school student reading textbook out loud, Mark Andersen),(businesswomen discuss document, SDI Productions),(People reading on tube, Aleksei_Ptitsa),(Woman reading in bed drinking orange juice, skynesher),(young woman reading a book, Sean Anthony Eddy)6B.4(Young pianist,ITN)10C.6(girl playing cards with sister, Mark Andersen)11A.2(Ballet dancer, CCTV+),(Sloth eating carrot, Footage of the World),(Family walk through river, Mayur Kakade),(child tasting grapefruit juice, Imazins)11A.3(Streets And Stores In San Jose, Bloomberg Video – Footage),(Car driving in a country road in Costa Rica, Westend61),(4X4 Driving through Costa Rica, voshadhi)11B.1(couple on safari looking at elephants, Fluorescent Films Ltd),(Crew in a production studio getting people ready, EvgeniyShkolenko),(Man goes bungee jumping, SimonSkafar),(A group of divers underwater taking a scuba diving course, Milan Markovic),(young man and woman shaking hands, PeopleImages),(Celebrity Sightings In New York City,James Devaney),(Wimbledon Centre Court Stockshots, Sky News/Film Image Partner),(Person picking book, Nexstar - WGN, Chicago) Getty Images 2A.2(Face Mask Laying on a Desk,KDP), (Tissue box,Bloomberg),(1 Euro coin, NurPhoto),(Assorted keys on wood, Muhammad Manal),(Umbrella, moan),(Office Desk and Stationery, Anna Kurzaeva),White and blank paper sheet texture background, Rizky Panuntun),(Watch isolates, Mr.Shiv Borah)4A.2b(Girl using walking frame, Amos Morgan)5C.4 (Thalia Hall, Barry Brecheisen/Stringer) 6A.1(Daughter sat on farthers back, Stephen Simpson)6A.1(Woman reading in snowy mountains,hadynyah)7A.4(Carlos Acosta, Tim P. Whitby),(Dua Lipa poses in the media room, JMEnternational),(Maya Angelou, Jessica Antola)9C.1(Set of sports icons, lupushnova),(USA political map with major cities, Tanarch),(World Map, pop_jop)10A.1(Serpentine lake in Hyde Park, NIKLAS HALLE'N),(The National Gallery In London, NurPhoto)10C.6(chromolithograph illustration of old playing cards, mikroman6)11B.1(Kick the Bucket, MHJ),(writing or planning down Bucket list on note book, lakshmiprasad S),(Whats On Your Bucket List, Dzmitry Skazau) Pond5 1B.1 (Spanish Football Fans Before Final Match,HDVMaster),(Funny Mexican Football Fans,uralbea),(Soccer World Cup Fanatics, aarrows),(French Football Fans, elvin),(Fans Roar With Delight In Rome As Italy Reach Euro Quarters,Reuters)1B.5(Race Cars Speeding Along The Curve Racetrack,dabarti)1C.1(Group Waving And Talking To Each Other Using Video Conference,robbyfontanesi)2B.2(Racing, BigPicture),(Ancient Coins Roman Empire, sagas an)5B.2(Uber User Opening The Uber App On Smartphone, hafizismail),(Tango Dancers In Buenos Aires In Argentina, Spectral),(Woman Looking In Bag For Keys Of Car, fabianaponzi),(Pro Surfer Garrett Mcnamara Exiting Car, WintersRockEnt),(Passengers Taking Photos On The Phone, Vnik)5C.4 (Skydeck sunset timelapse,Aerial_Views) 6B.4(Smile Faces Pack, Shaitan1985),(A Woman And Her Dog Pose For A Pictur, GoodSportVideo),(Boy Sits At The Table And Does His Homework, taina_h),(Woman Walking Her Dog In The Rain, warrengoldswain),(Old Man In Wheelchair Playing, BlackBoxGuild), (singing in a karaoke bar, exclusivemovement) 11A.2(Two Teens Studying At Library, FancyStudio),(F1 Drivers Start Competition, motortion),(girl eating salad, DPStudio),(Paralympic games, adautonascimento)11A.3(Caribbean Fish Sauce with Fried Plantain, samey)11B.1(Horse Riding On Beach During Sunset, smartstudio),(Passengers Getting On Cruise Ship, Underwater),(People In Aprons Cooking Food During Cookery Course, silverkblack),(People Walking Back To The Norwegian Escape Cruise Ship, jshanebutt),(People Are Watching Geomagnetic Storm, brancin),(Grandpa Playing Chess Board Game With Grandson, Dualstock),(Lonely Woman Watching The Sun Rise, BlackBoxGuild),(Woman Sits In Chair Having Tattoo, monkeybusinessimages): Alamy 6A.1(Sheet music, Glenn Harper) 7A.1(The Netherlands in the 19th century, Classic Image),(Self-portrait - Vincent van Gogh (1889), ACTIVE MUSEUM / ACTIVE ART),(Father of Van Gogh, The History Collection),(Anna van Gogh Carbentus, Art Collection 2),(Vincent van Gogh age 18, GL Archive),(Self-Portrait by Vincent van Gogh 1888, FineArt),(Painted self-portrait with straw hat, World History Archive),(Paul Gauguin, The Print Collector),(self-Portrait oil on cardboard, IanDagnall Computing),(Self-portrait with a Bandaged Ear, Peter Barritt),(Hospital asylum Vincent Van Gogh Arles France, Glyn Fletcher),(Hospital asylum Post-Impressionism, PAINTING),(Van Gogh grave, Hemis),(Postcards featuring paintings of Vincent van Gogh, frans lemmens),(The National Gallery, Paul Quayle),(umbrellas with Van Gogh's painting on it, CNMages),(Auction Of Van Goghs Sunflowers Painting 1987, The Photolibrary Wales)7A.4 (Frida Kahlo shown with her painting Me Twice, Everett Collection Historical),(Javier Bardem/Joon-ho Boon, Everett Collection Inc),(Carlos Acosta, David Jensen), (Dua Lipa, Paul Froggatt), (Sir James Dyson, horst friedrichs),(Indira Gandhi, PA Images),(Stephen Hawking, NG Images),(Johann Sebastian Bach at the organ keyboard, Lebrecht Music & Arts)9C.1(debating chamber at the House of Commons, PA Images)10C.6(King receiving a knight, late 1200s, North Wind Picture Archives),(King Richard the Lionheart talking with the Leader of the Knights of St John, Walker Art Library),(Page, master and valet, 1440–1450, The Print Collector),(Illustration of playing card,World History Archive),(Three men playing cards in an alcove, ART Collection),(Interior with Card Players by Joost van Geel, Gina Rodgers),(Card game at the Longbranch Gunsmoke 1963, Archive PL) 123RF1B.5 (Football, Sports, Athletes, NCAA, NFL dtiberio); DAM 1A.1(A Heart, manoj.kerketta @oup.com) Other 11A.3 (Hiking rest stop/Beach/Sloth/ Toucan, Javk Horton)